

Public Document Pack



Executive Board

Thursday, 22 September 2011 2.00 p.m.
Marketing Suite, Municipal Building

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'David W R'.

Chief Executive

ITEMS TO BE DEALT WITH IN THE PRESENCE OF THE PRESS AND PUBLIC

PART 1

| Item | Page No |
|---|----------------|
| 1. MINUTES | |
| 2. DECLARATION OF INTEREST | |
| Members are reminded of their responsibility to declare any personal or personal and prejudicial interest which they have in any item of business on the agenda no later than when that item is reached and, with personal and prejudicial interests (subject to certain exceptions in the Code of Conduct for Members), to leave the meeting prior to discussion and voting on the item. | |
| 3. HEALTH AND ADULTS PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) PROPOSAL FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF A SHADOW HEALTH & WELLBEING BOARD - KEY DECISION | 1 - 11 |

*Please contact Angela Scott on 0151 471 7529 or
Angela.scott@halton.gov.uk for further information.
The next meeting of the Committee is on Thursday, 13 October 2011*

| Item | Page No |
|--|----------------|
| (B) TRANSFORMING PUBLIC HEALTH | 12 - 23 |
| (C) ROUGH SLEEPING | 24 - 35 |
| 4. COMMUNITY SAFETY PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) POLICE AND CRIME COMMISSIONER ELECTIONS MAY 2012 | 36 - 38 |
| 5. ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) DEPARTMENT OF WORK AND PENSIONS / EUROPEAN SOCIAL FUND PROGRAMME FOR FAMILIES WITH MULTIPLE PROBLEMS - KEY DECISION | 39 - 44 |
| 6. RESOURCES PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) POLLING DISTRICTS/POLLING STATIONS REVIEW | 45 - 56 |
| (B) SPENDING AS AT 30 JUNE 2011 | 57 - 76 |
| (C) DRAFT CORPORATE PLAN 2011-2016 | 77 - 118 |
| (D) REVISION OF THE PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK | 119 - 149 |
| 7. ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) MERSEYSIDE AND HALTON JOINT WASTE DEVELOPMENT PLAN DOCUMENT - PUBLICATION AND SUBMISSION STAGES- KEY DECISION | 150 - 295 |
| 8. PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) RUNCORN HILL PARK, "PARKS FOR PEOPLE" PROJECT | 296 - 301 |
| 9. CHILDREN YOUNG PEOPLE AND FAMILIES PORTFOLIO | |
| (A) RESPONSE TO THE JAMES REVIEW PRIORITY SCHOOL BUILDING PROJECT- KEY DECISION | 302 - 314 |
| (B) SHORT BREAK STATEMENT | 315 - 343 |
| PART II | |

**ITEMS CONTAINING “EXEMPT” INFORMATION
FALLING WITHIN SCHEDULE 12A OF THE LOCAL
GOVERNMENT ACT 1972 AND THE LOCAL
GOVERNMENT (ACCESS TO INFORMATION) ACT
1985**

In this case the Board has a discretion to exclude the press and public and, in view of the nature of the business to be transacted, it is RECOMMENDED that under Section 100A(4) of the Local Government Act 1972, having been satisfied that in all the circumstances of the case the public interest in maintaining the exemption outweighs the public interest in disclosing the information, the press and public be excluded from the meeting for the following items of business on the grounds that they involve the likely disclosure of exempt information as defined in paragraphs 3 of Part 1 of Schedule 12A to the Act.

(C) CONNEXIONS UPDATE

344 - 347

10. NEIGHBOURHOOD LEISURE AND SPORT PORTFOLIO

(A) AFFORDABLE HOMES AND LAND DISPOSALS

348 - 358

In accordance with the Health and Safety at Work Act the Council is required to notify those attending meetings of the fire evacuation procedures. A copy has previously been circulated to Members and instructions are located in all rooms within the Civic block.

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director, Communities

SUBJECT: Proposal for the development of a Shadow Health & Wellbeing Board

WARD(S) Borough-wide

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

1.1 The purpose of this report is to propose the introduction of a Shadow Health & Wellbeing Board.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That:

- i) Members of the Executive Board approve the implementation of the Shadow Health & Wellbeing Board as set out in the report.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 Members will recall that at their meeting on 3rd March 2011, they received a report outlining the NHS Reforms and approving the application for the Department of Health for Halton to become a Health & Wellbeing Board Early Implementer.

3.2 The Government proposed that statutory Health & Wellbeing Boards be established in shadow form by April 2012 with full implementation anticipated in April 2013. The Boards will have the following main functions: -

- To assess the needs of the local population and lead statutory Joint Strategic Needs Assessments.
- Promote integration and partnership across areas including through promoting joined up commissioning plans across the NHS, Social Care and Public Health and to publish a Joint Health and Well-being Strategy.
- To support joint commissioning and pooled budget arrangements where all parties agree this makes sense.

3.3 The initial proposals set out in the NHS White Paper published in July 2010, indicated that local GP Consortia would act as commissioners of NHS services. Following the NHS Listening Exercise in June 2011, a number of changes to the initial proposals

were announced. In terms of GP Consortia it was proposed that GPs should take responsibility for the health of their local populations and the financial and quality consequences of their clinical decisions through commissioning consortia, but they should not operate in isolation and must be required to 'obtain all relevant multi-professional advice' to make sure their decisions are appropriate. These new groups will be known as "Clinical Commissioning Group".

- 3.4 The Health and Well-being Board will also have an important role in relation to other partnerships including those relating to Adult and Children's Safeguarding although these initiatives are yet to be developed/tested.
- 3.5 Appendix 1 proposes the Terms of Reference. The proposals indicate that the Board will bring together local elected representatives, Social Care, Public Health, NHS Commissioners, Local Government and patient representatives around one table. The guidance as presently stated would be for the elected members of the Local Authority to decide who would chair the Board. Appendix 1 also proposes the full membership.
- 3.6 The Board will have a key role in promoting joint working with the aim of making commissioning plans across the NHS, Public Health and Social Care, coherent, responsive and integrated.

4.0 **THE PRESENT SITUATION IN HALTON**

- 4.1 The Halton Health Partnership (HHP) currently acts as the thematic partnership for the Healthy Halton priority. The Partnership reports into the Halton Strategic Partnership Board as one of the five Specialist Strategic Partnerships (SSPs). It is presently chaired by the Acting Director of Public Health.
- 4.2 The HHP has strategic responsibility for the Healthy Halton priority and for those elements of work that contribute to the objectives of the Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS) and Local Area Agreement (LAA).
- 4.3 Health priorities are also addressed by the Healthy Halton Policy and Performance Board and Children's health issues are included in the work of the Children's Trust and the Children and Young People's Policy & Performance Board (PPB).
- 4.4 Safeguarding is addressed by the Safeguarding Adults Board (SAB) which reports directly into the Safer Halton Partnership and is a non statutory board. Children's Safeguarding issues are addressed by the Halton Safeguarding Children's Board (HSCB) which is a statutory board that sits alongside Halton's Children's Trust, with each reporting into and providing challenge to the other.

5.0 **PROPOSAL FOR A SHADOW HEALTH & WELLBEING BOARD IN HALTON**

5.1 As part of the Early Implementer process and following extensive consultation it would seem appropriate to set up a Shadow Health and Well-being Board in Halton.

5.2 The Shadow Health and Well-being Board will be responsible for guiding and overseeing the implementation of the ambitions outlined in the Health White Paper as well as providing the strategic direction for the Health priority in Halton.

5.3 Formal decision- making responsibility will continue to rest with the Council's Executive and the relevant governance bodies of the local health services until new legislation is enacted. Transitional governance arrangements are key in establishing the Shadow HWBB, given that Health and Well-being Boards will assume their statutory responsibilities from April 2013.

5.4 Overview and Scrutiny issues will remain an integral independent arrangement within the Health Policy & Performance Board.

5.5 In terms of the relationship between the HWBB and Children's Services it would seem short sighted to disassemble existing structures when they are working well. The Children's Trust, LSCB and SAB should therefore have representation on the Health and Well-being Board. It is proposed that the Chair of these boards would fulfil this role and the Children's Trust continue in its current format.

5.6 As health is a cross cutting issue with broad determinants the Health HWB will need to have working and reporting arrangements with the Local Strategic Partnerships and the other strategic issue groups.

5.7 Relationships, communication and reporting arrangements will need to be developed between the HWB and existing commissioning partnerships and stakeholders. The HWB may need a number of working groups to deliver on its agenda.

6.0 **NEXT STEPS**

6.1 It is proposed that a Shadow Health & Wellbeing Board will be established in November 2011.

6.2 This will operate in shadow form and a review will be undertaken 12 months after its commencement and a further report to be presented to the Executive Board on its progress.

6.3 The current Health SSP will be disbanded and many of their actions embedded into the new Shadow Board.

7.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

7.1 The policy implications stemming from the NHS White Paper, Equity and Excellence: Liberating the NHS are far reaching. The Health and Wellbeing board will have a role in the authorisation process for Clinical Commissioning Groups.

7.2 The Bill should strengthen the role and influence of health and wellbeing boards so they have stronger powers to promote integration and meet local health needs, and to hold local commissioning group and social care to account if commissioning plans are not in line with the local health and wellbeing strategy.

7.3 Whilst responsibility and accountability for NHS Commissioning would rest with the NHS Commissioning Board and Clinical Commissioning Consortia, the Health and Well-being Boards would reflect co-operative working with Local Authorities in relation to Health Improvement, reducing Health Inequalities and Social Care.

8.0 FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

8.1 The cost of establishing a Shadow Health and Well-being Board in Halton will amount to officer time and resource to support the development of the board and member, stakeholder and senior officer time to contribute to meetings and any other relevant working Consortias. By streamlining existing arrangements it should be possible to achieve similar outcomes with the same or reduced cost.

9.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

9.1 Children & Young People in Halton

The Health and Wellbeing Board will have a role in addressing the health and wellbeing needs of children and young people and this important area of work will form an integral part of the Joint Strategic Needs Assessment and the resultant Health and Wellbeing Strategy. Children's health issues are also covered by the Children's Trust Board.

Children's Safeguarding issues are addressed by the Halton Safeguarding Children's Board (HSCB) which is a statutory board that sits alongside Halton's Children's Trust, with each reporting into and providing challenge to the other. The HSCB in addition provides an annual report to the Council's Executive Board.

Through the proposals outlined in this report it is recommended that the Chairs of both the Children's Safeguarding Board (LSCB) and the Chair of the Children's Trust are members of the Health and Wellbeing Board.

9.2 **Employment, Learning & Skills in Halton**

Addressing the wider determinants of health including Employment, learning and Skills will be a key consideration of the Health and Wellbeing Board and will form part of the Health and Wellbeing Strategy.

9.3 **A Healthy Halton**

The Shadow Health and Well-being Board will be responsible for guiding and overseeing the implementation of the ambitions outlined in the Health White Paper as well as providing the strategic direction for the Health priority in Halton.

9.4 **A Safer Halton**

Creating safer and stronger communities has a direct impact on improving the health and wellbeing of local people.

9.5 **Halton's Urban Renewal**

The built environment, access to public and leisure services, employment sites and public transport all have an impact on health and wellbeing.

10.0 **RISK ANALYSIS**

11.1 The implementation of proposals in the NHS White Paper are potentially far reaching as they will change the way Health services are commissioned and delivered. The Shadow Health and Well-being Board will, in part, be responsible for overseeing the implementation of these proposals and will attempt to minimise the risk of their implementation at a local level by bringing together key organisations and representatives.

12.0 **EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES**

12.1 In developing the Health and Well-being Board due regard will be given to the Equality Act 2010, including new legislation around the Public Sector duty.

12.2 It has not been appropriate, at this stage, to complete a Community Impact Review & Assessment (CIRA).

13.0 **LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972**

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Early Implementer Health & Wellbeing Board – 03/03/11 | Municipal Building | Strategic Director, Communities |

DRAFT TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR HALTON SHADOW HEALTH AND WELL-BEING BOARD

Aims of the Shadow Health and Well-Being Board

1. The Shadow Health & Well-Being Board (HWBB) is responsible for guiding and overseeing the implementation of the ambitions outlined in the Health White Paper “Equity and Excellence - Liberating the NHS” as well as providing the strategic direction for the Health priority in Halton. Principally this will include:
 - guiding and overseeing the Joint Strategic Needs Assessment,
 - developing a high-level joint health and Well-being strategy based upon the findings of the JSNA (including priorities identified by the Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS));
 - guiding and overseeing the transfer of Public Health responsibilities and arrangements to the Local Authority;
 - promoting joint commissioning and integrated provision between health, public health and social care.
2. The Shadow HWBB aims to develop a model for an established HWBB, in preparation for expected new legislation that will enact proposals set out in the government’s Health White Paper. The Shadow HWBB will also take account of the response to the results of the consultation on the White Paper, “Liberating the NHS: Legislative Framework and next steps” and of the public health strategy for England, “Healthy Lives, Healthy People”. It will provide a key forum for public accountability of NHS, Social Care for Adults and Children and other commissioned services that the Shadow HWBB agrees are directly related to health and Well-being in Halton.
3. Formal decision- making responsibility will continue to rest with the Council’s Executive and the relevant governance bodies of the local health services until new legislation is enacted. Transitional governance arrangements are key in establishing the Shadow HWBB, given that Health and Well-being Boards will assume their statutory responsibilities from April 2013.

Suggested Terms of Reference based on the above:

Principle Responsibilities working within a “boiler house” approach:

- To be responsible for guiding and overseeing the implementation of the ambitions outlined in the Health White Paper “Equity and Excellence-Liberating the NHS.” “And Healthy Lives, Healthy People” the health strategy for England
- To promote sound joint commissioning arrangements and integrated provision between health, public health and social care.
- To assess the needs of the local population and lead the Statutory Joint Strategic Needs Assessment.
- To promote integration and partnership across areas including through promoting joined up commissioning plans across the NHS, Social Care and Public Health.
- To work with the Children’s Trust to ensure that the Children’s Services commissioning is embedded into the role of the Health and Well-being Board and effective relationships established between the two Boards.
- To support strategic planning and joint commissioning and publish a Joint Health and Well-being Strategy
- To contribute to the developments of Health and Well-being Services in Halton which may arise as a result of changes in Government Policy and relevant legislation.
- To respond and contribute to developments in wider partnership arrangements in Halton in addition to the Consortias that contribute to health and wellbeing.

Other Responsibilities

- To give strategic direction to relevant Commissioning Activity
- To oversee the work of Joint Commissioning Groups.
- To liaise, where relevant, with new PCT cluster arrangements regarding strategic and commissioning direction.
- To develop and monitor relevant activity and performance.
- To ensure that Health Inequalities and the priority measures are addressed by the Joint Commissioning Group.

- To ensure that Halton's health priorities (as defined by the JSNA, SCS and relevant health targets) are addressed by Joint Commissioning Groups.
- To ensure that Joint Commissioning Groups work effectively with other Strategic Partnerships to address cross-cutting areas of work e.g. alcohol to ensure an holistic approach.
- To encourage access for service users and patients through closer working arrangements and in particular to address issues in relation to disadvantaged groups.
- To engage with relevant providers when necessary to gather requirements around need.
- To effectively monitor and review the progress of programmes designed to impact on key targets.
- To ensure dissemination of learning as a result of good practice.
- To disseminate and share strategies and action plans in order to facilitate partnership working
- To maintain appropriate linkages with other partnership boards including those relating to Adults and Children's Safeguarding.

Membership

Elected Member (Chair)

Executive Board Portfolio Holder for Health & Adults

Executive Board Portfolio Holder for Children and Young Peoples Services
(Chair of Children's Trust)

Chief Executive, Halton Borough Council

CVS/Forum Representative

LINks/Health Watch Representative

GP Representatives from Widnes and Runcorn areas

Strategic Director, Communities (Chair of SAB)

Strategic Director, Children & Enterprise

Director of Public Health

Chair of LSCB

Chair of PCT & Managing Director

Chair of PCT Clinical Commissioning Committee

Operational Directors, Partnerships, and Child and Family Health
Commissioning Halton & St. Helens NHS

Chief Executive or representative from Merseyside Cluster NHS Cluster

5 Boroughs Partnership NHS Trust

Bridgewater Community Healthcare NHS Trust

Warrington & Halton Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust

St Helens and Knowsley Hospitals NHS Trust

Housing Association Representative

Chair(s) of the Safer Special Strategic Partnership Sub Group

Chair of the Employment, Learning & Skills Special Strategic Partnership Sub
Group

Chair of the Children's Special Strategic Partnership Sub Group

Chair of the Environment Special Strategic Partnership Sub Group

Chair of the Health Special Strategic Partnership Sub Group

Meetings

Meetings of the Health and Well-being Board will take place quarterly. The chair may call an extraordinary meeting at any time. The agenda and associated papers will be sent out a minimum of one week (five clear working days) in advance of the meeting. Minutes of the board will be formally minuted.

Chair

The Chair will be an elected member of Halton Borough Council

Quorum

The meeting will be quorate provided that at least fifty per cent of all members are present. This should include the Chair or Vice Chair and at least one

officer of the PCT and one officer of the Local Authority. Where a Board is not quorate, business may proceed but decisions will need to be ratified.

Decisions

Where a decision is required, that decision will be made by agreement among a majority of members present. Where a decision needs to be ratified by one of the statutory agencies, the ratification process will be in accordance with the agreed process within that particular agency.

Minutes

Minutes of the proceedings of each meeting of the Board will be drawn up, circulated and agreed as a correct record at the subsequent meeting, once any required amendments have been incorporated.

Review

The membership and terms of reference of this partnership will be reviewed regularly (normally annually) to ensure that they remain relevant and up to date.

REPORT TO: Executive Board
DATE: 22 September 2011
REPORTING OFFICER: Chief Executive
SUBJECT: Transforming Public Health
WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

1.1 This report sets out draft proposals for consultation on the future of public health and health improvement in Halton.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That

- 1. the Board support Option 2 contained in Section 5.0 of the report; and**
- 2. In conjunction with NHS partners the Chief Executive take steps to recruit a dedicated Director of Public Health for Halton.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 In 2010, the Government published its proposals on the future of Public Health in the form of a White Paper. The Public Health White Paper 'Healthy Lives, Healthy People' stipulates a strengthened focus on public health. It places new public health responsibilities and resources in local government. A ring-fenced grant will be made available to Local Authorities. It commits to tackling health inequalities and establishes an integrated new service in Public Health England (PHE).

3.2 The White Paper clarifies the following:

- Confirming the leadership role of local government across the three domains of public health; health improvement, health protection and population healthcare.
- Setting out the proposed list of mandatory public health functions for local government
- Confirming that a limited number of core conditions will be placed on the ring-fenced grant to local authorities, to maximise flexibility while ensuring it is spent on public health.
- Setting out more detail on the new role of the director of public health in local authorities
- Specifying that clinical commissioning groups and the NHS

Commissioning Board will receive specialist population health commissioning advice from directors of public health

- Updating progress on the commissioning routes for public health,
- Setting out the high level principles for the new Emergency Preparedness, Resilience and Response system.

3.3 Services that Local Authorities will be mandated to provide are specified and responsibility, with ring fenced grant will be transferred to the Council in 2013, the main areas include:

- Tobacco control
- Alcohol and drug misuse services
- Obesity and community nutrition initiatives
- Increasing levels of physical activity in the population
- Assessment and lifestyle intervention as part of the NHS Health Check Programme
- Public mental health services
- Dental public health services
- Accidental injury prevention
- Population level interventions to prevent birth defects
- Local initiatives on workplace health
- Supporting, reviewing and challenging delivery of key public health funded and NHS delivered services such as immunisation programmes
- Comprehensive sexual health services including STI test and treat and abortion
- Local initiatives to reduce excess winter deaths

Health Visiting and Child development 0-5 years services will be transferred to the Local Authority in 2015.

3.4 Halton Borough Council suffers from some of the worst health inequalities in England. Until relatively recently Halton had the worst cancer survival rates, one of the highest number of hospital admissions due to alcohol and some of the worst life expectancy rates in England. Whilst NHS Halton & St. Helens public health service have attempted to provide advice to address these issues, the Borough has lacked a whole system and holistic approach to tackle health inequalities and health promotion. The White Paper therefore presents the Council with opportunities to improve the health of our local population. This approach is in line with the National Support Team for Health Inequalities and the Marmott Review and any proposals would need to incorporate:

- **Healthy Policies & Legislation:** Working with the policy team, legal services, trading standards, planning and environmental health to build on current good practice and implement health inducing policies and legislation e.g.: supplementary planning guidance on take-aways, healthy catering policy, smoke free

playgrounds. Research has demonstrated that unemployment is a barrier to improved health. It is therefore imperative that issues surrounding employment are at the core of policy development to ensure that health inequalities are addressed.

- **Training:** Build on current Train the Trainer Behaviour Change Programme and expand it. In addition identify opportunities to develop further training for Council staff/Elected Members, partners and community groups.
- **Team around the Community:** Integrated working so front line staff resources all mirror the “Team around the family” and Community team models ensuring that the interface with Acute trusts is maintained and developed.
- **Grouped services:** Physical integration of services as far as possible This will support full utilisation of all community resources for that area effectively e.g.
 - ✚ Green spaces
 - ✚ Professional support
 - ✚ Community development
 - ✚ Community fire stations
 - ✚ Council buildings- multi use around health
 - ✚ Care homes
 - ✚ Halton hospital site
- **Healthy Lifestyle Zones:** Workplaces, schools, colleges, hospitals, care homes, GPs, become zones where a range of health improvement services are available e.g. Vaccinations, stop smoking services, lifestyle advice, emotional health & well being. Within the Healthy Lifestyle Zones there is no unhealthy food, smoking, alcohol.
- **Healthy Lifestyle Programmes:** Continuation of current healthy lifestyle programmes including tobacco control, healthy eating, emotional health & well being, sexual health etc.

4.0 **BACKGROUND TO CURRENT SERVICES**

4.1 **Current Public Health Team**

Halton and St Helens PCT is currently responsible for providing expert public health guidance across Halton and St Helens Councils until 2013. The Public Health Team is not operational, it leads on strategy and policy for health protection, health improvement and public health intelligence. It consists of an acting Director of Public Health, Consultants in Public Health, a Public Health Intelligence Team, a business manager, Public Health Registrars and a

Foundation Level doctor. The Registrars and the Foundation Level doctor are currently in training and are attached to the Public Health Team for a specific time to gain experience and learning under the supervision of one of the Consultants. In addition to all of the above roles and service provision the Local Authority has been actively involved in supporting the Public Health agenda through policy, research, commissioning, strategy development and service provision at a community, family and individual level.

4.2 **Health Improvement Team**

Halton and St Helens PCT are currently responsible for commissioning Health Improvement Services for Halton and St Helens. It commissions these services from Bridgewater Community Trust, Warrington and Halton Foundation Trust Hospital, Knowsley Integrated Provider Service, Halton and St Helens voluntary sector and the private sector. Bridgewater Community Trust Health Improvement Team Manager coordinates the programmes in conjunction with senior managers from the other organisations. The Bridgewater Community Trust Health Improvement Team also delivers services on behalf of the Big Lottery Fund and Wirral PCT. There are currently 116 staff covering Halton and St Helens Councils with a variety of terms and conditions.

4.3 **Health Collaboration**

Currently there is a wide range of health improvement activity undertaken in partnership with the Local Authority. Underpinning this programme of work is the Children & Young People's Plan and a range of Adult Community areas, in particular, the Prevention and Early Intervention Strategy.

5.0 **FUTURE MODEL OF PROVISION**

5.1 The White Paper states that local authorities should be co terminus with their GP Commissioning Consortia and that a dedicated Director of Public Health should be the principal advisor on public health and be responsible for delivering the key new public health functions, including the production of an annual Public Health report. The Director of Public Health will be a member of the Health and Well Being Board, the Clinical Commissioning Senate, GP Commissioning Consortias, and expected to be a member of senior Boards and strategy groups for example Health and Well Being Boards.

There appears to be two primary options to consider:

- 1) **Halton & St. Helens Councils integrated commissioning model**

The Council could continue to approach public health in the same way as it is currently organised with more council emphasis upon commissioning. There would be one joint Director of Public Health for both Councils. This model would rely upon the Bridgewater Community Trust delivering health improvement services.

Advantages – some efficiencies could be identified, there would be less accountability for the provision of service.

Disadvantages – the Director of Public Health would be considerably stretched having to attend numerous Boards and groups and accountability may not be clear. Such a model would not be Halton focussed.

2) Integrated Halton approach

This model would be based upon a Council wide approach with its own Director of Public Health and Health Improvement Service. Appendix 1 provides more details on the proposed structure.

Advantages – Halton would have its own dedicated Director of Public Health and Health Improvement Service. There would be significant opportunities to integrate a range of differing Council services which would yield efficiencies. The focus would be upon Halton and its population and accountability would be much clearer. It would also provide opportunities to collaborate and be more holistic.

Disadvantages – robust emergency planning and public health on-call services would need to be in place.

It is possible to consider a Warrington partnership, however, the policies, services and approaches are substantially different and significant work would need to be undertaken to develop a future model and framework. However, it is suggested that dialogue with Warrington is undertaken to consider future longer term models.

- 5.2 It is therefore proposed that Halton has its own Public Health service that will provide health improvement services across Halton and to other areas if commissioned to do so. The team would be accountable to a dedicated Director of Public Health. It is proposed that an immediate appointment is made to provide the leadership necessary to implement the changes required before the 2013 transfer of responsibilities. The team will integrate the Public Health team and current Health improvement Team, with each department in Halton Borough Council that works around prevention and early intervention. They will deliver to the private sector, voluntary sector, schools, colleges, hospitals, care homes, GPs, the community and

local families. Appendix 2 outlines the proposed structure.

5.3 Appendix 3 details the proposed outline model of provision, which will incorporate a locality approach to the provision of health and well being services within Halton.

5.4 **Health Improvement Services Structure**

The proposed structure will deliver a Halton specific service, which is integrated within the Communities Directorate Adult Services Prevention and Assessment Division. The Divisional Manager for Health and well being services will also undertake the duties of Health Improvement lead within the public health team. The post will be responsible to the Operational Director prevention and assessment, and accountable to the Director of Public health for the Health improvement commissioning lead. In addition the service will be in a position to provide Health Improvement Services to neighbouring Authorities as required.

5.5 **Collaboration**

Although a Halton specific service is recommended it is recognised that the Council and its partners need to collaborate with a range of differing organisations within and outside of the Borough. For example, it could be more efficient and effective if social marketing campaigns are co-ordinated across Merseyside. We envisage there will be many other such examples of collective collaboration.

6.0 **POLICY IMPLICATIONS**

6.1 The report “Fair Society, Healthy Lives” the Marmot Review, published in February 2010 further endorsed the important role that Local Government plays in reducing health inequalities. The independent strategic review, chaired by Professor Sir Michael Marmot, made key policy recommendations in terms of the social determinants of health- where action is likely to be most effective in reducing health inequalities . These are:

- early child development and education
- employment arrangements and working conditions
- social protection
- the built environment
- sustainable development
- economic analysis
- delivery systems and mechanisms
- priority public health conditions
- social inclusion and social mobility.

7.0 **FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS**

7.1 Indicative budgets have been previously publicised and work has now commenced on the detailed budget. Immediate funding for a dedicated Director of Public Health for Halton has been confirmed by the Chief Executive for NHS Merseyside Cluster.

7.2 Overall, grant funding for public health will be determined in December 2011.

8.0 **HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

8.1 Should the model be accepted then there are a range of HR issues to be considered. TUPE will apply and Warrington Council, who appear to be the most advanced Council, have agreed to support Halton on the processes to transfer staff from NHS bodies.

9.0 **RISK ANALYSIS**

9.1 A comprehensive project plan is attached at Appendix 5.

9.2 From 2013 accountability for Public Health services will become the responsibility of Local Authorities and this will require a high level of planning and preparation to ensure that the transition is managed to avoid disruption to service users, carers, staff and stakeholders.

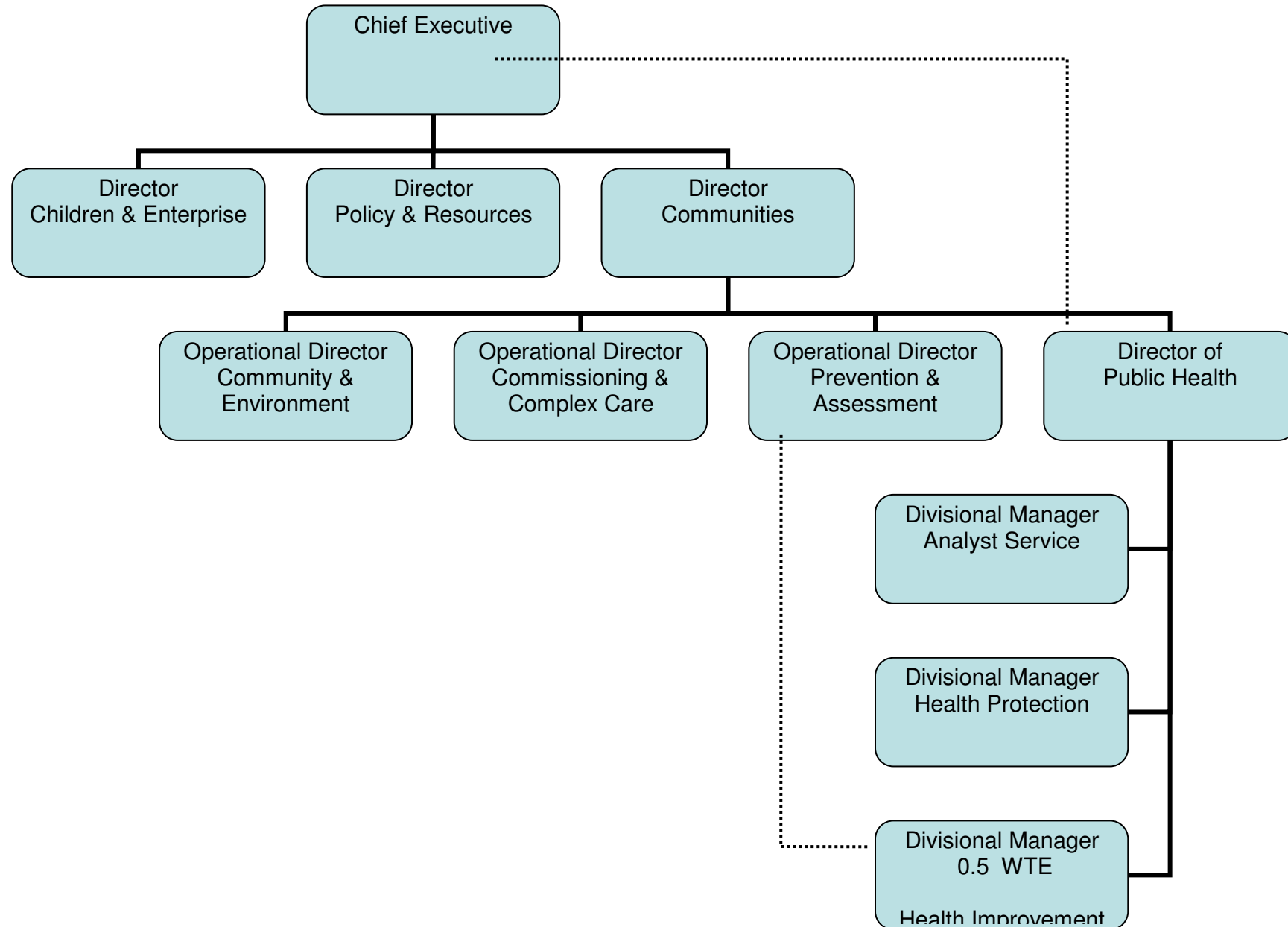
10.0 **EQUALITY & DIVERSITY ISSUES**

10.1 It has not been appropriate, at this stage, to complete a Community Impact Review & Assessment (CIRA), however at each stage within the project plan the equality issues will be addressed.

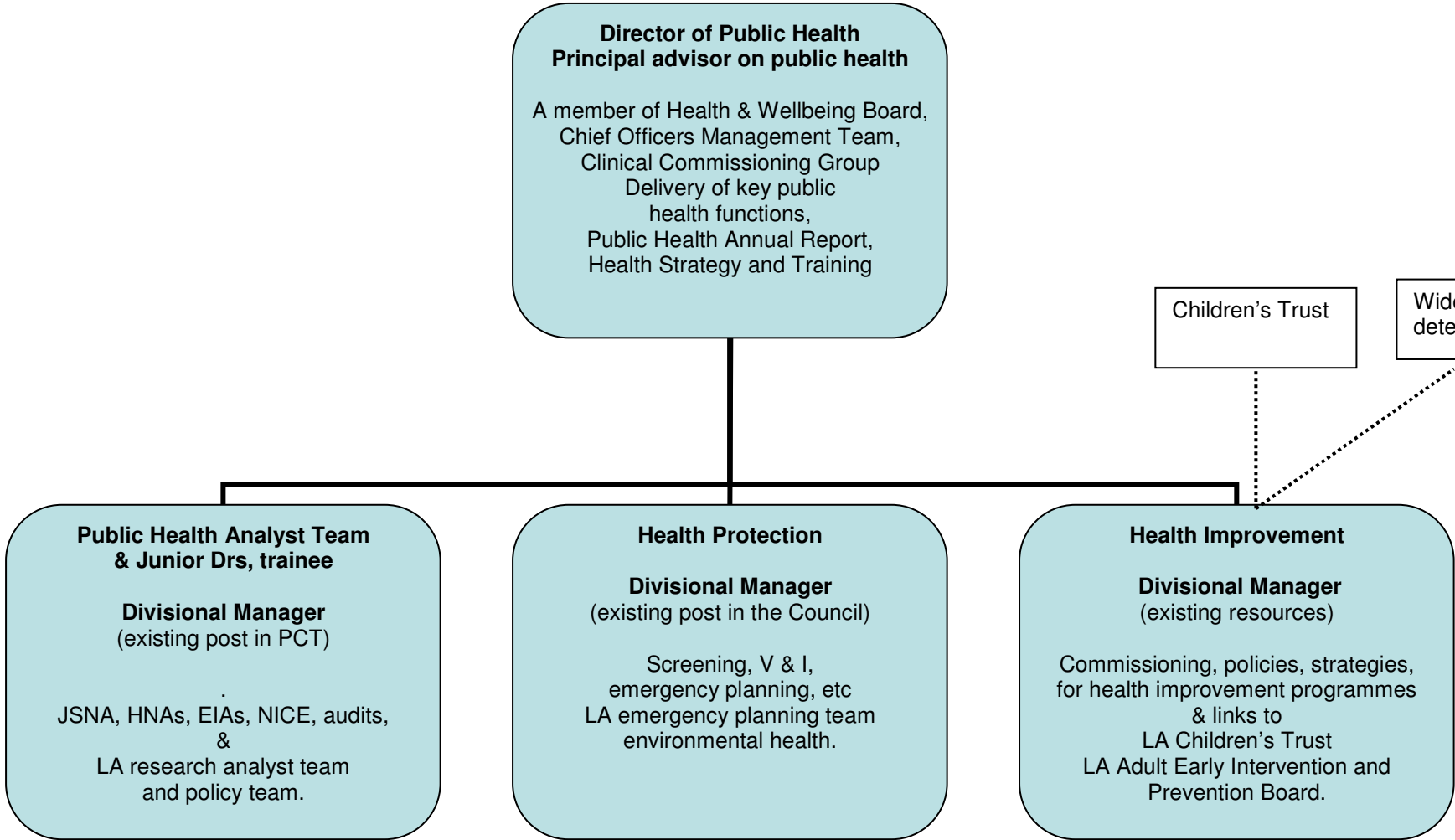
11.0 **LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972**

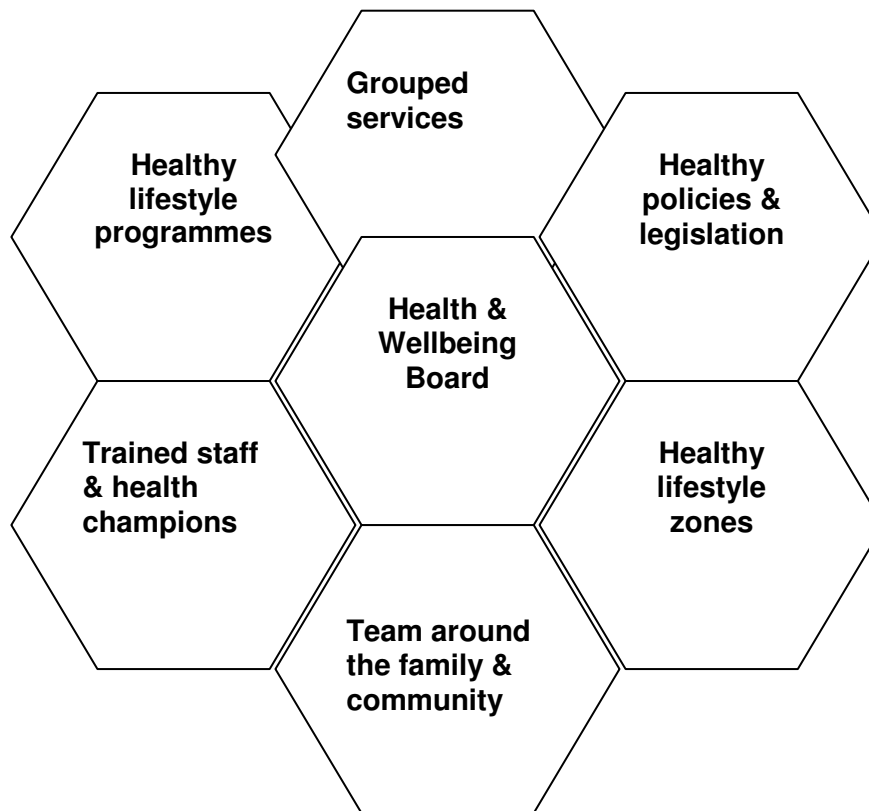
None under the meaning of the Act.

HALTON BOROUGH COUNCIL CHIEF OFFICER PROPOSED STRUCTURE



PROPOSED PUBLIC HEALTH TEAM





Project Timetable - Public Health

| Task | Lead | Partners | Aug | Sept | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan-Mar 2012 |
|--|------|--|--------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|---|--|
| Policy Issues | | | | | | | | |
| Review DH White paper -Healthy Lives,Healthy People:Our strategy for public health in England | DJ | DPH, Council Officers, Cluster and SHA | Summary report to COMT on key issues | | | | | |
| Review 'Healthy Lives, Healthy People' (DH, 2011) | DJ | GM, SWB, EOM, Bridgewater | Summary report to COMT on key issues | | | | | |
| Strategic and operational arrangements | | | | | | | | |
| Agree framework for operational services with Bridgewater (CYP and Adults) | DJ | COMT officers | Summary report to COMT on key issues | | | | | |
| Formulate options to establish principles, context, service delivery and structure for COMT consideration | DJ | Council Officers, Mersey cluster, DPH | Summary report to COMT on key issues | | | | Summary report to COMT on key issues | End March 2012 - shadow structures in place |
| Consult with NHS bodies staff and Trade Unions. | DJ | Council Officers, Mersey cluster, DPH | | | | | Consultation commences | Consultation ends |
| Implementation | | | | | | | | |
| Present report to Council Executive Board | DJ | Council Officers, Mersey cluster, DPH | | | | | | Jan 2012 - Present report to Council Executive Board |
| Access to NHS held data - physical access to NHS held data & joint agreement to cover confidentiality. | IL | HBC, NHS, Mersey cluster, DPH | | | | | | Agree process |
| PH trainees - arrangements in place for PH Registrars, foundation doctors and students to rotate as part of HBC workforce. | DJ | HBC, NHS and Mersey cluster, DPH | | | | | | Confirm approach and arrangements |
| Review accommodation strategy and transfer staff | IL | COMT, NHS | | | | | | Transfer staff |
| Raise awareness of public health functions in Local Authority | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Budget | | | | | | | | |
| Review indicative budget allocation | BD | BD/DJ/GM in conjunction with Health partners | | | | | Budget reviewed and services/teams formulated against | |
| Complete financial assessment and identify financial risks | BD | BD/DJ/GM in conjunction with Health partners | | | | | | Compile COMT report - end March 2012 |
| HR and Communications Strategy | | | | | | | | |

| Task | Lead | Partners | Aug | Sept | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan-Mar 2012 |
|---|------|-------------------------------|-----|------|-----|----------------------------|--|---|
| Agree HR approach and prepare staff, agency and stakeholder and public communications strategy. | IL | COMT, NHS, Mersey Cluster | | | | | Draft HR approach agreed and strategy prepared | |
| Council and Public Health Priorities | | | | | | | | |
| Agree Council and PH priorities | DJ | COMT and NHS partners | | | | | | Agree priorities |
| Health Protection | | | | | | | | |
| Agree local arrangements with health protection units. | DJ | HBC, Mersey Cluster, DPH, NHS | | | | | | Local arrangements in place |
| Ensure emergency planning processes functioning properly. | DJ | HBC, Mersey Cluster, DPH, NHS | | | | Review emergency processes | | Agreed emergency processes in place. |
| Check on call rota established. | DJ | HBC, Mersey Cluster, DPH, NHS | | | | Review on-call rota | | |
| Intelligence | | | | | | | | |
| Ensure there is a model for robust public health intelligence. | DJ | HBC, Mersey Cluster, DPH, NHS | | | | | Review existing process | Incorporate as part of the Council planning process |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director - Communities

SUBJECT: Rough Sleeping

WARDS: Borough wide

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

- 1.1 To inform the Board that Halton has been part of a City Region Task Group (Halton, Knowsley, Liverpool, Sefton, St Helens, and Wirral) working initially to reduce rough sleeping across the city region, with a vision to eradicate rough sleeping by 2012.

This report seeks approval to sign up to the attached 'No Second Night Out' protocol (Appendix 1) that sets out how the initiative will be delivered across the city region and our role in supporting the partnership.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That the Board note and approve the 'No Second Night Out' Protocol.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

- 3.1 In the 21st century no one should have to sleep rough. Rough Sleepers are those who are roofless, sleeping on the streets or bedded down in open air areas, or other places that are not designated for habitation. It is a dangerous and traumatizing experience. Rough sleepers have an average life expectancy of just 42 years and are 35 times more likely to commit suicide than the general population.

- 3.2 As well as the often severe social, psychological and physical toll that rough sleeping has on people, it generates significant financial costs. A report by Crisis in 2003 (the most up to date report of its type) estimated that a single homeless person costs the public purse approximately £24,500 a year. These costs include the following:

- failed tenancies
- health and substance misuse problems
- regular contact with A&E departments
- involvement with the police and criminal justice system. (homeless people are often at more risk of coming into contact with the criminal justice system and being victims of crime)

- prolonged unemployment and costs of welfare
- benefits and economic inactivity
- Environmental costs of cleaning up and securing rough sleeper sites

3.3 Halton's Rough Sleeper figure submitted to the Department of Communities and Local Government (CLG) for 2010/11 was 2. However, it is recognised that there is a small number of rough sleepers within the district and it is therefore necessary to ensure that effective services are available for Halton's rough sleepers.

CLG have awarded Liverpool an additional £120K in funding to lead on a project across the city region to address single homelessness and reduce rough sleeping. This funding is in addition to the Preventing Homelessness Grant that CLG award to Halton Council annually. The following local authorities have agreed to work together to develop this area of work:

- Halton Borough Council
- Knowsley Borough Council
- Liverpool City Council
- Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council
- St Helen's Metropolitan Council
- Wirral Borough Council

3.4 A City Region task group has been set up which meets monthly to oversee the development of a City Region Protocol which will have the following vision:

“By the **end of 2012**, no one will live on the streets of Liverpool City Region and no individual arriving on the streets for the first time will sleep out for more than one night.”

This is an ambitious but achievable vision for our City Region. An early draft of the protocol is attached in Appendix A which outlines how we intend to achieve this. The key points of this are:

- developing “One point of contact” for reporting rough sleepers across the City Region (i.e. one phone number / email address)
- Ensuring that appropriate services are available across the whole of the City Region
- Assurance that clients sleeping rough within Halton will be accommodated temporarily on the first night and referred directly to the Sub Regional outreach services.
- The Outreach Officer will determine the client's circumstances, accommodation needs and area connection.

- If applicable, the Officer will arrange for the client to return back to the identified connecting authority area. In all cases a personalised solutions client action plan will be devised to address and resolve the housing and social needs.

Discussions are already underway with Liverpool's main provider of services to rough sleepers, the Whitechapel centre to identify what services need to be accessed to support rough sleepers in each local authority area.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

- 4.1 No identified implications however, approval is sought to sign up to and progress with the work to reduce rough sleeping across the City Region. The timescale for implementation, subject to Board approval, will be September 2011 – March 2013.

5.0 FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 5.1 This scheme will require no additional funding from the Council, as the proposal is funded through a CLG grant to the City Region of £120k (£60k per year for two years). The protocol aims to eradicate rough sleeping by 2012 and does not commit the Council to services beyond that date. However, the City region task group will evaluate the effectiveness of the services in year two, with a view to developing an exit strategy for each region in the partnership.

Additional funding is also available from the national charity Crisis. This funding can be accessed to develop existing schemes to support single people and rough sleepers to access the private rented sector; and priority will be given to extending existing schemes on a geographical basis.

Liverpool already have an existing scheme funded by Crisis, for rough sleepers (delivered by the Whitechapel Centre) and the City Region task group have submitted a sub regional bid for this funding to extend this scheme. This would provide an additional resource to achieve the "No Second Night Out Vision".

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

No Implications

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

No Implications

6.3 A Healthy Halton

Through working with rough sleepers, services will identify people

with entrenched complex health needs; and work to ensure that the required support, care and health services are in place to reduce the negative toll on both the individual and population.

6.4 A Safer Halton

Homeless people and in particular rough sleepers are often at more risk of coming into contact with the criminal justice system and being victims of crime. The rough sleeper's service will link in with criminal justice agencies to reduce levels of re-offending and to reduce the risk of clients being victims of crime.

6.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

No Implications

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 No risks have been identified at this point.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 This protocol is about ensuring that there is even more access to services for the most socially excluded, regardless of their location in the City Region, for example, outreach services, cold weather provision and wrap around support solutions.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS

9.1 None

Liverpool City Region “No Second Night” Standard:

Our vision is that by the **end of 2012**, no one will live on the streets of Liverpool City Region and no individual arriving on the streets for the first time will sleep out for more than one night.

This is a Liverpool City Region Project signed up to by the following authorities:

- Halton Borough Council
- Knowsley Borough Council
- Liverpool City Council
- Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council
- St Helen’s Metropolitan Council
- Wirral Borough Council

Delivering this standard as a City Region Project will enable us to be more equipped to achieve this as all local authorities in the city region will be working together in a co-ordinated way by pooling resources and intelligence.

For the purpose of this protocol, a rough sleeper is:

People sleeping, about to bed down (sitting on/in or standing next to their bedding) or actually bedded down in the open air (such as on the streets, in tents (inappropriate use of tents), doorways, parks, bus shelters or encampments). People in buildings or other places not designed for habitation (such as stairwells, barns, sheds, car parks, cars, derelict boats, stations, or “bashes”).
Definition taken from Evaluating the Extent of Rough Sleeping. Communities and Local Government September 2010

We will also use the following sub definitions to identify the extent of the issue:

New Rough Sleepers (Flow): people who move onto the streets for the first time in the year (Financial year)

Continuing Rough Sleepers (Stock): people who were sleeping rough in the previous year as well as the one in which the analysis is being undertaken

Returning Rough Sleepers: (Returners): people who have been seen previously on the streets but not in the preceding year. Definition taken from No One Left Out Communities and Local Government Nov 2008



In principle, we will deliver this by:

(Not all local authorities will want or need to sign up to every aspect of the protocol)

- **Gathering intelligence:**
 - ❖ Providing one point of contact for reporting rough sleepers (one phone number for the whole of the City Region)
 - ❖ Rolling out Liverpool's rough sleepers database across the city region and sharing good practice re Liverpool's tracking group across the city region
 - ❖ Co-ordinating rough sleeper estimates and counts across the City Region
- **Contact:** extending outreach services across the city region, ensuring that any rough sleeper in the city region can be reached and offered a service
- **Enforcement:** ensure that rough sleepers who refuse to come indoors are subject to appropriate enforcement action (to be agreed)
- **Co-ordinating Cold Weather provision**
- **Offer individualised solutions:**
 - ❖ ensuring that the right support is given at the right time, without duplication between agencies, through monthly tracking meetings
 - ❖ developing a comprehensive menu of services which are available in each local authority area (draft attached as Appendix 1). Please note that smaller local authorities may not need the services that the larger local authorities require
 - ❖ ensuring that each local authority has, as a minimum, access to the following services for rough sleepers:
 - outreach services
 - reconnection

We will ensure that rough sleepers who refuse to come indoors:

- continue to be offered support and options to come indoors and move away from a rough sleeping lifestyle
- understand fully the solution(s) that they have been offered and refused and have the capacity to make the decision to refuse these options
- are subject to appropriate enforcement action if they have unreasonably refused offers of accommodation (we need to decide how will this be agreed)

We will also examine locations which are continuously used as rough sleeping sites to see whether there are factors that require environmental enforcement, for example, unsafe or illegal disposal of rubbish / food.

Responsibilities of each local authority: It is important to recognise that the provider of outreach services cannot solve rough sleeping on their own. Each local authority will be expected to have the following framework in place:

- To be able to respond to reports of rough sleepers, bring people indoors and prevent a second night out, the project staff from the Whitechapel Centre will require same day access to accommodation options. While the project staff will be able to negotiate these on a daily basis there needs to be a commitment from accommodation providers within each authority
- Space / use of meeting room to carry out assessments
- Commitment from enforcement agencies such as the Police and Environmental Enforcement Teams
- Commitment to data sharing agreement
- Each authority will need to help identify and bring relevant key personnel to their tracking meetings
- Clearly identified processes for referring to social services / mental health services

Funding: Liverpool City Region has been given £120,000 to fund this project. This money can be spent over two years.

Funding is also available from Crisis to develop existing schemes to support single people and rough sleepers to access the private rented sector, and priority will be given to extending existing schemes geographically. A voluntary sector organisation must apply for the funding.

Exit strategy: There is no commitment to provide any additional cross authority services for rough sleepers beyond the term of this funding. However, the impact of the increased outreach provision and the co-ordination of services will be measured quarterly. The project group will then look at the resource implications of continuing the standard beyond 2012 and make recommendations to the City Region authorities.

The following Local Authorities have signed up to the following different aspects of this protocol:

| | Providing one point of contact for reporting rough sleepers | Rolling out Liverpool's rough sleepers database | Co-ordinating rough sleeper estimates and counts across the City Region | Extend outreach service across the city region | Ensure that rough sleepers who refuse to come indoors are subject to appropriate enforcement action | Co-ordinating Cold Weather provision | Offer individualised solutions | Facilitate reconnection | Access to the private rented sector scheme with Crisis |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|--|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Halton Borough Council | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Knowsley Borough Council | ✓ | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Liverpool City Council | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| St Helen's Metropolitan Council | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Wirral Borough Council | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |

This protocol has been signed up to and agreed by the following representative of each of the city region Local Authorities:

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of Halton Borough Council</p> | <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of Knowsley Borough Council</p> |
| <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of Liverpool City Council</p> | <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council</p> |
| <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of St Helen's Metropolitan Borough Council</p> | <p>Signed by:</p> <p>Print Name:</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>On Behalf of Wirral Borough Council</p> |

Appendix One: Menu of services for rough sleepers across the city region:

| | Halton Borough Council | Knowsley Borough Council | Liverpool City Council | Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council | St Helens Metropolitan Council | Wirral Borough Council |
|--|---|---|--|--|--|---|
| Rough Sleepers Outreach Service | No provision | No provision | Early morning and evening outreach service provided by Whitechapel Centre | No provision | No provision | Only as per street drinking below |
| Street Drinkers Outreach Service | No provision | No provision | Afternoon and evening outreach service provided by the Basement | No provision | No provision | 2 town centre street drinking project outreach workers employed by Phoenix, funded by DASS. Workers are confined to Birkenhead town centre |
| Day centre services / Enablement Services | No provision | No provision | Day Centre Service focused on enabling rough sleepers to move away from the lifestyle through education, training and meeting health needs | Salvation Army Community Centre in Bootle provides meals and shower facilities | HOPE House provide meals and showers certain week days till 2.30. Advice & support on housing is available. This is a service that rough sleepers/chaotics may attend. | Drop in centre at Ark in the morning. Access to nurse and mental health assessment Charles Thompson mission provides hot meals and clothes etc for anyone presenting including rough sleepers and families in poverty (has been operational since 1800s). Nurse clinic also held here. |
| Night shelter provision | No provision | No provision | | No provision | No provision | Provided at both YMCA |
| Cold Weather Provision | Designated accommodation made available from Dec – Mar when trigger temps are hit | Field Lane Hostel to provide a 'sit up' service during the cold weather - use of their lounge. Agreement not yet finalised | Overnight shelter available from Dec to March when trigger temperatures are hit. Additional outreach and support also available Dec to March | Overnight shelter available from Dec to March when trigger temperatures are hit. | Salvation Army/YMCA provide a 'sit up' service during the cold weather - use of their lounge. | As above |
| Ring fenced beds | 3 beds ring fenced for rough sleepers within designated hostels during bad weather conditions | No provision | 12 beds ring fenced for rough sleepers in 6 different hostels | No provision | No provision | Only 1 ring fenced bed for 16 and 17 year olds |

| | Halton Borough Council | Knowsley Borough Council | Liverpool City Council | Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council | St Helens Metropolitan Council | Wirral Borough Council |
|---|---|--|--|--|---|---|
| Personalised solutions | No provision | No provision | Budget set aside from Preventing homelessness grant for personalized solutions | No provision | No provision | None set aside but can be available through Homeless Prevention Grant |
| Reconnections | No provision | Only as and when on an ad hoc basis for cases through hostels or Housing Options team | Reconnections are facilitated by the outreach team provided from the Whitechapel Centre | No provision | No provision | As and when on an ad hoc basis for cases through hostels or Housing Options team |
| Homeless Nurses | No provision | GP Options Service available on 0800 917 3683. They provide appointments in every town and evenings and weekends. | 2 homelessness nurses based in city centre GP practice which is an enhanced GP service for homeless people – also has an alcohol nurse and leg ulcer nurse | No provision | There is a Lifestyles Team run by the PCT which includes a Health for Homeless section. They engage and support with homeless/rough sleepers etc and link in with services. Currently one nurse and one support worker. | One outreach nurse for homeless clients visits all hostels and drop-in centres. Evening nursing service at the Ark (2 hours x 5 sessions). Originally only for Ark residents but now open to other homeless people as a pilot project. |
| Mental Health service for homeless | Mental health outreach team | Options GP can refer them into services. | Mental Health Outreach Team | CHART assists with homeless and in-ward hospital assessment | Nurse in Health for Homeless Team is a qualified RMN as well as RGN. Links established with mental Health services | Mental Health Practitioner for homeless people |
| Street Resettlement Project | Prevention and bond guarantee scheme available | No provision | Rent bond and support scheme to enable rough sleepers to access the private rented sector | No provision | No provision | Informally through the Town Centre Outreach Team and through the SP Pathway |
| General hostel provision | 2 x single homeless hostel accommodation Age 16-65 1 x Single hostel Age 16-25 1 Complex needs age 16 – 25 1x 32 independent schem for families and teen mothers 1 x women's refuge | 1 Hostel for single males aged 18+, no current provision for single females and couples. This will be available in the future. | | Accommodation for young people via Forum Housing Association. Bosco Society hostel for substance misuse. Leo Project for abstinent alcohol addiction | 2 hostels for single homeless. Another hostel for single homeless females only. | SP funded hostels, refuge, foyer, mother and baby units etc |

| | Halton Borough Council | Knowsley Borough Council | Liverpool City Council | Sefton Metropolitan Borough Council | St Helens Metropolitan Council | Wirral Borough Council |
|-------|------------------------|--------------------------|--|---|---|--|
| Other | | | The Basement The Big Issue in the North | No provision Did have a project targeted at A8 Migrant Workers in Southport but funding has ended. Also quite strong Faith support for homelessness in Southport. | SP provision for young (foyer + supported lodgings), and offenders. | Local voluntary group is setting up a Trussell Trust food bank. Hospital homeless discharge link worker funded by PCT and Homeless Prevention fund to ensure people not homeless on discharge |
| | | | | | | Homeless/Hospital Discharge Worker Based at Arrow Park Hospital, will try to arrange accommodation for homeless people in hospital. |
| | | | | | | Homeless people may access detox and rehab services with support from other organisations |



REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

PORTFOLIO HOLDER: Chief Executive

SUBJECT: Police and Crime Commissioner Update
and Elections May 2012

WARDS: All Wards

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

To update Members on Government proposals to establish Police and Crime Commissioners for all English Police Authority Areas

To inform Members of the appointment of the Chief Executive as the Police Area Returning Officer (PARO) for the Cheshire Police Force Area for the proposed Police and Crime Commissioner elections in May 2012.(should these elections proceed)

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That

1) the contents of the report be noted; and

2) the Council notes and supports the appointment of the Chief Executive as the Police Area Returning Officer (PARO), for the Cheshire Police Force Area for the proposed Police and Crime Commissioner Elections in May 2012. (should these elections proceed)

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

The Police Reform and Social Responsibility Bill is currently before Parliament and if enacted will introduce directly elected Police and Crime Commissioners (PCCs) across England and Wales from May 2012.

The proposed legislation is controversial and not universally supported and is currently the subject of tension between the House of Commons and the House of Lords. However, current indications are that the Government remain committed to the proposal therefore there is a strong probability the legislation will be enacted in some form or another.

The first PCC elections would take place on 3 May 2012. The boundaries for the elections will be the 41 Police Force areas in England and Wales. Each of them will require a Police Area Returning Officer (PARO) who will be responsible for the overall conduct of the election for the relevant Police Force area.

Applications for the PARO role were requested by the Home Office and had to be submitted by 15 August.

With the support and agreement of the Chief Executives of Warrington, Cheshire East and Cheshire West and Chester, the Police Authority and the Cheshire and Warrington Leadership Board the Chief Executive was invited to submit an application.

The Chief Executive has been informed that this application was successful and has been appointed PARO for the Cheshire Police Force Area, should these elections proceed.

The PARO role is key to these elections.

The Chief Executive will liaise with and co-ordinate the work of the Local Returning Officers who cover the Cheshire Police Force Area in his capacity as the PARO, in a similar way to the role of the Regional Returning Officer for the recent European Parliamentary Elections and this years AV Referendum.

PCC elections will be combined with the local elections where they are taking place on the same day as is the usual practice when there are multiple elections.

4.0 POLICY, FINANCIAL AND OTHER IMPLICATIONS

There are no specific policy or financial implications.
The Government will fund the proposed Elections.

5.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 **Children and Young People in Halton** – There are no implications arising from this report.

6.2 **Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton** – There are no implications arising from this report.

6.3 **A Healthy Halton** – There are no implications arising from this report.

6.4 **A Safer Halton** – There are no implications arising from this report.

6.5 **Halton's Urban Renewal** - There are no implications arising from this report.

6.0 RISK ANALYSIS

A full risk assessment will be undertaken to ensure the smooth running of the PCC and any local elections . A detailed risk assessment election

plan for the May 2012 Elections (Local and PCC) will be drawn up when the PCC legislation is finalised by Parliament.

7.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

7.1 The PARO will be required to ensure all eligible voters can vote in the PCC Elections (and any other local elections) and that access arrangements to polling stations are available to all whatever their disability

8.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

None under the meaning of the Act.

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director – Children and Enterprise

SUBJECT: Department of Work and Pensions / European Social Fund Programme for Families with Multiple Problems

WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

1.1 To inform the Board of the progress to date on the development and roll-out of the Department for Work and Pensions(DWP) / European Social Fund (ESF) programme and proposed next actions.

2.0 RECOMMENDED: That the Board endorse and support the actions to date.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 Background to the DWP / ESF Programme

The following information summarises key points relating to this funding:

European Social Fund (England) 2011 – 2013

The Department for Work and Pensions (DWP), as an approved co-financer, has been delivering European Social Fund (ESF) provision since 2007, with current contracts finishing in summer 2011.

A second phase of ESF funding is now available to DWP and the Minister for Employment, Chris Grayling, has agreed this should be used to support workless households and, in particular, families with multiple problems. This is in line with the ESF objectives that DWP operates under, which are:

- Priority 1: extending employment opportunities;
- Priority 4: tackling barriers to employment (Cornwall and Isles of Scilly only).

Families with multiple problems are a priority for the government. In December 2010, the Prime Minister made a commitment to try to turn around every troubled family in the country by 2015. These families have complex needs, the worst outcomes and make significant and costly demands on local services. The second phase of ESF provision is being developed alongside the national roll-out of Community Budgets for families with multiple problems.

Contracts for this provision will be let through the Department's Framework for Employment Related Services. DWP is currently finalising the specification and supporting documentation in readiness for the start of the procurement exercise. They anticipate provision will start in late 2011/early 2012.

The Minister is keen to provide an integrated approach that aligns with other activity across government, including services for families with multiple problems delivered by Local Authorities.

DWP's approach involves Local Authorities being the prime means of identifying those families/households that will benefit from the additional support which will be provided through the contracts that they let. It is expected that families with multiple problems who could benefit from employment focussed support will be prioritised. This could include families that have been stabilised following intensive support from family intervention services. It is a DWP requirement that local arrangements are put in place to ensure alignment with Local Authority support. As part of these arrangements DWP expects providers to work closely with Local Authorities to explore local opportunities and to ensure that their proposals are appropriate for the area.

3.2 How the funding will be targeted

This provision is aimed at individuals in multi generational families with multiple problems that require support to move into employment. Many of these families are already known to and receiving support from local authorities; therefore, local authorities will identify families to participate in this provision.

DWP expects individuals identified for this provision to have significant and/or multiple barriers to work. Therefore the ESF provision will require a whole family approach to tackling the entrenched worklessness and complex need of these families.

To be eligible, families will have to have at least one member on DWP out of work benefits and a history of worklessness in the family.

3.3 The DWP / ESF process

- The process is as follows:
 - DWP has developed a Framework of approved providers (Prime providers, or "primes") which have been invited to bid for the ESF contracts
 - Primes have been allocated regional footprints within which they can operate
 - Primes contact LAs within their regional footprint – not all primes allocated to a region have been or will be in contact with each LA

- Only one prime will operate in each CPA (contract package area)
- Primes make direct contact with the LA single point of contact (this sits with commissioning – in this instance, the single point of contact is myself) and ask for information via a series of pre-set questions – this is implemented via face to face meetings or telephone conferencing
- LAs provide all primes allocated to their region with precisely the same information, whether or not the prime has made contact
- LAs identify how many families would be appropriate for this programme, how the additional support would add value, how families will be referred, how ongoing joint work would be implemented throughout the life of the contract etc
- Primes then develop their bid and share this with the LA – the LA will then agree or otherwise to support the bid. Bids can only go forward to DWP with LA support. Closing date for submission is 30 August 2011
- DWP reviews the bids and decides which prime is successful – LAs are informed in mid-October which prime has been successful, with work to start in December 2011

3.4 Risks and Opportunities

Risks

- Potential risks for families are focused upon the implications for any families on the programme who do not complete the action plan they agree with providers, including escalation of their needs due to the additional pressure arising from participation in this programme
- The DWP stance has been that additional support via this programme can be delivered to a family for a maximum of 12 months and that the support should commence only when the family has been 'stabilised' following intensive support. At the same time, DfE is very clear that the programme is designed for the 120,000 families nationally with the most complex problems. Our concern is that this position is untenable, as it presumes that families with the most complex problems will make linear progress on an upward trajectory, which we know is not necessarily the case. In practice, using this assumption as the basis for a delivery model will result in the exclusion of some families at the outset in case they 'fail' within the prescribed timescale. It could also lead to families dropping out of the programme and possibly escalating to specialist services due to the additional employment-focused commitment required from them, because there is no provision for a 'stop and start again' approach that is responsive to changes in circumstances. We have re-negotiated this element of the contract but must remain aware that we will not necessarily be able to

monitor all elements of the contract, depending upon which provider is successful in being awarded the contract

- If the successful bid does not involve the LA or its partners as subcontractors, Halton would not be able to claw back funding for any service delivery and would inevitably incur some costs, at the very least through the DWP requirement to assess and refer families. LAs nationally are working to address issues of full cost recovery (Lancashire is leading on this) but there is no indication to date that DWP will release funding in recompense. There is also the very significant concern relating to some of our most vulnerable families being subject to lengthy, intensive interventions that take place outside our quality assurance processes and which may not be in their best long-term interest, therefore incurring LA and partner services' costs if additional problems arise

Opportunities

- There is potential for subcontracting arrangements to generate resources for HBC services – at recent meetings, it was agreed that the focus of this would be funding for FIP (Family Intervention Project within Team around the Family) to support the ESF programme
- The majority of LAs within Halton's CPA (Contract Package Area) have agreed to take a sub-regional approach with a view to maximising the value and opportunities from this programme across the whole CPA. This will also ensure that subcontracting to LAs is a largely collective requirement and is therefore more likely to meet DWP criteria stating that bids must demonstrate that they meet the needs of the specific CPA – thus maximising the potential success rate for those bids that propose subcontracting to LAs
- Further embedding of links across Halton People Into Jobs/Enterprise/Adult Learning/Children and Families services, with enhanced opportunities to develop a cohesive approach
- Achieving progress in employability for some of our most vulnerable families, and the subsequent impact this will have upon Child and Family Poverty in Halton, together with a developing focus upon this area of work as a targeted medium/ longer term outcome for families with multiple problems

3.5 Next Actions and Timeline

- Once information is available regarding which providers have been successful in moving to the next stage, meetings with partner agencies to develop processes, systems, links and outcomes (September – November 2011)

- When DWP inform LAs of outcome of bidding process and identify the single successful provider, meeting to take place with all partners to develop next actions (November 2011)

4.0. IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

4.1 Children and Young People in Halton

This project will work with the families with multiple and complex problems to improve providing additional support to improve their outcomes and increase their chance of obtaining work..

4.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

The aim of the project is to support problems with multiple problems to that they can gain employment.

4.3 A Healthy Halton

N/A

4.4 A Safer Halton

N/A.

4.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

N/A

5.0 RISK ANALYSIS

5.1 Risks are identified under paragraph 3.4 of this report..

6.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

6.1 The DWP/ESF project is aimed at addressing a major source of inequality within the borough through by attempting to address worklessness in some of the families with the most complex needs.

7.0 REASON FOR DECISION

7.1 To support the actions and progress to date..

8.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

The authority could choose not to support bids by providers. This option was rejected as providers will still be working with Halton Families even if Halton does

not participate in the scheme. By supporting and agreeing to work with providers the Authority can better join up support to families, provide support and influence the project.

9.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

9.1 It is anticipated that provision will start in late Autumn 2011 or early Spring 2012..

10.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|--|----------------------------|--|
| DWP/ESF Guidance | C&YPD | Julie Karmy Commissioning Manager – |
| Letters and contacts with prime providers | C&YPD | As above |

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director – Policy & Resources

SUBJECT: Polling Districts/Polling Stations Review

WARDS: All Wards

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 To inform Members of the results of the formal Polling District, Places and Stations Review, highlight recommended changes to the polling scheme and put forward a revised polling scheme for approval.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION:

That Council be recommended to adopt the amendments to the scheme detailed in the appendix to the report for the period 2011-2014.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

The Electoral Administration Act 2006 requires the Council to carry out a review of all its polling stations every four years. The main purpose of the review is to ensure that all residents have reasonable facilities for voting.

As part of the review process we have to consult electors, councillors and other interested parties. Details of all polling districts and polling stations were on the Council's website and notices were placed in the Direct Link offices. Comments were required by 1 August and those received have been taken into account.

The responses to the consultation were considered by the Polling Station Review Working Party on 18 August 2011. The recommendations of the Working Party are detailed in the Appendix.

4.0 POLICY, FINANCIAL AND OTHER IMPLICATIONS

There are no specific policy implications although it is important to ensure that all electors have equal access to polling stations and places in line with the Council's priority on accessibility of services. Subject to the decisions on the location of polling stations there may or may not be financial implications.

5.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

- 6.1 **Children and Young People in Halton** – If polling stations are situated in the right places it could encourage voter turnout for electors in this age group.
- 6.2 **Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton** – There are no implications arising from this report.
- 6.3 **A Healthy Halton** – The provision of polling stations in suitable locations could encourage engagement with the democratic process and in turn promote a healthy living environment.
- 6.4 **A Safer Halton** – The location of polling stations in a safe environment for all electors could encourage voter turnout.
- 6.5 **Halton's Urban Renewal** - There are no implications arising from this report.

6.0 RISK ANALYSIS

There are no risk assessment implications.

7.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

- 7.1 Historically every effort has been made to make sure that all polling buildings are accessible for electors with disabilities. At the most recent elections problems were encountered with access for wheelchair users and action was taken on the day to enable the elector to exercise their right to vote. It is important to ensure that all electors have equal access to polling stations and places in line with the Council's priority on accessibility of services.

8.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

None under the meaning of the Act.

APPENDIX**POLLING DISTRICTS/POLLING STATION REVIEW****APPLETON WARD**

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| BA | Wade Deacon High School (Lower Wing), Peelhouse Lane, Widnes | 1373 | None |
| BB | St Bedes Catholic Junior School, Leigh Avenue, Widnes | 1120 | None |
| BC | Fairfield Infants School, Peelhouse Lane, Widnes | 1564 | None |
| BD | Mobile Polling Station, Frederick Street/Dickson Street, Widnes | 229 | None |
| BE | St Maries Church & Parish Hall, Lugsdale Road, Widnes | 458 | None |

BEECHWOOD WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|-----------------------------|
| PA | Beechwood Primary School, Grasmere Drive, Runcorn | 1382 | Beechwood Community Centre. |
| PB | Hillview Primary School, Beechwood Avenue, Runcorn | 1674 | None |

BIRCHFIELD WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|--|
| XA | Mobile Polling Station, Upton Tavern Car Park, Upton Lane, Widnes | 3331 | None for local elections. Investigate the siting of an additional mobile for a Parliamentary Election. |
| XB | Mobile Polling Station, Queensbury Way, Widnes | 1656 | None |

BROADHEATH WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| FA | Our Lady's Church Hall, Mayfield Avenue, Widnes | 663 | None |
| FB | Mobile Polling Station, Delamere Avenue (rear of Quarry Court), Widnes | 809 | None |
| FC | Mobile Polling Station, The Bankfield School, Liverpool Road, Widnes | 903 | None |
| FD | Mobile Polling Station, Blundell Road/Hanley Road, Widnes | 1199 | None |
| FE | Widnes Rugby Union Football Club, Heath Road, Widnes | 1226 | None |

DARESBUY WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| TK | Milner Institute, Runcorn Road, Moore, Runcorn | 653 | None |
| TL | Daresbury Primary School, Chester Road, Daresbury, Warrington | 198 | None |
| TM | Village Hall, Preston Brook, Runcorn | 621 | None |
| TT | Sandymoor Community Centre, Otterburn Street, Off Pitts Heath Lane, Sandymoor, Runcorn | 1884 | None |

DITTON WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|--|
| GA | Nursery Unit, Oakfield Infants School, Edinburgh Road, Widnes | 759 | No change but officers investigate the use of a semi-permanent ramp. |
| GB | Our Lady of Perpetual Succour Catholic Primary School, Clincton View, Widnes | 1112 | None |
| GC | Halebank Youth Club, Baguley Avenue, Widnes | 1334 | None |
| GD | Mobile Polling Station, Ditchfield Road, Widnes | 941 | None |
| GE | Our Lady's Church Hall, Mayfield Avenue, Widnes | 654 | None |
| GF | Scout Hut, Hall Avenue, Widnes | 553 | None |

FARNWORTH WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| AA | Lunts Heath Primary School, Wedgewood Drive, Widnes | 2617 | None |
| AB | Farnworth CE Controlled Primary School, Pit Lane, Widnes | 1619 | None |
| AC | Moorfield Primary School, School Way, Widnes (shared with Halton View Ward) | 851 | None |
| AD | Farnworth Methodist Church Hall, Derby Road, Widnes | 529 | None |

GRANGE WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| NA | Bertha's Room, St Edwards Parish Centre, Ivy Street, Runcorn | 1343 | None |
| NB | Grangeway Community Centre, Grangeway, Runcorn | 1542 | None |
| NC | Halton Lodge Primary School, Grangeway, Runcorn | 2026 | None |

HALE WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|------------------|
| JA | Hale Village Hall, High Street, Hale | 1541 | None |

HALTON BROOK WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------------------------|
| MA | The Grange Junior School, Latham Avenue, Runcorn | 1894 | Wicksten Drive Christian Centre |
| MB | Brook Chapel, Boston Avenue, Runcorn | 1386 | None |
| MC | Castle View Primary School, Meadway, Runcorn | 1461 | None |

HALTON CASTLE WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| OA | St Augustine's Catholic Primary School, Nigel Walk, Runcorn | 1319 | None |
| OB | Castlefields Community Centre, Chester Close, Runcorn | 810 | None |
| OC | St Mary's Halton CE Aided Primary School, Castlefields Avenue South, Runcorn | 854 | None |
| OD | The Brow Community Primary School, The Clough, Runcorn | 1432 | None |

Electors at Castle Road, Cheshyre Drive, Holt Lane, Mount Road, Priory Close, School Lane, St Marys Road, The Common, The Underway and Spark Lane be re-allocated to Polling District OC.

HALTON LEA WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| QA | Palacefields Community Centre, The Uplands, Runcorn | 1965 | None |
| QB | The Lapwing Centre, Lapwing Grove, Runcorn | 1147 | None |
| QC | Hallwood Park Primary School, Hallwood Park Avenue, Runcorn | 926 | None |
| QD | Halton Lodge Community Centre, Whitchurch Way, Runcorn | 555 | None |

HALTON VIEW WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| CA | Mobile Polling Station, Weates Close, Widnes | 1534 | None |
| CB | Mobile Polling Station, Bancroft Road, Widnes | 1807 | None |
| CC | St Ambrose Church Hall, Warrington Road, Widnes | 1257 | None |
| CD | Moorfield Primary School, School Way, Widnes (Shared with Farnworth Ward) | 533 | None |

HEATH WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| LA | Christ Church Hall, Sandy Lane, Runcorn | 727 | None |
| LB | St Clements Catholic Primary School, Oxford Road, Runcorn | 1363 | None |
| LC | St John's CE Church Hall, Weston Village, Runcorn | 885 | None |
| LD | Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, Clifton Road, Runcorn | 1611 | None |

HOUGH GREEN WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| HA | All Saints CE Primary School, Hough Green Road, Widnes | 2174 | None |
| HB | Upton Community Centre, Hough Green Road, Widnes | 886 | None |
| HC | Mobile Polling Station, Arley Drive, Widnes | 1190 | None |
| HD | St Basil's Catholic Primary School, Hough Green Road, Widnes | 993 | None |

KINGSWAY WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------------------|
| DA | 6 th Form Building, St Peter & Paul Catholic High School, Highfield Road, Widnes | 1061 | None |
| DB | Ditton Primary School, Liverpool Road, Widnes | 527 | None |
| DC | Creche - Fitness Suite – Halton Stadium, Lowerhouse Lane, Widnes | 2324 | None |
| DD | Simms Cross Primary School, Kingsway, Widnes | 638 | Change entrance to Kingsway. |
| DE | Creche - Fitness Suite – Halton Stadium, Lowerhouse Lane, Widnes | 391 | None |

MERSEY WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| KA | Runcorn Spiritualist Church, Ashridge Street, Runcorn | 1450 | None |
| KB | The Partnership Centre, Old Police Station, Bridge Street, Runcorn | 757 | None |
| KC | Victoria Road Primary School, Victoria Road, Runcorn | 773 | None |
| KD | West Runcorn Youth Club, Russell Road, Runcorn | 936 | None |
| KE | Westfield Primary School, Clayton Crescent, Runcorn | 1099 | None |

NORTON NORTH WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| RA | St Bertelines CE Primary School, Norton Lane, Runcorn | 2646 | None |
| RB | Gorsewood Primary School, Gorsewood Road, Runcorn | 2252 | None |

NORTON SOUTH WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|--|------------|------------------|
| ZX | Brookvale Community Centre (Higher House), Old Northwich Road, Runcorn | 1009 | None |
| ZY | Murdishaw West Community Primary School, Barnfield Avenue, Runcorn | 1457 | None |
| ZZ | Brookvale Community Centre (Higher House), Old Northwich Road, Runcorn | 2105 | None |

RIVERSIDE WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| EA | St Maries Church & Parish Hall, Lugsdale Road, Widnes | 454 | None |
| EB | West Bank Primary School, Cholmondeley Street, Widnes | 962 | None |
| EC | Ditton Community Centre, Dundalk Road, Widnes | 847 | None |
| ED | St Michael's Parish Centre, St Michaels Road, Widnes | 1309 | None |

WINDMILL HILL WARD

| Polling District | Polling Place | Electorate | Suggested Change |
|------------------|---|------------|------------------|
| SA | Priory View Community House, 231-233 Lockgate West, Runcorn | 805 | None |
| SB | Windmill Hill Primary School, Windmill Hill, Runcorn | 807 | None |

REPORT TO: Executive Board
DATE: 22 September 2011
REPORTING OFFICER: Operational Director Finance
TITLE: Spending as at 30 June 2011
WARDS: Borough Wide

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

1.1 The Council's overall revenue and capital spending position as at 30 June 2011 was reported to the Executive Board Sub Committee on 3 September 2011. It was resolved that the report should be made available to the Executive Board and include an action plan to ensure spending was within the overall budget.

2.0 RECOMMENDED: That:

- (1) the action plan be approved; and**
- (2) future monitoring reports be made quarterly to Executive Board.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 Budget monitoring reports are made quarterly to the Executive Board Sub Committee. The first quarter's report is attached for information.

3.2 The Sub Committee resolved:

- that the report be noted;
- that a further report be made to the Executive Board, with proposals to achieve a balanced budget at the end of the year; and
- in future, all financial monitoring reports be made to the Executive Board.

3.3 It will be seen from the report that there is a risk that, without action, the budget would be overspent at the end of the year. The major areas of concern are:

- staffing costs;
- saving not yet achieved;
- budget overspend on demand led budgets, eg Community Care;
- shortfall of income.

- 3.4 It is essential that spending is brought within budget. Not only would overspends be a drain on balances and reserves this year, but also add to the funding gap and consequently increase the level of savings for next year and beyond.
- 3.5 Action has already been taken to limit the impact on the budget. For instance, steps have been taken to limit casual pay to the basic evaluated grade. In addition, a small task and finish group has been set up by the Strategic Director Communities to limit the overspend on the Community Care Budget.
- 3.6 The aim is for each Directorate to restrict spending to that at year end it is within its bottom line operational budget. This will be achieved by:
- Each Strategic Director closely monitoring their Directorate budget.
 - Limiting all spending to the absolutely essential. This will be supported by workshops on financial management and procurement.
 - Identifying any potential overspends and taking appropriate action. This action will be reported to the relevant Portfolio Holder on the Executive Board.
 - Reporting a summary position at the end of each quarter to the Executive Board.
 - Only filling vacancies deemed to be essential to service provision and slowing down the filling of those vacancies.
 - Limiting the use of temporary, casual and agency staff to essential areas only.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

4.1 None.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

5.1 None.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 **Children and Young People in Halton**

6.2 **Employment Learning and Skills in Halton**

6.3 **A Healthy Halton**

6.4 **A Safer Halton**

6.5 **Halton's Urban Renewal**

There are no direct implications, however, the revenue budget supports the delivery and achievement of all the Council's priorities. It is essential that spending is appropriate to achieve value for money.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 There are a number of financial risks within the budget. The Council has internal controls and processes to ensure spending is within budget.

7.2 In preparing the 2011/12 budget a register of significant risks was prepared and this has been updated.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 None

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

9.1 There are no background papers under the meaning of the Act.

Summary of Revenue Spending to 30th June 2011

| Directorate / Department | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual Spend | Variance To Date |
|--|----------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Children and Families Services | 11,781 | 1,056 | 1,113 | (57) |
| Children's Organisation and Provision | 13,164 | 1,474 | 1,422 | 52 |
| Learning and Achievement | 3,469 | 1,471 | 1,431 | 40 |
| Employment, Economic Regeneration & Business Development | 3,163 | 2,060 | 2,100 | (40) |
| Children and Enterprise | 31,577 | 6,061 | 6,066 | (5) |
| Human Resources | 0 | 64 | 45 | 19 |
| Policy, Planning & Transportation | 18,348 | 3,276 | 3,130 | 146 |
| Legal & Democratic Services | 1,799 | 567 | 586 | (19) |
| Finance | 4,735 | 8,829 | 8,831 | (2) |
| ICT & Support Services | 139 | -283 | -298 | 15 |
| Policy and Resources | 25,021 | 12,453 | 12,294 | 159 |
| Community & Environment | 25,329 | 5,709 | 5,733 | (24) |
| Prevention & Assessment | 21,390 | 5,819 | 6,068 | (249) |
| Commissioning & Complex Needs | 17,495 | 4,093 | 4,091 | 2 |
| Communities | 64,214 | 15,621 | 15,892 | (271) |
| Corporate & Democracy | -10,325 | 486 | 226 | 260 |
| | 110,487 | 34,621 | 34,478 | 143 |

Children & Enterprise Directorate – Revenue Spending to 30th June 2011

CHILDREN & FAMILIES SERVICES DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget £'000 | Budget to Date £'000 | Expenditure to Date £'000 | Variance to Date (Overspend) £'000 |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 7,152 | 1,812 | 1,823 | (11) |
| Premises | 83 | 68 | 69 | (1) |
| Supplies & Services | 3,216 | 300 | 302 | (2) |
| Transport | 39 | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| Agency Related Expenditure | 238 | 43 | 45 | (2) |
| Residential Placements | 1,732 | 438 | 441 | (3) |
| Out of Borough Adoption | 60 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of Borough Fostering | 514 | 128 | 105 | 23 |
| In House Foster Carer Placements | 1,611 | 375 | 371 | 4 |
| In House Adoption | 237 | 59 | 94 | (35) |
| Care Leavers | 316 | 79 | 118 | (39) |
| Commissioned Services | 500 | 100 | 97 | 3 |
| Family Support | 129 | 10 | 5 | 5 |
| Total Expenditure | 15,827 | 3,417 | 3,473 | (56) |
| Income | | | | |
| Early Intervention Grant | -8,226 | -2,056 | -2,056 | 0 |
| Transfer from Reserves (11/12 Budget Savings) | -300 | -300 | -300 | 0 |
| Fees & Charges | -12 | -19 | -19 | 0 |
| Adoption Placements | 0 | -22 | -22 | 0 |
| Total Income | -8,538 | -2,397 | -2,397 | 0 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 7,289 | 1,020 | 1,076 | -56 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises | 306 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Transport | 123 | 31 | 32 | (1) |
| Central Support Services | 4,019 | 4 | 4 | 0 |
| Asset Rentals | 44 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Recharges | 4,492 | 36 | 37 | (1) |
| Net Department Total | 11,781 | 1,056 | 1,113 | (57) |

CHILDREN'S ORGANISATION & PROVISION DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 2,908 | 642 | 631 | 11 |
| Premises | 40 | 10 | 10 | 0 |
| Supplies & Services | 828 | 207 | 204 | 3 |
| Transport | 5 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Commissioned Services – Youth Service | 1,508 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Commissioned Services - BSF | 447 | 112 | 112 | 0 |
| Commissioned Services – Other | 812 | 148 | 140 | 8 |
| Schools Transport | 1,008 | 130 | 128 | 2 |
| Agency Related | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Connexions | 1,323 | 251 | 251 | 0 |
| Total Expenditure | 8,881 | 1,502 | 1,477 | 25 |
| Income | | | | |
| Reimbursements and Other Income | -267 | -7 | -34 | 27 |
| Dedicated Schools Grant | -92 | -18 | -18 | 0 |
| Schools SLA | -687 | -5 | -5 | 0 |
| Transfer from BSF | -696 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -1,742 | -30 | -57 | 27 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 7,139 | 1,472 | 1,420 | 52 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 459 | 115 | 115 | 0 |
| Transport Support | 260 | 64 | 64 | 0 |
| Central Support | 1,340 | 292 | 292 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 3,148 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | 5,207 | 471 | 471 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 12,346 | 1,943 | 1,891 | 52 |

CHILDREN'S ORGANISATION & PROVISION DEPARTMENT (Schools Related)

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|--|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 577 | 147 | 147 | 0 |
| Premises | 431 | 7 | 7 | 0 |
| School Redundancy | 251 | 24 | 24 | 0 |
| Schools Contingency | 844 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Schools Non Delegated Support | 173 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Special Educational Needs Contingency | 1,129 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Expenditure | 3,405 | 171 | 171 | 0 |
| Income | | | | |
| Dedicated Schools Grant | -2,587 | -640 | -640 | 0 |
| Total Income | -2,587 | -640 | -640 | 0 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 818 | -469 | -469 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 818 | -469 | -469 | 0 |

LEARNING & ACHIEVEMENT DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 5,456 | 1,196 | 1,159 | 37 |
| Premises | 59 | 3 | 3 | 0 |
| Supplies & Services | 1,839 | 365 | 357 | 8 |
| Transport | 13 | 3 | 4 | -1 |
| Agency Related Expenditure | 2,311 | 788 | 788 | 0 |
| Independent School Fees | 1,523 | 483 | 483 | 0 |
| Inter Authority Special Needs | 779 | -637 | -637 | 0 |
| Speech Therapy | 110 | 27 | 32 | -5 |
| Total Expenditure | 12,090 | 2,228 | 2,187 | 39 |
| Income | | | | |
| Inter Authority Income | -578 | 178 | 178 | 0 |
| Dedicated Schools Grant | -7,407 | -1,122 | -1,122 | 0 |
| Reimbursements | -1,424 | -77 | -78 | 1 |
| Schools SLA's | -324 | -15 | -15 | 0 |
| Total Income | -9,732 | -1036 | -1037 | 1 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 2,358 | 1,192 | 1,150 | 40 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 297 | 74 | 74 | 0 |
| Central Support Services | 784 | 196 | 196 | 0 |
| Transport Recharge Income | 30 | 9 | 9 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | 1,111 | 279 | 279 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 3,469 | 1,471 | 1,431 | 40 |

EMPLOYMENT, ECONOMIC REGENERATION & BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT DEPARTMENT
Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget £'000 | Budget to Date £'000 | Expenditure to Date £'000 | Variance to Date (Overspend) £'000 |
|---|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 4,563 | 1,298 | 1,314 | (16) |
| Repairs & Maintenance | 2,555 | 320 | 318 | 2 |
| Energy & Water Costs | 936 | 219 | 216 | 3 |
| NNDR | 918 | 918 | 918 | 0 |
| Rents | 1,061 | 495 | 492 | 3 |
| Marketing Programme | 11 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| Promotions | 36 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Development Projects | 85 | 8 | 0 | 8 |
| Supplies & Services | 1,208 | 340 | 350 | (10) |
| Agency Related Payments | 193 | 46 | 51 | (5) |
| Property Rationalisation Savings Target | -327 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Expenditure | 11,239 | 3,648 | 3,662 | (14) |
| Income | | | | |
| Rent – Markets | -806 | -171 | -158 | (13) |
| Rent – Industrial | -952 | -208 | -200 | (8) |
| Rent – Commercial | -560 | -120 | -116 | (4) |
| Sales | -3 | -1 | -2 | 1 |
| Fees & Charges | -336 | -15 | -12 | (3) |
| Reimbursements | -440 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Government Grant Income | -945 | -109 | -109 | 0 |
| Recharges to Capital | -1,008 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Schools SLA Income | -735 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Transfer from Enterprise & Employment Reserve | -353 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -6,138 | -624 | -597 | (27) |
| | | | | |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 5,101 | 3,024 | 3,065 | (41) |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 1,522 | 273 | 273 | 0 |
| Office Accommodation | 153 | 38 | 38 | 0 |
| Transport | 57 | 14 | 14 | 0 |
| Central Support | 2,203 | 552 | 552 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 2,307 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Accommodation Recharge | -3,705 | -911 | -911 | 0 |
| Support Service recharge | -1,876 | -281 | -281 | 0 |
| Repairs & Maintenance | -2,599 | -649 | -650 | 1 |
| Total Recharges | 1,938 | -964 | -965 | 1 |
| | | | | |
| Net Department Total | 3,163 | 2,060 | 2,100 | (40) |

Policy & Resources Directorate – Revenue Spending to 30th June 2011

HUMAN RESOURCES DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 1,922 | 591 | 590 | 1 |
| Employee Training | 520 | 33 | 32 | 1 |
| Supplies & Services | 68 | 17 | 21 | (4) |
| Total Expenditure | 2,510 | 641 | 643 | (2) |
| Income | | | | |
| Fees & Charges | -23 | -23 | -44 | 21 |
| School SLA's | -269 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -292 | -23 | -44 | 21 |
| | | | | |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 2,218 | 618 | 599 | 19 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 451 | 113 | 113 | 0 |
| Transport Recharges | 20 | 5 | 5 | 0 |
| Central Support Recharges | 539 | 135 | 135 | 0 |
| Support Recharges Income | -3,228 | -807 | -807 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | -2,218 | -554 | -554 | 0 |
| | | | | |
| Net Departmental Total | 0 | 64 | 45 | 19 |

POLICY, PLANNING & TRANSPORTATION DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|---|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 6,198 | 1,707 | 1,663 | 44 |
| Other Premises | 278 | 121 | 121 | 0 |
| Hired & Contracted Services | 531 | 74 | 43 | 31 |
| Supplies & Services | 377 | 90 | 37 | 53 |
| Street Lighting | 1,733 | 380 | 397 | (17) |
| Highways Maintenance | 2,364 | 600 | 588 | 12 |
| Bridges | 89 | 17 | 4 | 13 |
| Fleet Transport | 1,338 | 313 | 321 | (8) |
| Lease Car Contracts | 786 | 500 | 500 | 0 |
| Bus Support – Halton Hopper Tickets | 163 | 27 | 26 | 1 |
| Bus Support | 703 | 81 | 81 | 0 |
| Out of Borough Transport | 51 | 9 | 7 | 2 |
| Finance Charges | 358 | 190 | 196 | (6) |
| Grants to Voluntary Organisations | 83 | 41 | 41 | 0 |
| NRA Levy | 60 | 15 | 15 | 0 |
| Total Expenditure | 15,112 | 4,165 | 4,040 | 125 |
| Income | | | | |
| Sales | -250 | -70 | -70 | 0 |
| Planning Fees | -416 | -83 | -95 | 12 |
| Building Control Fees | -182 | -45 | -38 | (7) |
| Other Fees & Charges | -500 | -107 | -140 | 33 |
| Rents | -14 | -4 | -3 | (1) |
| Grants & Reimbursements | -504 | -97 | -80 | (17) |
| School SLAs | -27 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Recharge to Capital | -359 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -2,252 | -406 | -426 | 20 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 12,860 | 3,759 | 3,614 | 145 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 810 | 140 | 136 | 4 |
| Transport Recharges | 477 | 110 | 99 | 11 |
| Asset Charges | 8,748 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Central Support Recharges | 2,606 | 651 | 652 | (1) |
| Departmental Support Recharges | 352 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Support Recharges Income – Transport | -3,928 | -908 | -895 | (13) |
| Support Recharges Income – Non Transport | -3,577 | -477 | -477 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | 5,488 | -483 | -484 | 1 |
| Net Departmental Total | 18,348 | 3,276 | 3,130 | 146 |

LEGAL & DEMOCRATIC SERVICES DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 2,095 | 561 | 588 | (27) |
| Supplies & Services | 422 | 158 | 142 | 16 |
| Civic Catering & Functions | 59 | 7 | 5 | 2 |
| Legal Expenses | 229 | 74 | 64 | 10 |
| Total Expenditure | 2,805 | 800 | 799 | 1 |
| Income | | | | |
| Land Charges | -130 | -32 | -23 | (9) |
| School SLA's | -24 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| License Income | -315 | -60 | -42 | (18) |
| Print Unit Fee Income | -303 | -50 | -29 | (21) |
| Government Grant | 0 | 0 | -34 | 34 |
| Other Income | -73 | -18 | -12 | (6) |
| Transfers from Reserves | -22 | -22 | -22 | 0 |
| Total Income | -867 | -182 | -162 | (20) |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 1,938 | 618 | 637 | (19) |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 485 | 106 | 106 | 0 |
| Transport Recharges | 39 | 10 | 10 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Central Support Recharges | 1,574 | 393 | 393 | 0 |
| Support Recharges Income | -2,239 | -560 | -560 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | -139 | -51 | -51 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 1,799 | 567 | 586 | (19) |

FINANCE DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 7,530 | 1,887 | 1,863 | 24 |
| Supplies & Services | 310 | 130 | 124 | 6 |
| Other Premises | 122 | 41 | 37 | 4 |
| Agency Related | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Insurances | 2,001 | 1,128 | 1,191 | (63) |
| Charitable Relief | 103 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Concessionary Travel | 2,236 | 373 | 373 | 0 |
| Council Tax Benefits | 11,194 | 11,144 | 11,139 | 5 |
| Rent Allowances | 47,590 | 11,593 | 11,591 | 2 |
| Non HRA Rebates | 101 | 12 | 12 | 0 |
| Total Expenditure | 71,188 | 26,308 | 26,330 | (22) |
| Income | | | | |
| Fees & Charges | -41 | -10 | -13 | 3 |
| SLA to Schools | -1,126 | -340 | -340 | 0 |
| NNDR Administration Grant | -169 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Hsg Ben Administration Grant | -1,346 | -336 | -337 | 1 |
| Rent Allowances | -46,992 | -12,523 | -12,527 | 4 |
| Council Tax Benefits Grant | -11,060 | -2,794 | -2,798 | 4 |
| Other Grants & Reimbursements | -799 | -134 | -142 | 8 |
| Liability Orders | -345 | -156 | -157 | 1 |
| Non HRA Rent Rebates | -101 | -25 | -23 | (2) |
| Total Income | -61,979 | -16,318 | -16,337 | 19 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 9,209 | 9,990 | 9,993 | (3) |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises | 367 | 83 | 82 | 1 |
| Transport | 88 | 22 | 23 | (1) |
| Asset Charges | 469 | 83 | 83 | 0 |
| Central Support Service | 1,062 | 265 | 265 | 0 |
| Support Service Income | -6,460 | -1,614 | -1,615 | 1 |
| Net Total Recharges | -4,474 | -1,161 | -1,162 | 1 |
| Net Department Total | 4,735 | 8,829 | 8,831 | (2) |

ICT AND SUPPORT SERVICES DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget to Date | Actual to Date | Variance to Date (Overspend) |
|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 6,121 | 1,559 | 1,519 | 40 |
| Supplies & Services | 1,067 | 167 | 143 | 24 |
| Computer Repairs & Software | 450 | 113 | 134 | (21) |
| Communications Costs | 135 | 34 | 68 | (34) |
| Other Premises | 7 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Other Transport | 3 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Total Expenditure | 7,783 | 1,874 | 1,864 | 10 |
| Income | | | | |
| Fees & Charges | -3 | -1 | -5 | 4 |
| Reimbursements & Other Income | -60 | 0 | -1 | 1 |
| Internal Billing | -97 | -5 | -5 | 0 |
| SLA to Schools | -110 | -1 | -1 | 0 |
| Total Income | -270 | -7 | -12 | 5 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 7,513 | 1,867 | 1,852 | 15 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises | 190 | 48 | 48 | 0 |
| Transport | 34 | 9 | 10 | (1) |
| Asset Charges | 1,231 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Central Support Services | 1,106 | 276 | 276 | 0 |
| Support Service Income | -9,935 | -2,483 | -2,484 | 1 |
| Net Total Recharges | -7,374 | -2,150 | -2,150 | 0 |
| Net Department Total | 139 | -283 | -298 | 15 |

Communities Directorate – Revenue Spending to 30th June 2011

COMMUNITY & ENVIRONMENT DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30 June 2011

| | Annual Budget £'000 | Budget To Date £'000 | Actual to Date £'000 | Variance To Date (overspend) £'000 |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 11,623 | 3,011 | 3,184 | (173) |
| Other Premises | 1,183 | 424 | 404 | 20 |
| Supplies & Services | 1,408 | 385 | 326 | 59 |
| Hired & Contracted Services | 965 | 145 | 137 | 8 |
| School Meals Food | 1,689 | 292 | 260 | 32 |
| Food Provisions | 557 | 130 | 92 | 38 |
| Bar Provisions | 304 | 76 | 109 | (33) |
| Book Fund | 232 | 20 | 14 | 6 |
| Transport | 30 | 7 | 16 | (9) |
| Consumer Protection Contract | 443 | 110 | 109 | 1 |
| Waste Disposal Contracts | 5,190 | 372 | 344 | 28 |
| Leisure Management Contract | 1,395 | 349 | 362 | (13) |
| Other Agency Costs | 455 | 200 | 177 | 23 |
| Total Expenditure | 25,474 | 5,521 | 5,534 | (13) |
| Income | | | | |
| Fees & Charges Income | -2,569 | -802 | -775 | (27) |
| Sales Income | -1,878 | -478 | -506 | 28 |
| School Meals Sales | -2,128 | -9 | -8 | (1) |
| School Meals Other Income | -1,850 | -73 | -81 | 8 |
| Rents Income | -83 | -11 | -16 | 5 |
| Government Grant Income | -26 | -2 | -3 | 1 |
| Reimbursements & Other Income | -922 | -74 | -55 | (19) |
| Schools SLA Income | -240 | -32 | -32 | 0 |
| Internal Fees Income | -319 | -52 | -29 | (23) |
| Capital Salaries | -101 | 0 | -17 | 17 |
| Total Income | -10,116 | -1,533 | -1,522 | (11) |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 15,358 | 3,988 | 4,012 | (24) |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 1,603 | 318 | 318 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 2,483 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Central Support Services | 3,961 | 1,032 | 1,032 | 0 |
| Departmental Support Services | 87 | 22 | 22 | 0 |
| Transport Recharges | 2,166 | 415 | 415 | 0 |
| HBC Support Costs Income | -329 | -66 | -66 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | 9,971 | 1,721 | 1,721 | 0 |
| Net Department Total | 25,329 | 5,709 | 5,733 | (24) |

COMMUNITIES- PREVENTION & ASSESSMENT DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30th June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|--|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 7,063 | 1,708 | 1,732 | (24) |
| Other Premises | 67 | 11 | 10 | 1 |
| Supplies & Services | 576 | 220 | 200 | 20 |
| Transport | 65 | 10 | 10 | 0 |
| Food Provision | 19 | 5 | 7 | (2) |
| Aids & Adaptations | 113 | 20 | 19 | 1 |
| Contribution to JES | 231 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Unapportioned Grants | 800 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Community Care: | | | | |
| Residential & Nursing Care | 7,965 | 1,730 | 1,876 | (146) |
| Homecare & Supported Living | 6,817 | 1,338 | 1,446 | (108) |
| Direct Payments | 2,463 | 650 | 646 | 4 |
| Day Care | 243 | 56 | 66 | (10) |
| Key Safe Expenditure | 21 | 5 | 5 | 0 |
| Other Agency | 124 | 30 | 34 | (4) |
| Contribution to Intermediate Care Pool | 2,281 | 541 | 536 | 5 |
| Total Expenditure | 28,848 | 6,324 | 6,587 | (263) |
| Income | | | | |
| Other Fees & Charges | -301 | -36 | -46 | 10 |
| Sales Income | -25 | -13 | -13 | 0 |
| Reimbursements | -2,250 | -473 | -473 | 0 |
| Residential & Nursing Income | -2,421 | -562 | -565 | 3 |
| Community Care Income | -526 | -131 | -121 | (10) |
| Direct Payments Income | -82 | -21 | -32 | 11 |
| Transfer from Reserves | -330 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| LD & Health Reform Allocation | -4,272 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -10,207 | -1,236 | -1,250 | 14 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 18,641 | 5,088 | 5,337 | (249) |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 308 | 73 | 73 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 160 | 3 | 3 | 0 |
| Central Support Services | 2,622 | 634 | 634 | 0 |
| Transport | 79 | 21 | 21 | 0 |
| Internal Recharge Income | -420 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Recharges | 2,749 | 731 | 731 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 21,390 | 5,819 | 6,068 | (249) |

COMMISSIONING & COMPLEX NEEDS DEPARTMENT

Revenue Budget as at 30TH June 2011

| | Annual Budget | Budget To Date | Actual To Date | Variance To Date (overspend) |
|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 | £'000 |
| Expenditure | | | | |
| Employees | 7,326 | 1,923 | 1,956 | (33) |
| Other Premises | 318 | 139 | 153 | (14) |
| Supplies & Services | 2,470 | 227 | 230 | (3) |
| Contracts & SLA's | 1,317 | 132 | 109 | 23 |
| Transport | 295 | 64 | 51 | 13 |
| Emergency Duty Team | 103 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Community Care: | | | | |
| Residential & Nursing Care | 806 | 96 | 80 | 16 |
| Home Care & Supported Living | 492 | 80 | 87 | (7) |
| Direct Payments | 144 | 43 | 49 | (6) |
| Day Care | 11 | 1 | 2 | (1) |
| Food Provision | 35 | 9 | 4 | 5 |
| Other Agency Costs | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| SP Payments To Providers | 4,216 | 1,197 | 1,215 | (18) |
| Grants To Voluntary Organisations | 270 | 119 | 123 | (4) |
| Total Expenditure | 17,804 | 4,030 | 4,059 | (29) |
| Income | | | | |
| Residential & Nursing Fees | -68 | -13 | -14 | 1 |
| Direct Payment Charges | -3 | -1 | -1 | 0 |
| Community Care Income | -4 | -1 | -1 | 0 |
| Sales & Rents Income | -183 | -117 | -100 | (17) |
| Fees & Charges | -387 | -94 | -111 | 17 |
| PCT Reimbursements | -2,616 | -234 | -253 | 19 |
| Government Grants: | | | | |
| Community Safety | -319 | -30 | -37 | 7 |
| Housing | -56 | -41 | -45 | 4 |
| Transfer From Reserves | -142 | -142 | -142 | 0 |
| Capital Salaries | -84 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Income | -3,862 | -673 | -704 | 31 |
| Net Operational Expenditure | 13,942 | 3,357 | 3,355 | 2 |
| Recharges | | | | |
| Premises Support | 508 | 107 | 107 | 0 |
| Asset Charges | 406 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Central Support Services | 2,278 | 519 | 519 | 0 |
| Transport Recharges | 449 | 110 | 110 | 0 |
| Internal Recharge Income | -88 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Net Total Recharges | 3,553 | 736 | 736 | 0 |
| Net Departmental Total | 17,495 | 4,093 | 4,091 | 2 |

Capital Expenditure to 30th June 2011

| Directorate/Department | Actual Expenditure to Date £'000 | 2011/12 Cumulative Capital Allocation | | | | Capital Allocation 2012/13 £'000 | Capital Allocation 2013/14 £'000 |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | | Quarter 1 £'000 | Quarter 2 £'000 | Quarter 3 £'000 | Quarter 4 £000 | | |
| <u>Children and Enterprise Directorate</u> | | | | | | | |
| Schools Related | | | | | | | |
| Asset Management Data | 0 | 0 | 2 | 5 | 15 | 0 | 0 |
| Fire Compartmentation | 7 | 7 | 15 | 40 | 55 | 0 | 0 |
| Capital Repairs | 182 | 181 | 750 | 1,200 | 1,564 | 0 | 0 |
| Asbestos Management | 2 | 1 | 4 | 15 | 30 | 0 | 0 |
| Schools Access Initiative | 0 | 0 | 50 | 100 | 150 | 0 | 0 |
| Aiming Higher for Disabled Children | 0 | 0 | 10 | 14 | 19 | 0 | 0 |
| Education Programme (General) | 87 | 108 | 226 | 339 | 452 | 0 | 0 |
| Harnessing Technologies | 5 | 10 | 20 | 29 | 39 | 0 | 0 |
| Basic Need Projects | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1690 | 0 | 0 |
| Childrens Centres | 2 | 18 | 62 | 93 | 124 | 0 | 0 |
| Wade Deacon High School | 3,733 | 4,042 | 8,086 | 12,129 | 16,171 | 12,129 | 0 |
| The Grange School | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1,900 | 0 |
| Employment, Econ Regeneration & Business Development | | | | | | | |
| Castlefields Regeneration | 108 | 1,082 | 2,164 | 3,246 | 4,328 | 584 | 0 |
| 3MG | 44 | 26 | 52 | 78 | 105 | 0 | 0 |
| Widnes Waterfront | 32 | 44 | 89 | 133 | 177 | 500 | 0 |
| The Hive | 792 | 800 | 850 | 5,510 | 8,018 | 0 | 0 |
| Bayer Purchase (Contamination) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 50 | 774 | 0 | 0 |
| Growth Point | 131 | 161 | 321 | 482 | 642 | 0 | 0 |
| Property Purchases | 5 | 5 | 11 | 40 | 40 | 0 | 0 |
| Municipal Building Refurbishment | 153 | 41 | 82 | 123 | 164 | 38 | 0 |
| Disability Discrimination Act | 12 | 75 | 150 | 225 | 300 | 300 | 300 |
| Total Children and Enterprise | 5,295 | 6,602 | 12,944 | 23,851 | 34,857 | 15,451 | 300 |

| Directorate/Department | Actual Expenditure to Date £'000 | 2011/12 Cumulative Capital Allocation | | | | Capital Allocation 2012/13 £'000 | Capital Allocation 2013/14 £'000 |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | | Quarter 1 £'000 | Quarter 2 £'000 | Quarter 3 £'000 | Quarter 4 £000 | | |
| Communities Directorate | | | | | | | |
| Community & Environment | | | | | | | |
| Stadium Minor Works | 7 | 8 | 15 | 23 | 30 | 30 | 30 |
| Children's Playground Equipment | 0 | 0 | 2 | 22 | 75 | 65 | 65 |
| Landfill Tax Credit Schemes | 0 | 0 | 170 | 255 | 340 | 340 | 340 |
| Parks & Playgrounds | 110 | 98 | 125 | 233 | 369 | 185 | 0 |
| Runcorn Cemetery Extension | 2 | 6 | 12 | 75 | 256 | 55 | 0 |
| Installation of Multi Use Games Areas | 0 | 31 | 50 | 75 | 107 | 0 | 0 |
| Improvements to Allotments | 0 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 0 | 0 |
| Runcorn Town Hall Park | 0 | 4 | 11 | 21 | 127 | 0 | 0 |
| Wheeled Bins | 0 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| Commissioning & Complex Care | | | | | | | |
| Grants for Renovation/Home Repairs | 39 | 59 | 118 | 177 | 236 | 0 | 0 |
| Grants for Disabled Facilities | 5 | 165 | 330 | 495 | 660 | 0 | 0 |
| Energy Promotion | 0 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 0 | 0 |
| Joint Funding RSL Adaptations | 134 | 140 | 280 | 420 | 560 | 0 | 0 |
| Modular Buildings | 0 | 7 | 14 | 20 | 27 | 0 | 0 |
| Stair Lifts | 47 | 50 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 0 | 0 |
| Extra Care Housing | 0 | 116 | 232 | 347 | 463 | 0 | 0 |
| Choice Based Lettings | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of Borough Placements | 0 | 116 | 232 | 348 | 464 | 0 | 0 |
| User Led Adaptations | 0 | 14 | 28 | 41 | 55 | 0 | 0 |
| Adult Programme | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 335 | 0 |
| Prevention & Assessment | | | | | | | |
| Re-design Oakmeadow | 0 | 7 | 14 | 21 | 28 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Communities Directorate | 344 | 840 | 1,769 | 2,777 | 4,069 | 1,030 | 455 |

| Directorate/Department | Actual Expenditure to Date £'000 | 2011/12 Cumulative Capital Allocation | | | | Capital Allocation 2012/13 £'000 | Capital Allocation 2013/14 £'000 |
|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | | Quarter 1 £'000 | Quarter 2 £'000 | Quarter 3 £'000 | Quarter 4 £000 | | |
| <u>Policy & Resources Directorate</u> | | | | | | | |
| ICT & Support Services | | | | | | | |
| IT Rolling Programme | 130 | 281 | 562 | 843 | 1,124 | 1,100 | 1,100 |
| Policy, Planning & Transportation | | | | | | | |
| <i>Local Transport Plan</i> | | | | | | | |
| Bridge Maintenance | 94 | 102 | 655 | 1,037 | 1,415 | 600 | 600 |
| Highway Maintenance | 132 | 371 | 742 | 1,112 | 1,483 | 1,478 | 1,360 |
| Integrated Transport | 27 | 134 | 268 | 401 | 535 | 560 | 560 |
| Network Mgmt & Street Lighting | 0 | 36 | 73 | 109 | 145 | 165 | 165 |
| Silver Jubilee Bridge Major Maintnce | 19 | 19 | 319 | 2,313 | 3,500 | 3,495 | 3,711 |
| Flood Defence | 0 | 27 | 53 | 80 | 106 | 0 | 0 |
| Street Lighting Structural Maintenance | 13 | 50 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| Risk Management | 0 | 30 | 60 | 90 | 120 | 120 | 120 |
| Fleet Replacements | 18 | 18 | 268 | 352 | 370 | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Mersey Gateway</i> | | | | | | | |
| Early Land Acquisition | 1,385 | 1,344 | 9,350 | 16,634 | 31,988 | 27,082 | 4,391 |
| <i>Section 106 Schemes</i> | | | | | | | |
| B&Q Site – Public Transport | 0 | 13 | 26 | 38 | 51 | 0 | 0 |
| Asda - Runcorn | 0 | 41 | 83 | 124 | 165 | 0 | 0 |
| Total Policy & Resources | 1,818 | 2,466 | 12,559 | 23,283 | 41,202 | 34,800 | 12,207 |
| TOTAL CAPITAL PROGRAMME | 7,457 | 9,908 | 27,272 | 49,911 | 80,128 | 51,281 | 12,962 |
| Slippage (20%) | | | | | -16,026 | -10,256 | -2,592 |
| | | | | | 16,026 | 16,026 | 10,256 |
| Total | 7,457 | 9,908 | 27,272 | 49,911 | 64,102 | 57,051 | 20,626 |

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director- Policy and Resources

SUBJECT: Draft Corporate Plan 2011- 2016

WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

To provide Members with the new Draft Halton Corporate Plan 2011 – 2016 , included as Appendix 1 to this report.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That

(1) The Draft Plan is discussed in terms of the suggested Areas of Focus and activities under each thematic area.

(2) Subject to any amendments required, the Board recommends adoption of the Draft Plan by Full Council.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 The Draft Halton Corporate Plan 2011 – 2016 was considered by Corporate Policy and Performance Board on 6th September 2011 and was recommended to Executive Board for approval. To ensure synergy with the Sustainable Community Strategy and operational business plans and to support the ongoing monitoring of progress a number of performance measures will be developed within each of the strategic priority areas identified within the plan. This work is presently in progress and the Board will receive further information at the earliest opportunity.

3.2 The Corporate Plan sets out the goals the Council wants to achieve to help build a better future for Halton, redefines our priorities, and explains how we will deploy our resources. The Corporate Plan also presents the Council's contribution to the delivery of the Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS) 2011-26. It concentrates on the challenges, priorities and achievements planned over the next five years to help improve the quality of life for people in Halton. It will guide the development of more detailed strategy and actions to be undertaken by the Council (see Section 4).

3.3 Our vision remains constant:

Halton will be a thriving and vibrant Borough where people can learn and develop their skills; enjoy a good quality of life with good health; a high quality, modern urban environment; the opportunity for all to fulfil their potential; greater wealth and equality, sustained by a thriving

business community; and safer, stronger and more attractive neighbourhoods.

- 3.4 This vision remains a pledge to secure a better future for the people of Halton. It is about giving everyone the opportunity to fulfil their potential and the Council will work vigorously to see this vision realised. To achieve our vision we are committed to closing the gap between those communities most in need in Halton, compared to the rest of the country. We will do this by tackling inequality and promoting community cohesion, so that no community is disadvantaged.
- 3.5 The Plan explains the steps that the Council will take in order to deliver on both the Vision and the strategic priorities and key themes set out within Halton's fifteen year Sustainable Community Strategy 2011 – 2026. These are:
- A Healthy Halton
 - Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton
 - A Safer Halton
 - Halton's Children and Young People
 - Environment and Regeneration in Halton

An additional priority to the five contained in the SCS has been added:

- Corporate Effectiveness and Efficient Service Delivery

This relates specifically to the delivery of Council service delivery as distinct from the partnership objectives of the SCS. .

3.6 Consultation

The SCS (adopted April 2011) was produced through extensive research, analysis, and policy formulation. This process was followed by wide consultation with Elected Members and partners to identify key themes and related strategic objectives. This has included reporting on the detail of the emerging SCS to all Policy and Performance Boards during the September 2010 meeting cycle. An extensive public consultation took place 29 Nov–24 Jan 2011. The Corporate Plan presents the Council's contribution to the delivery of the Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS) 2011-26.

- 3.8 A draft Corporate plan has previously been circulated for Member consultation between 20 May and 17 June 2011.
- 3.9 A further round of consultation for Members and Operational Directors took place during July and August. All comments received have been included into the Draft Plan appearing in Appendix 1.
- 3.10 The Draft Corporate Plan was taken to Corporate PPB on 6th September and recommended for adoption by Executive Board.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

- 4.1 The Corporate Plan forms part of a key suite of documents for the Council starting from the Sustainable Community Strategy and running down to Service Plans. It sets out the Council's contribution towards achieving the key objectives of the Sustainable Community Strategy, as well as looking at how we will deploy our own resources effectively and efficiently.
- 4.2 A range of more specific strategies and initiatives will translate the broad aims and objectives of this Plan into action on the ground.
- 4.3 The Corporate Plan has been developed with reference to, and links into other key Council documents such as the Core Strategy, Children and Young People's Plan, State of the Borough Report and Local Transport Plan 3. A full list of plans is included on Page 37 of the document.

5.0 FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 5.1 The Corporate Plan sets out the key themes, objectives and areas of focus for Council activity which are felt to make the maximum difference in improving quality of life in Halton and sets out what, within available resources we hope to achieve over the next five years. The activities involved need resources and the Plan therefore has financial implications.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCILS PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26. Children and Young People is therefore identified as a priority within the Corporate Plan

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26. Employment, Learning and Skills is therefore identified as a priority within the Corporate Plan

6.3 A Healthy Halton

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26. A Healthy Halton is therefore identified as a priority within the Corporate Plan

6.4 A Safer Halton

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26. A Safer Halton is therefore identified as a priority within the Corporate Plan

6.5 Environment & Regeneration in Halton

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26. Environment & Regeneration in Halton is therefore identified as a priority within the Corporate Plan

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 The Corporate Plan has been developed as the Council response to the issues contained within the Sustainable Community Strategy, which has been developed through extensive consultation with both the community and partners.

7.2 This Plan has been developed at a time of considerable challenge for local authorities brought about by significant public spending cuts and changes in the way public services are delivered, with considerable changes still underway. Consequently, care has been needed to ensure that the activities contained in this Plan are realistic and achievable within expected resources, whilst remaining sufficiently challenging to make a real difference to people's lives and meet residents' expectations.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 The Equality Act 2010, which identifies a number of protected characteristics, brings together into one Act all previous legislation around Equality and Diversity. Under the Duty a public authority must, in carrying out its functions, take into account the need to: -

- (a) Eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation and any other conflict that is prohibited by the Equality Act 2010
- (b) Advance equality of opportunity between persons who share a relevant protected characteristic and persons who do not share it
- (c) Foster good relations between persons who share a relevant protected characteristic and persons who do not share it

8.3 The Draft Corporate Plan has been developed bearing in mind the requirements of the Equality Act and the new Public Sector Equality

Duty and an Equality Impact Assessment will be completed for the Corporate Plan.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTIONS 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

None under the meaning of the Act.

**Halton Borough Council
Corporate Plan 2011-2016**

Version control

| Version | Date | Revision |
|---------|------|----------|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Contents

| Contents | |
|---|--|
| Foreword | |
| Introduction | |
| Our Guiding Principles | |
| Delivering Progress | |
| What is Halton Like Now? | |
| Corporate Planning and Performance Framework | |
| Developing this Corporate Plan | |
| A Healthy Halton | |
| Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton | |
| A Safer Halton | |
| Children and Young People in Halton | |
| Environment and Regeneration in Halton | |
| Corporate Effectiveness & Efficient Service Delivery | |
| Making it Happen in Halton | |

Foreword

Halton is a place of ambition and enterprise. Together with our partners we are successfully restructuring the local economy around a diverse range of sectors including science and research, transport and logistics, creative, media and advanced manufacturing. We see our strong economy and economic prosperity as our key focus, with the local population accessing and retaining employment to provide a clear route out of both poverty and poverty related poor health. Economic success gives our local people improved choice and control in the way they live their lives.

Our reinvigorated economy is in turn delivering wealth and confidence, the evidence of which is the local developments that fly in the face of recession. Examples include the Widnes Shopping Park attracting major high street retailers such as Marks and Spencer and Next, construction beginning on a new Premier Inn and Tesco Extra, the substantial investment at the Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus and the 3MG site; and the development of significant new facilities such as an ice rink, bowling alley and cinema .

Such developments bring much needed jobs to our area. Access to a variety of sectors provides opportunities for the local workforce to develop careers, and our programmes of education, qualifications and skills equip people of all ages with the knowledge they need to become successful and economically active. Continued learning throughout life is important and we are delivering new centres of learning at Wade Deacon School (Widnes) and the Grange School (Runcorn) through the Building Schools for the Future Programme.

We are making the most of our location between two major cities and we are well connected to these hubs by road and rail connections. London is now less than 2 hours away on the West Coast Mainline. Close proximity to Liverpool John Lennon Airport gives access to international travel and we are investing in key infrastructure, such as the Mersey Gateway Bridge which will reinforce Halton's position as a key gateway into the Liverpool City Region. Digital infrastructure, encompassing both fibre optic and wireless communications, is high on our agenda to allow industry and commerce to do business faster and with the global market.

We want people to make healthier lifestyle choices and take advantage of some of the fantastic outdoor venues and facilities we have in Halton. Examples include Town Park and Runcorn Heath in Runcorn, Hale coastline and lighthouse, Victoria Park in Widnes, the Tran Pennine Trail cycle route, Stobart Stadium and The Brindley.

For those who are at a time in their lives when they may need additional support, we invest in a range of services to help them re-adjust and become as self sufficient as possible. We have implemented personalisation of care budgets and transformation programmes to give service users choice in the way they receive support and allow us to ensure that older people and those with complex care needs get the help they need. The safeguarding of vulnerable children and adults is of paramount importance and in 2010/11 our Adults and Children and Young People Services have been externally inspected and are able to demonstrate high performance.

The Borough already has a formidable track record in intervention and prevention, but in light of increased challenges we need to ensure that they continue to be as aligned as

possible to ensure we deliver on our promises to the people of Halton. We are always trying to find the most cost effective way to deliver services and we are already two years into our rolling Efficiency programme which is contributing significantly to the savings we have to make. From April 2011 we moved to a leaner management structure to reduce costs and minimise the impact of reduced grant funding on frontline services.

We have had to be bold and imaginative when it comes to service delivery; reviewing income and expenditure and finding new and more cost-effective ways of working, however, our priority remains protecting critical outcomes for the people who rely on us, and providing quality services.

As part of the 2011/12 budget, we had to acknowledge that these are difficult financial times for everyone. Halton already has one of the lowest levels of council tax in the North West and this year we have ensured no increase in council tax at all. In doing so we want to help Halton residents spend their money as they wish, easing the tax burden on all households and supporting those on low and fixed incomes. Despite a contraction in budgets, the combined public sector will still be spending £500 million next year delivering services – and will be continuing with the major projects, like the Mersey Gateway, to help transform our Borough.

As an organisation we remain focussed on being responsive to local needs. This Corporate Plan explains how we will deliver a better, stronger Borough for us all to live and work in.

Councillor Rob Polhill
Leader, Halton Borough Council

Introduction

This plan outlines the goals the Council wants to achieve to help build a better future for Halton, redefines our priorities and examines how we will deploy our resources. It concentrates on the fresh challenges, priorities and achievements planned over the next five years to help improve the quality of life for people in Halton.

Our vision remains constant. It is that:

Halton will be a thriving and vibrant Borough where people can learn and develop their skills; enjoy a good quality of life with good health; a high quality, modern urban environment; the opportunity for all to fulfil their potential; greater wealth and equality, sustained by a thriving business community; and safer, stronger and more attractive neighbourhoods.

Our Corporate Plan sets out what, within available resources, we plan to achieve over the next five years to improve lives within all the communities of Halton. It will guide the development of more detailed strategy and actions to be undertaken by the Council. Within this plan we explain the steps that need to be taken to deliver on the strategic priorities and key themes that are set out here and within Halton's fifteen year Sustainable Community Strategy 2011 – 2026. These are:

- A Healthy Halton
- Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton
- A Safer Halton
- Halton's Children and Young People
- Environment and Regeneration in Halton
- Corporate Effectiveness & Business Efficiency

This Plan has been developed at a time of considerable challenge for local authorities brought about by significant public spending cuts and changes in the way public services are delivered. Consequently, care has been taken to ensure that the activities contained in this Plan are realistic and achievable within expected resources, whilst remaining sufficiently challenging to make a real difference to people's lives and meet residents' expectations. We know that in anything that we do our key goal is to raise the quality of life in the borough. To do this, we need to deliver our services in the most efficient and effective way possible. Councils play a crucial role in providing essential services in the communities they serve. Making sure that these key services are provided to the highest possible standard and at reasonable cost is fundamental, and the Council will continue to strive for service excellence in all areas.

In developing this Plan we have reflected on the Council's Community Leadership role orchestrating limited resources not just on behalf of the organisation, but for the area as a whole. We need to continue to look beyond our boundaries and champion Halton's cause in the wider world, lobbying at regional and national levels, and working with wider UK and European partners for mutual benefit. To this end the Council is promoting partnerships and alliances to dovetail and mainstream strategies of other agencies working in the borough and will explore opportunities to develop shared services and resources where appropriate. It is essential all partners work productively together, sharing understanding of the Borough's problems, their root causes, and co-ordinating our efforts to tackle them. We acknowledge that reducing resources will mean that there will be greater pressures in delivering high quality services and that a change in

approach will be needed to further promote community 'buy-in' and change in customer behaviour.

Our vision for Halton remains a pledge to secure a better future for the people of Halton. It is about giving everyone the opportunity to fulfil their potential and the Council will work vigorously to see this vision realised. To achieve our vision we are committed to closing the gap between those communities most in need in Halton, compared to the rest of the country. We will do this by tackling inequality and promoting community cohesion, so that no community is disadvantaged.

A range of more specific strategies and initiatives will translate the broad aims and objectives of this Plan into action on the ground.

Our Guiding Principles

Halton Borough Council should be expected to maintain high standards in the way it conducts its business. In implementing actions that flow from this plan, the Council will follow a set of guiding principles. In all that we do we aim to be:

- Community focused - ensuring that residents' concerns are of prime importance in defining how we deliver effective services. We must maintain our open and democratic processes that encourage local people to become involved in decisions that directly affect them and future generations, working within the emerging policy context such as the localism agenda in developing new models of customer engagement
- Sustainable - improving the quality of life for today's Halton residents without jeopardising that of future generations whilst also enhancing the biodiversity of the area.
- Leaders - the Council's role is to give clear strategic leadership to the Borough and to agree roles, responsibilities and relationships that are fit for purpose and enable people to contribute and to make a difference.
- Fair and inclusive - promoting equal access to opportunities and facilities, and helping to ensure that everyone in the community can access the opportunities and progress being made in Halton.
- Good value – enabling and coordinating the delivery of services and ensuring that the community receives value for money services of high quality that are accessible, affordable and focused on local needs. It makes sense to invest in preventative activity that stops problems occurring rather than paying to fix things that go wrong.
- Collaborative - taking full advantage of the benefits for Halton from the community, organisations and groups working constructively in partnership and sharing responsibility whilst also recognising the changing roles of some of our key partners and working with emerging new structures
- Evidence-based – In making decisions and policy we will ensure that we learn from best practice elsewhere and making good use of research about what works in addressing the Borough's priorities. Halton's Corporate Plan is about focusing on the issues that matter the most and investing in priorities and approaches that are based on evidence.

Delivering Progress

During 2010/11 there have been several significant developments for the Council highlighting the improvement in performance that we continuously strive to achieve:

- A new strategic management structure was implemented on 1st April 2011, moving from four directorates to three, giving an opportunity to organise services differently and innovatively. We are also introducing shared responsibilities for children's services with Cheshire West and Chester Council, including a Joint Strategic Director post.
- As part of the annual assessment of safeguarding for Adult Social Care during 2010, the Care Quality Commission judged Halton to be performing excellently across all seven domains, being one of only three councils in the country to be awarded such a prestigious rating.
- During February 2011, the Ofsted Inspection of Safeguarding and Looked After Children judged Halton to be outstanding and good across all elements of the Inspection.

Progress against our priorities continues to be made. A few examples include:

- Extensive outcome-focussed work to ensure that the health and wellbeing of the people of Halton improves. We are in the process of establishing new alliances with GPs and the formation of a new Health and Wellbeing Board.
- Transformation and the increased use of individualised budgets are improving the way in which the Council supports vulnerable people in the community.
- Road Safety has improved significantly in recent years from 77 Killed or Seriously Injured in 2005 to 41 in 2010.
- Recycling levels have increased from 25% in 2007 to over 38% in 2011. The amount of waste produced per household is continuing to fall as is the level of waste sent to landfill for disposal. All households in the borough are now provided with kerbside multi-material recycling services.
- The Council delivers a co-ordinated approach to ensuring a cleaner, greener, safer Halton and significant progress has been achieved through the provision of high quality cleaning services, as well as a programme of education and enforcement to deter environmental crime.
- Establishing the Halton Employment Partnership, a single point of contact, accessible to both local employers and local people, utilising the expertise of various employment, learning and skills agencies to offer a seamless 'one stop shop' approach to the delivery of pre-recruitment services, skills training, apprenticeships and workforce development services.
- Restructuring has taken place in Children's Services including the establishment of the Team Around Family (TAF) and embedding the use of the Common Assessment Framework process. This has already shown an emerging positive early intervention/reduction in Children's Social Care referrals.
- Delivery of Castlefields Regeneration Programme continues at a pace, by 2016 the majority of the 1392 unpopular deck access flats will have been demolished. In their place at least 1000 new homes will be occupied. The new Village Square is due for completion in the summer of 2011 bringing much needed local shops and a community centre. The addition of a new health centre in spring 2012 will complete

the transformation of the old local centre, to put the heart back into the Neighbourhood.

What is Halton Like Now?

Halton is a largely urban area of 119,300 people (2010 population estimate). Its two biggest settlements are Widnes and Runcorn that face each other across the River Mersey, 10 miles upstream from Liverpool. The population of Halton was in decline for over a decade, but has recently started to increase. This in part is due to a concerted effort to build new houses, particularly larger executive homes in Sandymoor (East Runcorn) and Upton Rocks (NE Widnes) to try to stem population decline, to provide a more balanced housing stock, and to retain wealth in the community. It is also in part due to increased inward migration. The population is projected to grow to 122,900 by 2023.

The number of jobs in the borough is largely the same as it was 10 years ago but the proportion employed in manufacturing has fallen and the reliance on a small number of large employers is beginning to reduce. The wealth of the borough has improved overall during the last 10 years as illustrated by rising numbers of detached houses, rising car ownership and increases in professional and managerial households in parts of the borough. There are currently approximately 52,000 employee jobs in Halton, of which 37,900 are full time.

Halton shares many of the social and economic problems more associated with its urban neighbours on Merseyside. The Index of Multiple Deprivation (IMD) for 2010 is one of the most comprehensive sources of deprivation indicators, as some 38 different indicators are used. It shows for example that overall, Halton is ranked 27th nationally (a ranking of 1 indicates that an area is the most deprived), which is third highest on Merseyside, behind Knowsley and Liverpool, and 9th highest in the North West. Other authorities, St Helens (51st), Wirral (60th) and Sefton (92nd), are all less deprived compared to Halton.

The IMD score suggests that deprivation has stayed relatively level in the borough from being ranked 29th in 2007 to being rated 27th in 2010. The proportion of Halton's population in the most deprived areas (i.e. the top 10% of super output areas) has also remained relatively constant at about 25% in 2007 and 2010. The most deprived neighbourhood in Halton is ranked 264th out of 32,482 in England and is situated in Widnes. There are two neighbourhoods in Halton which fall in the top 1% most deprived super output areas nationally. Much has been done but clearly there is still much to do.

Since 2000, a range of research has been carried out, which has highlighted key challenges and opportunities facing Halton. This research tells us that Halton is:

- an area where over 70% of people are satisfied with their local area as a place to live
- an area whose population is projected to grow by 4% (2008-2026), with a large increase in the older population
- tackling deprivation, however it still remains one of the most deprived areas in the North West with unemployment rates higher than the North West and National rates

- an area where health issues are still evident with life expectancy lower than the North West and England averages
- an area with high quality open spaces; 12 areas within Halton have been designated with Green Flag awards
- improving its GCSE results and reducing the number of 16 to 18 year olds not in education, employment or training (NEET).
- an area with a diverse and prospering economy, with increasing average incomes for residents, improvement in skills and with higher rates of employment in the manufacturing sector
- an accessible and convenient place to live and work
- an area which provides a functional base for the community
- an area offering many innovation and development opportunities to improve quality of life

More detailed information on these issues can be found in the State of the Borough Report and the Local Economic Assessment for Halton.

Corporate Planning and Performance Framework

The Corporate Planning Framework is the means by which this plan will be delivered. It consists of a hierarchy of plans that are directly aligned to ensure that the corporate priorities and strategic objectives of the Council are cascaded down the organisation through properly outcome-focused targets. This is known as the 'Golden Thread'.

As part of this Golden Thread, the Sustainable Community Strategy outlines how the Halton Strategic Partnership intends to transform Halton over the next fifteen years. This will be supported by 3 five year delivery plans. This Corporate Plan sets out how the Council will deliver its contribution to achieving the Sustainable Community Strategy. The Plan provides focus for all that the Council will do over the next five years.

Directorate Business Plans set out how the Council's Directorates intend to deliver their particular responsibilities and address the key challenges facing them to help deliver the Corporate Plan.

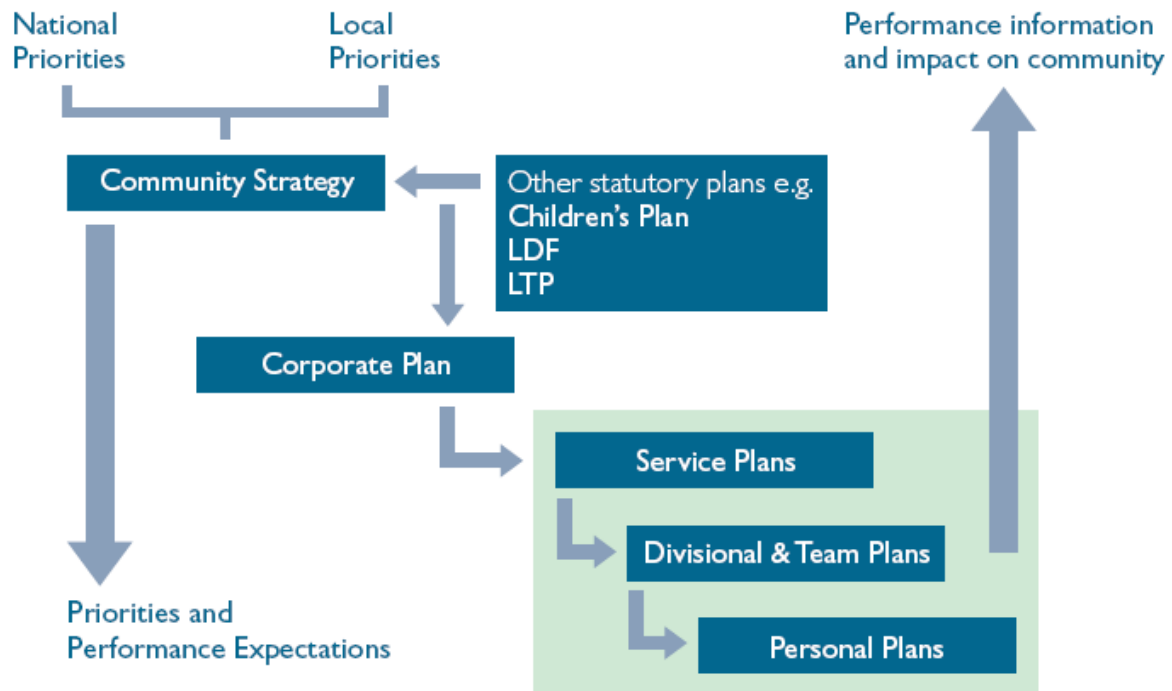
Divisional Plans outline the key tasks needed to help deliver the Directorate Plans and ensure that tasks are properly managed and delivered.

The Personal Development Plans of individual employees ensure that every employee has a set of professional and personal objectives that will help to deliver the corporate objectives, and that their training and development is focused on corporate aims.

Integrating service planning with resource planning is essential to make sure we can achieve our vision. An essential part of the Corporate Plan is the Council's medium term Financial Plan and its Workforce Development Plan. These are part of the framework for managing the resources that will help to deliver the Corporate Plan. The service plans provide the focus for the Council's performance management system.

Figure 1: 'Golden Thread' Integration within the Planning Framework

Halton's Strategic Planning Framework



Much has changed since the last Corporate Plan was updated in 2009. For example, Comprehensive Area Assessments, Local and Multi Area Agreements have been abolished by Central Government and been replaced with a new single data list, based on the principle of greater transparency for communities, from 1st April 2011. Unlike Local Area Agreements which had a broad partnership focus, this data list will solely focus on data to be collected by local authorities and fire and rescue services. This plan highlights key objectives for each priority and improvement targets by which the Council's, and Halton's, success can be judged.

The primary vehicle for measuring our performance and that of our partners in previous years was Halton's Local Area Agreement (LAA) which contained 32 shared targets selected from the National Indicator dataset. However, as previously stated, the National Indicator dataset and requirement to produce an LAA ended in October 2010. We therefore aim to improve our performance, as measured by the indicators contained in this data list, by retaining the former national indicators that remain relevant to Halton and through other monitoring other locally determined targets, year on year, through the life of this plan. Checking on our achievements and regularly monitoring progress will ensure we keep on track.

Developing this Corporate Plan

Wholesale improvement in the quality of life enjoyed by local people can only come about if a significant part of the community is involved in making it happen. This can take place informally in many different ways within the community itself. But this has to be complemented by action taken with the support of a variety of public, voluntary and other bodies.

The views of the public were an important factor in deciding the overall themes and thrust of this Corporate Plan. Channels of communication like the Borough's Local Area Forums provide extra ways to share, discuss and resolve local issues. A whole range of services actively consult with and involve their customers, and staff from a range of organisations work closely day to day with local people.

The Corporate Plan presents Halton Borough Council's response to how it will help to implement the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-26 and the Sustainable Community Strategy itself was developed on the back of a comprehensive and inclusive consultation process. Some of the key steps included:

- Public perception research through the Places Survey and Halton 2000 panel.
- A review of our achievements.
- The State of Halton Report was updated to look objectively at statistical conditions, changes and trends in social, economic and environmental conditions.
- A review of regional and national strategies was carried out to assess the likely impact of this activity in Halton.
- Partner ownership and involvement in drafting the document via Specialist Strategic Partnership meetings.
- An inclusive process of debate and discussion on the way forward took place with Elected Members and interested partners.
- Residents were invited to give their views on the Strategy via an online survey which was publicised in press advertisements, press releases and posters. Hard copies of the survey and document were available at Halton Direct Links.
- Young people were asked for their views on the Strategy via a presentation to the Halton Youth Cabinet.

The Council sees itself, through this Plan, as providing leadership. This can only be achieved if we remain in touch with the people and communities we represent and serve. This Plan aims to create an environment in which everyone can get involved in making things happen in Halton. We want to foster active participation by as many people and agencies as possible and the Council wants to look for ways to make itself more accountable to communities through customer focus, consultation and communication.

The Council constantly canvases public opinion, gathering the facts and figures needed to identify the overall priorities for the Borough. From the information provided by local residents and businesses it has been possible to identify a number of challenges for the Borough over the medium term which address the overall aim of making it a better place to live and work. These include:

- Providing for the ageing population.

- Narrowing the gap between most and least deprived areas within the borough through addressing health and socio-economic inequality.
- Improving educational attainment and access to training opportunities for those living in the area.
- Improving access to services such as social and leisure facilities, supermarkets, health services and transport.
- Understanding how knowledge and perceptions of health related issues can affect the local population.
- Reducing social isolation.
- Maximising community resources and facilitating effective community engagement and participation.
- Integrating delivery of services.
- Increasing community satisfaction with Halton as a place to live.
- Increasing focus on community involvement in public sector activities in Halton.
- Running services effectively and efficiently to meet customer needs and increase public satisfaction with all public services in Halton.

The key challenge is how best to frame the response to these through the Corporate Plan. To do this challenges have been grouped into six key themes, primarily reflecting those contained within Halton's Sustainable Community Strategy, but also adding a council- specific priority:

- A Healthy Halton
- Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton
- A Safer Halton
- Halton's Children and Young People
- Environment and Regeneration in Halton
- Corporate Effectiveness and Business Efficiency

The next section looks at how we organise ourselves to deliver our priorities; and the measures we intend to take over the next five years to improve our effectiveness.

Each section comprises:

- A statement of the priority.
- Its overall aim.
- Why the priority was chosen.
- Key objectives.
- The Council's contribution and key areas of focus.

A Healthy Halton

Our overall aim

To create a healthier community and work together to promote well being and a positive experience of life with good health, not simply an absence of disease, and offer opportunities for people to take responsibility for their health with the necessary support available.

Why Health?

Statistics show that health standards in Halton are amongst the worst in the country and single it out as the aspect of life in the borough in most urgent need of improvement. The population is ageing which could put even greater demands on health and social care services. At the same time lifestyle choices in the borough especially among the young, in terms of diet, smoking, alcohol, exercise and other factors continue to give cause for concern for the future.

The recent State of the Borough Report identifies Halton as one of the most deprived districts in England. In terms of health deprivation the local authority currently ranks 11th out of 326 local authorities in the country.

Key Objectives

- To understand fully the causes of ill health in Halton and act together to improve the overall health and well-being of local people.
- To lay firm foundations for a healthy start in life and support those most in need in the community by increasing community engagement in health issues and promoting autonomy.
- To reduce the burden of disease and preventable causes of death in Halton by reducing smoking levels, alcohol consumption and by increasing physical activity, improving diet and the early detection and treatment of disease.
- To respond to the needs of an ageing population, improving their quality of life and thus enabling them to lead longer, more active and more fulfilled lives.
- To remove barriers that disable people and contribute to poor health by working across partnerships to address the wider determinants of health such as unemployment, education and skills, housing, crime and environment
- To improve access to health services, including primary care.

Council Contribution and Key Areas of Focus

In order to contribute towards meeting these key community objectives for a Healthy Halton the Council, during the lifetime of this Corporate Plan, has identified the following Key Areas of Focus: -

Area of Focus 1 – Healthy and Active Lifestyles

Improve the future health prospects of Halton residents, particularly children, through encouraging and providing opportunities to lead healthier and physically active lifestyles.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Improving the current and future health of Halton school children by increasing children's intake of a variety of fresh fruit and vegetables through

increasing the access and availability of healthier nutritionally balanced school meals and increasing the number of pupils having a school lunch, to raise awareness of, and increase levels of, healthy eating.

- Increasing the take up of free school meals by eligible children
- Improving the health of Halton school children by increasing the percentage of children participating in sport for fun and fitness and Promoting healthy lifestyle through implementation of the school sports Co-ordinator programme.
- Improving access to information on healthier lifestyles and services.
- Reviewing and updating the Sports Strategy and Facilities Strategy and beginning their implementation during 2011/12.
- Increasing the number of new participants through Sport and Physical Activity Alliance delivery plan and using promotional events to increase participation and raise awareness associated with Sporting Excellence and 2012 Olympics
- Working with schools to develop initiatives school travel Plans that promote walking and cycling, road safety schemes and walking school buses.
- Promoting active travel options (walking / cycling) as viable alternatives to the car.

Area of Focus 2 – Good Public Health

Providing services and facilities to maintain and promote good public health and well-being.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Implementing the Local Affordable Warmth Strategy, in order to reduce fuel poverty and health inequalities.
- Safeguarding the health of Halton residents by continuing to review and assess air quality against the Government's health-related air quality standards and seek to ensure that existing standards are being met.
- Safeguarding the health of Halton residents by identifying the contaminated sites within the Borough, which present a significant risk to human health, to implement a programme of inspection prioritised by high, medium and low risk.
- Developing relevant and accessible information for young people on drugs and alcohol, their effects and support services across Halton.
- In partnership with the PCT and Clinical Commissioning Consortia reviewing access to services and activities to secure improvements in breast feeding rates.
- Building capacity in educational settings and improving the sexual health of Halton school children by increasing the percentage of schools participating in PHSE/SRE training and development.
- Developing and re-programming supporting people services.
- Support provision of transport to hospital and health facilities serving the Borough's residents

Area of Focus 3 – Intervention and Prevention

Working with service users to provide services focussed around intervention and prevention and where this is not possible, helping people to manage the effects of long term conditions.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Reviewing working practices to ensure they are 'fit for purpose' in line with the implications of the Autism Act 2009.
- Continuing to implement a behaviour solutions approach to develop quality services for adults with challenging behaviour
- Improving the long-term health of children and young people by reducing incidences of sales of products such as tobacco, solvents and alcohol to this group.
- Improving the health and well-being of children with disabilities in Halton and their families by increasing the number of short breaks available to them.
- Improving the health and well-being of looked after children via the joint work of Social Care and health partners, by increasing the proportion of looked after children with up to date immunisations, dental checks and health assessments.
- Ensuring service user views are taken into account when redesigning/evaluating services.
- Improving the health and well being of vulnerable adults and particularly older people by increasing the number of older people gaining access to holistic care packages.
- Increasing and delivering an improved range of services and support for carers, according to the Halton Carers Strategy.
- Enabling community centres to deliver programmes for vulnerable adults.
- Establishing a single service for drug users and those in recovery.
- Providing travel planning, advice and training to increase the accessibility of health facilities.

Area of Focus 4 – Maintaining Individual Independence

Providing services and facilities to maintain the independence and well-being of vulnerable people and those with complex care needs within our community.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Implementing recommendations following the Challenging Behaviour review/project to ensure services meet the needs of service users.
- Reviewing and evaluating new arrangements for integrated hospital discharge.
- Maintaining the number of carers receiving a break.
- Maintaining the numbers of carers provided with assessment leading to the provision of services, to ensure Carers needs are met.
- Implementing the Telecare strategy and action plan.
- Implementing the Local Dementia Strategy, to ensure effective services are in place.
- Implementing the redesign of the Supported Housing Network to ensure that it is meeting the needs of those with the most complex needs.
- Ensuring effective services are in place through the Supporting People Plan.
- Implementing and delivering the objectives outlined in the Homelessness and Housing Strategies and Repossessions Action Plan.
- Continuing to ensure that the Re-ablement service is meeting the requirements of the community of Halton.

- Implementing the Early Intervention/Prevention Strategy to improve outcomes for Older People in Halton.
- Contributing to the safeguarding of vulnerable adults and children in need, by ensuring that staff are familiar with and follow safeguarding processes.
- Continuing to establish effective arrangements across the whole of adult social care to deliver self directed support and personal budgets.
- Provision of appropriate transport to facilities.

Employment, Learning & Skills in Halton

Our overall aim

To create an economically prosperous borough that encourages investment, enterprise and business growth, and improves the opportunities for learning and development together with the skills and employment prospects of both residents and workforce so that they are able to feel included socially and financially.

Why Employment, Learning and Skills?

A robust economy lays the foundation for any prosperous and successful place and provides jobs, opportunities, wealth and aspirations for local people. Historically in Halton there has been a mismatch between the needs of local business and the skills of local people, low rates of entrepreneurship and high levels of welfare dependency, meaning that opportunity and need are out of balance and contributing to the widespread deprivation in Halton. Sustainable economic growth and prosperity requires a commitment to encourage and support a vibrant business sector together with a renewed commitment to creating sustainable employment, and high quality learning and skills opportunities to satisfy all stakeholders in Halton.

Key Objectives

- To develop a strong, diverse, competitive and sustainable local economy.
- To foster a culture of enterprise and entrepreneurship and make Halton an ideal place to start and grow economic activity.
- To develop a culture where learning is valued and skill levels throughout the adult population and across the local workforce can be raised.
- To promote and increase the employability of local people and tackle barriers to employment to get more people into work.
- To maximise an individual's potential to manage and increase their income, including access to appropriate, supportive advice services.

Council Contribution and Key Areas of Focus.

In order to contribute towards meeting these key community objectives for Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton the Council, during the lifetime of this Corporate Plan has identified the following Key Areas of Focus: -

Area of Focus 5 – Strong Local Economy

To develop a strong, diverse, competitive and sustainable local economy and to foster a culture of enterprise and entrepreneurship and make Halton an ideal place to start and grow economic activity

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Providing support for local businesses to exploit the potential of the internet.
- Supporting the development of digital service networks.
- Providing cohesive support for businesses to relocate to and within Halton.
- Continuing the development of STAM (Science, Technology & Advanced Manufacturing) Routeway and curriculum offer for Halton's young people.
- Strengthening the strategic partnership arrangements with the sub-region's Higher Education institutions.
- Continued support for the strategic development and regeneration of sites at 3MG, Widnes Waterfront and Daresbury.
- Develop a formal business engagement plan and further promote a one-stop approach to how we engage with employers and businesses.
- Supporting business formation and survival through initiatives such as promoting regional and national business start-up programmes like the Princes Trust and offering targeted financial support, training and incentives to new business start-ups
- Continued promotion of the regeneration of Halton's town centres through private development, redevelopment and renewal opportunities as appropriate.
- Maximising the leverage into Halton of external funding for capital development projects. .
- Encouraging greater levels of 'inter-trading' between Halton businesses.
- Providing advice to local businesses to help them participate in public sector and larger companies' procurement and construction processes.
- Encouraging the acquisition of business and budgeting skills by Halton's young people.
- Delivering Enterprise Halton 'Kickstart Enterprise Training' and business start-up grants and delivering an Enterprise Week Programme.
- Encouraging and supporting Community Enterprises.
- Promoting economic diversity and competitiveness within an improved business environment.
- To Implement the Mersey Gateway Regeneration Strategy.
- To implement a regeneration plan for Castlefields according to the Castlefields Team Plan and Regeneration Masterplan resulting in the delivery of The Masterplan's vision of a holistically improved estate.

Area of Focus 6 – Skilled Local Workforce

To develop a culture where learning is valued and skill levels throughout the adult population and across the local workforce can be raised.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Continuing the borough wide Skills for Life assessment and delivery service.
- Mapping and assessing the quality of current provision and identify gaps and areas for improvement.
- Promoting and improving access to the Nextstep service and the All Age Guidance service as it rolls out from September 2011.
- Enhancing existing information, advice and guidance on opportunities within higher education.
- Working with employers, providers and key stakeholders to ensure provision matches current and future demand for apprenticeships, internships and work

placements more effectively and supporting them in offering post-entry career development opportunities for existing staff.

- Implementing the Construction Halton model, focused on delivering community benefits from construction related work in the form of apprenticeships, training and work experience opportunities.
- Continuing the development of the Science Halton Routeway.
- Devising & delivering employability programmes responsive to Halton's employment needs
- Continue with programmes aimed at ensuring a highly skilled and highly motivated workforce to have a positive impact upon business growth.

Area of Focus 7 – Increased Local Employment

To promote and increase the employability of local people and tackle barriers to employment to get more people into work

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Putting in place clearly defined strategies to remove barriers faced by the long-term unemployed seeking to return to work. (e.g. Jobcentre Plus Focused Partnership Delivery Pilot).
- Providing better access to affordable and accessible local childcare.
- Creating pathways into employment in new and growing sectors of the economy and link into Job Centre Plus service academies.
- Continuing to provide employers with a 'complete employment offer' through the Halton Employment Partnership.
- Providing sector/employer specific pre-employment support services for Halton residents.
- Offering a brokering role to link residents with potential volunteering and employment opportunities.
- Working with the Apprenticeship Service to raise employer's knowledge and understanding of the benefits of apprenticeships, internships and work placements, delivering Extended Apprenticeship Support Programme and developing Apprenticeships within the Council
- Providing structured employment 'tasters' as part of NEET (Not in Education, Employment or Training) engagement programmes.
- Work with the Prime Contractors Ingeus and A4E to deliver the Single Work Programme in Halton.
- Providing suitable transport to enable people to access employment and providing travel planning advice for prospective and existing employers.

Area of Focus 8 – Support and Advice

To maximise an individual's potential to manage and increase their income, including access to appropriate, supportive advice services.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Ensuring that relevant Council activity contributes towards the targets in the Halton Child & Family Poverty Strategy.

- Facilitating the provision and take-up of 'out of hours' financial information, advice and guidance services.
- Working alongside partners to increase the provision and promotion of affordable credit, targeting Halton's most disadvantaged communities.
- Support provision of community transport / innovative solutions to ensure accessibility to employment opportunities.

A SAFER HALTON

Our overall aim

To ensure pleasant, safe and secure neighbourhood environments, with attractive, safe surroundings, good quality local amenities, and the ability of people to enjoy life where they live.

Why a Safer Halton?

Crime and the fear of crime affect everybody's lives. It is a major concern according to every survey of Halton residents. These surveys also show that cleaner, tidier communities would make the biggest difference to improving life for people in their local area. We want Halton to be a clean, green, safe and attractive place to live. People should tolerate, value and respect each other, their property and the places where they live.

Key Objectives

- To investigate and tackle the underlying causes of crime and disorder and respond effectively to public concern by reducing crime levels, with a particular focus on reducing the levels of crime that disproportionately affect some of the more deprived areas.
- To tackle alcohol and drug/substance misuse problems, and the resulting harm that is caused to communities, families and individuals.
- To tackle the problem of domestic abuse in all its forms, supporting the victims and their families and taking enforcement action against perpetrators.
- To safeguard adults who are more vulnerable to physical, financial, sexual and emotional abuse and vulnerable children who are often part of families where there are drug and alcohol problems or where relationships are abusive or violent.
- To consult and engage with communities to identify problems and put in place effective measures to address them, with a particular focus on promoting community cohesion and adopting a zero tolerance to all forms of hate crime within Halton, so that no-one is victimised.
- We will work together to reduce fear of crime and increase public confidence in the police, council and other agencies to respond to reports of crime and anti social behaviour and tackle any potential tensions within communities, in particular those that may lead to extremist activity.

Council Contributions and Key Areas of Focus

In order to contribute towards meeting these key community objectives for a Safer Halton the Council, during the lifetime of this Corporate Plan has identified the following Key Areas of Focus: -

Area of Focus 9 – COMMUNITY CONFIDENCE AND REASSURANCE

To work together with the community to tackle crime, design and manage neighbourhoods and open spaces so that people feel safe and to respond effectively to public concerns. Through working together with our partners for example the police and fire service we want to tackle the underlying causes of crime in Halton and put in place measures to address offending behaviour, in particular that of repeat offenders who are responsible for a disproportionate number of offences in the Borough. We will give advice to residents on community safety issues, support victims of crime, provide accurate data and information on crime and ensure that we respond appropriately to incidents to help reassure residents.

Examples of future planned activity could include:-

- To inform residents of community safety activity within Halton, so they feel reassured that we are tackling the issues that matter to them.
- Provision of activities for young people to tackle Anti Social Behaviour.
- Development of initiatives such as the Home Watch Scheme to increase residents' involvement in helping to tackle crime and anti social behaviour within their neighbourhoods.
- Further consider how to reduce the impact on crime and alcohol related disorder through the Licensing Process.
- Burglary Days of Action - to engage directly with those communities that are most at risk of becoming victims of burglary, bringing the services of the Community Safety Team to those areas identified as being most in need of support.
- Designing out crime through the planning process.
- Provision and monitoring of a CCTV system to help identify and tackle crime particularly in the town centres
- Town centre management to work with business to reduce crime.
- Managing our parks, footpaths and open spaces to reduce the opportunity for crime to take place and to make users feel safer.
- To engage with partners to help ensure appropriate support for ex offenders to assist them in changing their lifestyle and offending behaviour patterns.
- Striving to improve safety on Halton's transport network through better natural surveillance, infrastructure improvements and use of new technology to identify individuals who cause problems for other users and commit crime
- Maximising the use of the Council's legislative powers to deter and reduce environmental crime, thus building community confidence and reducing the fear of crime, increasing resident's satisfaction and improving the "liveability" of their area

Area of Focus 10 - SAFEGUARDING VULNERABLE ADULTS AND CHILDREN

To improve the outcomes of vulnerable adults and children, so they feel safe and protected and when abuse does occur there are local procedures and processes in place to ensure that the abuse is reported and appropriate action taken against perpetrators and to support victims.

Examples of future planned activity could include:-

- Stay Safe Project – taking vulnerable young people whose behaviour or whereabouts places them at risk of significant harm to a place of safety
- Developing a 'Family Focused' approach to young people and their families who are currently accessing many different services to prevent duplicate service intervention and achieve better outcomes for families

Area of Focus 11 - DOMESTIC ABUSE

Everyone is able to live in an environment free from abuse, and where abuse does occur support is given to individuals and their families and action is taken against perpetrators to prevent any re-occurrence.

Examples of future planned activity could include:-

- Co-ordinating a multi agency approach through MARAC to commission interventions such as the Sanctuary Scheme and an Independent Domestic Violence Advocate.
- Supporting a 'Service User' Group to inform services within Halton.
- Adopting a family centred approach to support victims and their families to feel confident to identify abuse, and where appropriate to give evidence so that action is taken against perpetrators.

Area of Focus 12 - SUBSTANCE MISUSE

Supporting individuals and their families to address the problems caused by drug and alcohol misuse, enabling them to become active citizens who can play a full and meaningful part in the community

Examples of future planned activity could include:-

- To commission a substance misuse service that supports more people to become free from their drug or alcohol dependence.
- To work closely with Jobcentre Plus, Halton People into Jobs and the Halton Employment Partnership to support individuals in accessing meaningful employment, education & training opportunities.
- To work closely with the various Health Services to provide opportunities for individuals, carers & families to improve their physical & mental well being.
- To increase the number of community pharmacists providing clean injecting equipment to protect individual & public health.
- Using the experiences of service users & carers to develop our responses to substance misuse.
- To celebrate the successes of individual's in substance misuse services, showing that recovery from addiction is possible, and addressing the negative stereotyping of those with drug and alcohol problems.
- Test Purchasing of underage alcohol sales.
- Introduction, implementation and enforcement of Alcohol Byelaws in Halton.
- Provision of appropriate mental health, drug and alcohol treatment services to offenders to help them turn their life around.

Children and Young People in Halton

Our overall aim

Halton's ambition is to build stronger, safer communities which are able to support the development and learning of children and young people so they grow up feeling safe, secure, happy and healthy, and are ready to be Halton's present and Halton's future

Why Children and Young People?

Children and young people are the future of Halton. In time they will become the adults that take responsibility for all aspects of life in the borough. Therefore, it is self evident that we should invest in Halton's future by investing in them. This will make sure they have the best possible start in life, have places to go and things to do that are positive and life enhancing, and the opportunity to fulfil their potential and succeed.

Key Objectives

Halton's Children's Trust has identified three overarching areas where a strong partnership approach is needed to improve outcomes for children and young people. These form the foundation for the Children and Young People's Plan 2011-14. These areas, under which the key outcomes can be clustered, are:

- Improve outcomes for children and young people through effective joint commissioning.
- Improve outcomes for our most vulnerable children and young people by targeting services effectively.
- Improve outcomes for children and young people through embedding integrated processes to deliver early help and support.

Safeguarding plays a significant role in each of these identified areas of work and will be a consistent factor as each priority is addressed.

Council Contribution and Key Areas of Focus

In order to contribute towards meeting these community objectives for Children and Young People in Halton the Council, during the lifetime of this Corporate Plan, has identified the following Key Areas of Focus: -

Area of Focus 13 - Educational Attainment

To improve outcomes for children by increasing educational attainment, health, stability and support during transition to adulthood.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Improving outcomes for children in care and care leavers.
- Increasing the percentage of schools where Ofsted judge overall effectiveness to be good or better.
- Increasing GCSE attainment for 5 or more at grades A*-C including English and Maths.
- Analysing the levels of absence, including persistent absence, across all phases on a termly basis.

- Narrowing the gap in attainment between vulnerable groups and their peers through early identification of need, and effectively targeted school improvement support.
- Conducting data analysis for children in care (including CICOLA – Children in Care of Other Local Authorities) and with schools ensure that action plans for individual pupils are in place.
- Work with transport providers to ensure children have access to safe / affordable transport to allow participation in full range of after school activities and social events.

Area of Focus 14 – Effective Family Services

To deliver effective services to children and families by making best use of available resources.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Ensuring that the Children and Families workforce have Managers who have the appropriate skills and that social workers have the support, skills and competence to enable them to contribute to improving outcomes for children and to maintain professional standards.
- Developing a model of early intervention and prevention providing seamless service delivery to children and families from universal to specialist services.
- Integrating the universal and early intervention services for Disabled Children within the Team around the Family model to reduce the need for more specialist intervention by March 2012.
- Undertaking a comprehensive review of Early Years provision.
- Further developing and implementing commissioning to improve outcomes for Children and Young People.
- Ensuring that service redesign results in the most efficient use of available resources to meet local needs and also delivers the requirements of the Education White Paper/Education Act and the SEN Green Paper.

Area of Focus 15 – Vocational Learning

Provide a seamless transition for young people from school to employment, through opportunities for work related learning, and post 16 education, voluntary and community work.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Further developing a 14-19 commissioning framework to improve outcomes for young people.
- To reduce the conception rate amongst women under 18 by providing awareness, education and relevant support.
- Refreshing the Integrated Youth Support Service (IYSS) Strategy and implement the agreed actions.
- Reviewing and improving Sixth Form provision.
- Implementing the action plan from the review of quality and sustainability of The Gateway Key Stage 4 provision
- Provision of appropriate transport to enable young people to access education, employment, voluntary and community work.

Area of Focus 16 – Safeguarding Children

To ensure a safe environment for where they are supported and protected from abuse and neglect.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Ensuring that children requiring interventions at level 3b and 4 of Halton's Levels of Need receive high quality assessments and interventions to improve outcomes.
- Developing, implementing and embedding Child in Need reviewing processes for Halton.
- Developing a shared adoption service.
- Implementing a multi agency Children in Care Strategy for Halton.
- Implementing a Placement Strategy to increase accommodation for care leavers and the number of foster carers in Halton.

Environment and Regeneration in Halton

Our overall aim

To transform the urban fabric and infrastructure, to develop exciting places and spaces and to create a vibrant and accessible borough that makes Halton a place where people are proud to live and see a promising future for themselves and their families.

Why Environment and Regeneration?

Modern day Halton inherited an exceptional legacy of obsolete and poor quality land, buildings and physical infrastructure that continues to present major challenges in terms of development potential and attractiveness of the area. Putting this right is a key to greater prosperity by boosting regeneration opportunities and improving the image of the borough. A good quality of life can affect investment decisions. High quality schools, good quality affordable housing and attractive open spaces are all strong reasons for investing or relocating to an area.

Good successful economies have robust infrastructures and are well connected, otherwise growth is hampered. Improving the ICT and broadband infrastructure will support businesses in promoting the knowledge economy and support efficiency and innovation.

In terms of the environment, climate change is recognised as one of the most serious challenges facing the UK. The impacts of climate change may be felt within the Borough through warmer summers and wetter winters and an increased frequency of severe weather events. By ensuring that the Borough is resilient to the adverse effects of climate change and by reducing Halton's carbon footprint these climatic shifts will have less of a pronounced effect on Halton's natural and built environments.

This is why the quality of the environment and regeneration in Halton is a priority for the Council.

Key Objectives

- Guide the development of a high quality and sustainable built environment to support Halton's new low carbon economy.
- Provide a well connected, sustainable and accessible borough, including the provision of the Mersey Gateway. Ensure a variety of safe efficient travel and infrastructure options for people, goods, communications and freight.
- Conserve, manage and enhance Halton's physical and natural assets in order to maximise community and other benefits by improving environmental quality.
- Achieve high standards of sustainability by tackling climate change. Minimise waste generation and maximising the reuse, recycling, composting and energy management and recovery from waste resources.
- Provide sustainable, good quality, affordable and adaptable residential accommodation to meet the needs of all sections of society.

Council Contribution and Key Areas of Focus

To contribute towards meeting these key community objectives, the Council has identified the following Key Areas of Focus:-

Area of Focus 17 – Improved Transport

To promote sustainable, safe and accessible transport that meets the needs of Halton's residents, businesses and visitors

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Implementing the transport strategies and programmes of work contained within Halton's third Local Transport Plan (LTP3).
- Progression of the Mersey Gateway Project
- Implementing the Mersey Gateway Sustainable Transport Strategy that contains a range of transport measures to enhance facilities and encourage walking, cycling and public transport, including the development of a bus based rapid transit network for Halton.
- Continuing to work with public and community transport operators to improve the quality and accessibility of public transport services in Halton to encourage the use of sustainable transport and increase its accessibility by vulnerable groups.
- Making Access improvements to rail services.
- Continuing to enhance transport infrastructure and services to major educational and employment sites in Halton including: 3MG (Mersey Multimodal Gateway), Widnes Waterfront and the Daresbury sites.
- Continuing to maintain and manage the transport network in Halton to ensure that safety and efficiency are maximised.
- Delivery of the remaining programme of major works identified within the revised Silver Jubilee Bridge Complex Maintenance Strategy to ensure continued unrestricted availability of the crossing and to allow future maintenance to be delivered on a steady state, lifecycle planned basis.
- Reducing road casualties within the borough.
- Continuing to work with our neighbouring authorities to facilitate cross boundary movements and improve access to services and job opportunities.

Area of Focus 18 – Quality Built Environment

Provide a high quality built environment that is sustainable, affordable and adaptable to meet the needs and aspirations of all sections of society.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Continuing to negotiate with housing providers and partners in relation to the provision of further extra care housing tenancies, to ensure requirements are met.
- Facilitating new housing planning permissions (with good supporting facilities and settings) at a level that respects the net housing growth figure in the Local Development Framework (LDF).
- Maintaining levels of affordable housing provision within Halton that provide quality and choice and meets the needs and aspirations of existing and potential residents.
- Management and delivery of the Castlefields Regeneration Programme.
- Implementing and keeping current Halton's Housing Strategy.
- Ensuring that all development, not just housing, is sustainable, adaptable and meets the requirements of future users in the long term.

Area of Focus 19 – Public Space

Conserve, manage and enhance public spaces for leisure and recreation and foster conservation by protecting key areas.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Developing and implementing a Greenspace Strategy which will incorporate biodiversity action planning in line with the Cheshire Region Biodiversity Action Plan
- Promoting the reclamation of derelict or contaminated land for greenspace and/or regeneration.
- Continuing to promote horticultural excellence within the wider urban environment.
- Maintaining the current 12 Green Flag Award Parks to the standard. Promote sponsorship of greenspace assets, including highway greenspace in order to sustain quality standards Borough wide;
- Maintaining local nature reserves and wild spaces to support the Council's efforts to deliver regeneration and a better quality of life in Halton.
- Continuing to promote habitat diversity through existing SLAs and partners.
- Developing and implement the Play Strategy, Sports Strategy and Playing Pitch strategy.
- Continuing to manage development in conservation areas and to listed buildings through the Local Development Framework.
- Improving community sports facilities and increase the community usage of the Stobart Stadium.
- Continuing to improve Parks, Sports Grounds, Open Spaces and Local Nature Reserves.
- Ensuring the Rights of Way Improvement Plan is implemented.

Area of Focus 20 – Environmental Quality

Improve environmental quality by tackling climate change, minimising waste generation and maximising reuse, recycling, composting and energy recovery.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Developing and implementing the Corporate Climate Change Strategy and Action Plan.
- Implementing the Councils Carbon Management Plan by continuing to promote energy efficiency in all Council buildings.
- Updating the Council's the Waste Management Strategy and developing action plans and implementing services and initiatives to meet the aims and objectives of the Strategy
- Ensure that all residents in Halton have easy access to advice, support and services to help them reduce their waste and to recycle more of what they produce.
- Developing and implementing the Waste Management Strategy.
- Reducing carbon emissions from the council's own activities by 20% and to work with partners, the community and business to help reduce their carbon emissions.
- Growing the low carbon economy, developing low carbon infrastructure and promoting low carbon business clusters.

Attracting investment from environmental industries, exploiting the niche markets of the future and developing low carbon skills.

- Developing and implementing the Affordable Warmth strategy.

Corporate Effectiveness & Efficient Service Delivery

Our overall aim

To deliver continued and positive improvement on the quality of life in the communities of Halton through the efficient use of the Council's resources.

Why Effectiveness and Efficiency?

The preceding sections of this plan set out some vital and challenging objectives and targets for Halton. For the Council to make the fullest contribution to achieving these objectives, it must make sure that the action it takes is effective, and that its resources are deployed in the most efficient way possible to maximise that effect.

The 2010 Comprehensive Spending Review undertaken by Government has reduced the resources available to us. The challenge remains to transform services, looking beyond organisational boundaries to reduce duplication and increase effectiveness, and supporting people through early intervention and prevention in the first place rather than focusing on the problems (prevention is better than cure).

To ensure effectiveness our actions must be targeted on our priorities, be evidence based, and be focused on the needs of the community, especially those identified as disadvantaged. To achieve this, the Council will need to work in partnership with others and demonstrate clear vision and leadership.

The Council has regard to the environmental impact of the goods and services we procure and commission and work together to achieve improvements. The Council will continue to work together with our partners, the community and business to reduce environmental impacts and address climate change. We will monitor our environmental compliance, manage any risks and monitor and improve our environmental performance.

There is a strong commitment to tackling climate change and completing the evolution to a low carbon local economy. The Council is demonstrating leadership in the use and refurbishment of operational assets. Examples include installing voltage optimisers in buildings, a programme of lighting and boiler control improvements, installation of Multi Functional devices across the Council's buildings and the setting up of a Green Champion Network. Additionally, where refurbishment has been necessary, energy efficient measures have been installed. The improvements at Runcorn Town Hall have included an increase in insulation to the roof, double glazing and cladding, solar shading, photovoltaic tiles, sensory lighting, water saving WCs, water saving taps and heating control zoning.

Through democratic accountability and full engagement the Council will ensure that our vision and the actions to deliver it reflect the priorities of the community we serve.

Key Objectives

- To empower local people to have a greater voice and influence over local decision-making and the delivery of services.
- To deliver services in a fair, equal, accessible way to all residents.
- To translate vision and priorities into action and delivery - both directly and through influencing others.
- To redirect resources (financial, human and physical) towards the delivery of the objectives and targets set out in this plan.
- To improve continuously the quality and efficiency of services.
- Ensuring a skilled, motivated, flexible and diverse workforce is in place which will deliver value for money services and in turn make a positive difference to the people of Halton.

Council Contribution and Key Areas of Focus

All organisations require a foundation from which to operate and the resources to provide the goods or services that they deliver. These resources may be financial, physical (i.e. land, buildings and equipment), intellectual (i.e. peoples skills and knowledge), or organisational (i.e. communication, policies, strategies etc).

To manage the efficient alignment of the Council's resources and enhance its organisational capability to deliver upon its priorities as detailed earlier in this plan the Council has identified the following resource priorities.

Area of Focus 21 - Effective partnership working

Engaging with partners and the community, to ensure that our priorities, objectives, and targets are shared, evidence based, regularly monitored and

reviewed, and that there are plausible delivery plans to improve the quality of life in Halton, and help narrow the gap between the most disadvantaged neighbourhoods and the rest of Halton.

Examples of future planned activity could include: -

- Delivery of the Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-2026.
- Implementing, monitoring and reviewing the Community Engagement Strategy.
- Delivering the framework of statutory plans and other key strategies to provide a clear corporate direction for Council services and external partners.
- Improving the effectiveness of the support, intelligence, and advice provided to the Council and its partners to inform decisions on policy, resource planning, service delivery and performance and improvement; demonstrating transparency and accountability to our stakeholders and compliance with inspection and regulatory frameworks.

Area of Focus 22 – Customer Experience

Build on our customer focus by involving more service users in the design and delivery of services, and ensuring equal access for all users.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Evolve, improve and redevelop customer contact systems, access channels and availability.
- Embedding the principle of ‘the customer experience perspective’ in everything we do, making best use of customer intelligence.
- Implementing, monitoring and reviewing the Equality Scheme to ensure that customers are treated fairly and have appropriate access to services.
- Service transformation such as the ‘Team around the Family’ approach in the Children and Young People Directorate.

Area of Focus 23 – Operational Land and Property

Ensure that all Council buildings are safe and accessible, meet the needs of service users and the organisation, and contribute to reducing energy use and the consumption of natural resources.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Implementing the Accommodation Strategy to reduce costs and dispose of surplus assets.
- Acting on climate change through behaviour change; more energy efficient buildings; products which consume less energy; more renewable energy and microgeneration; sustainable low carbon transport; more efficient use of water; and by producing less waste.
- Reducing the amount of outstanding Disability Discrimination Act works (non schools) and the backlog of maintenance on our property portfolio.
- Fulfilling the requirements of Asbestos Audits and Management Regulations.
- Undertaking cyclical Property Condition Surveys.
- Increasing the proportion of the Council’s public buildings that are fully accessible to 100%.
- Delivering the Building Schools for the Future Programme at The Grange and Wade Deacon.

- Implementing the Council's Carbon Management Plan which includes energy efficiency measures in corporate buildings.
- Managing the Council's energy consumption to meet the requirements of the Government's Carbon Reduction Commitment.
- Reviewing and modifying the Council's industrial property portfolio to support new and developing enterprise.
- Ascertaining the full cost of holding surplus properties and to identify possible sales.
- Development of a strategic approach to the management of the Council's land and property portfolio.

Area of Focus 24 - People

Ensuring that we are properly structured, resourced and organised with informed and motivated staff with the right skills who are provided with opportunities for personal development. This ensures decision makers are supported through the provision of timely and accurate advice and information.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Managing our human resources and implementing, monitoring and reviewing the Council's workforce development and learning plans to ensure that we attract and retain staff in an equitable way, ensure that they have the skills and knowledge that meet organisational need, and provide opportunities for them to achieve their full potential.
- Annually reviewing the Constitution of the Council to ensure that it remains fit for purpose.
- Ensuring that arrangements are in place to ensure business continuity and embedding risk management business planning processes.
- Launching the People Plan to ensure our human resource management is reflective of a modern, excellent authority and consistent with best practice.
- To enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of corporate training opportunities through the design and implementation of appropriate learning interventions.
- Provide Elected Members, as key decision makers, with the necessary information, support and training opportunities to fulfil their individual potential and management and governance role effectively.
- Improve the quality and effectiveness of the Council's communications.

Area of Focus 25 - Financial Resources

Manage financial resources effectively whilst maintaining transparency, prudence and accountability to our stakeholders. Enhance our procurement arrangements to further reduce the cost of acquiring goods and services.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Implementing the Corporate Efficiency Programme combining the principles of best value with business process re-engineering to identify efficiency gains in priority areas.
- Providing for public accountability by reporting the Councils stewardship of public funds and its financial performance in the use of resources by preparing the final

accounts as required by statute and in accordance with the latest accounting standards.

- Setting and delivering the Annual Audit Plan.
- Setting the Revenue Budget, Capital Programme and Council Tax.
- Ensuring that the capital programme is affordable, prudent and sustainable by setting and monitoring Prudential Borrowing Indicators.
- Developing, identifying and exploiting the potential for further efficiency, including a category management approach to procurement.
- Extending the range of corporate procurement contracts.
- Working towards being at level 3 on the Sustainable Framework for Flexible Procurement by 2010 and reaching level 5 by 2013.

Area of Focus 26 – Innovation and Entrepreneurialism

Take a fresh approach to service delivery, including exploiting the potential of ICT to meet the present and future business requirements of the Council.

Examples of future planned activity could include:

- Supporting the above objectives by maintaining a strategic approach to securing external funding, and maximising external funding secured for the Borough through the promotion of funding sources and the development of high quality grant applications for Council projects and the voluntary and community sector.
- Continuing to identify and exploit the potential for further efficiency gains by enhancing the authority's approach to the procurement of goods and services.
- Ensuring that customer access is improved by means of electronic service delivery.
- Delivering the phased implementation of the Information Management Strategy.
- Improve the usability, resilience, control and flexibility of the Council's Data Communications Network Infrastructure
- Satisfying the business needs of the Council's Corporate and Directorate requirement by providing a scalable and robust hardware infrastructure and software platform.
- Implementing a range of new corporate wide facilities including Web services, records & document management, business process workflow, corporate desktop portal.

Making it Happen in Halton

All the objectives and targets outlined here are achievable. However, all of our aspirations will not happen unless we do the job properly. That means money, people, physical resources, proper intelligence and information must be allied with the strength of will to use them in the best way. Resources are already allocated to the priorities set out in this plan. However, we need to allocate resources more selectively if we are to achieve our objectives.

There are a number of changes taking place in the way in which government allocates funds to local authorities, leading to uncertainty about the future levels of such funding, but the rate of growth in government funding is likely to be much lower than in recent years. There are also considerable internal pressures on the Council's budget - for

example, pressures caused by rapidly increasing demands in Children's and Adult Social Services.

Given the pressures outlined above, it is clear that there will be little or no new money. We will have either to increase our efficiency and use the savings produced to fund priority areas, or redirect resources from non-priority areas.

Efficiency

Greater inventiveness and innovation will be required in the future given reducing resources. The Council is part way through the implementation of its Efficiency Programme to reduce costs whilst minimising impact on service delivery, the emphasis is very much on shifting to using resources "smartly".

Efficiency is making best use of resources available for the provision of services and efficiency gains are achieved by one or more of the following:

- Reducing inputs (money, people, assets etc) for the same outputs.
- Reducing prices (procurement, labour cost etc) for the same outputs.
- Greater outputs or improved service quality (extra service, productivity etc) for the same inputs.
- Getting proportionally more outputs or improved quality in return for an increase in inputs.

The resources of the Council and its partners are being focused to enable a real impact on the strategic priorities. As a result, the Council will continue to develop services to achieve the objectives and improvement targets within this Corporate Plan.

The Council has a robust performance monitoring framework that will be used to monitor the impact of efficiency measures on service quality. This means:

- Being clear and agreed about what we need to achieve so we are all pulling in the same direction.
- Maximising the funding we can generate or draw in to benefit Halton and developing our own resources and the capacity to help ourselves.
- Co-operating to be more effective, cutting out duplication and waste, and pooling the budgets, knowledge and efforts of different organisations and groups where this makes sense.
- Listening and responding to what matters most to people locally.
- Targeting what we do to where it can make the most difference.
- Doing the kind of things that experience has shown are really successful.
- Checking on progress, letting people know how we are doing, and adjusting as necessary to keep on track.
- The pace at which we can make progress on our priorities will depend on the availability of appropriate resources (money, time, staff, land etc).

In allocating resources and determining the overall level and make up of our budget, we have to balance the achievement of our priorities against the impact of spending levels on the council taxpayer. We are proud of having one of the lowest levels of council tax in the region, allied with our ability still to deliver top quality services to local people.

To implement this, an Efficiency Strategy Group has been established. It will aim to maximise the employment of efficient business practices to maximise efficiency gains, translate them into cash, and allow choices on their re-direction to delivery of quality front line services. Key actions already identified include:

Procurement

A procurement strategy has been developed and the Council will strengthen the corporate procurement function. A new financial management system, with an e-procurement module, has been introduced. The Council is also working closely with the North West Improvement & Efficiency Partnership

Technology

Investment in ICT has allowed strong progress toward lean working. Technology allows remote service delivery, integration with partners and local authorities through secure network links. Safeguarding the personal data held within the many council and partner systems

Partnerships

Partnership working in service delivery will continue to be developed. The Council uses framework contracts for professional services. Pooled budgets have been established with the Health Service, and a joint commissioning framework has been agreed with the PCT. This will enable joint service development to take place in such areas as mental health services and learning disability services.

Energy Management

Control over energy consumption by improving our purchasing, operation, motivation and training practices will result in energy savings for reinvestment into a rolling programme of further energy saving measures.

Productive Use of Time

The Council's Managing Absence policy has been reviewed, the aim is to reduce levels of sickness absence year on year. In addition, a home working pilot is to be evaluated later in the year.

Strong Council Workforce

During major service and organisational transformation it is imperative that we take our workforce with us to help us to create the 'fit for the future' local public services needed to deliver our community priorities. We will be involving our workforce in making these changes and by supporting them in learning both new skills and new ways of working.

The Corporate People Plan, which will provide an over-arching Workforce Strategy across the Council in which all Directorate workforce strategies is currently being developed. This will ultimately ensure a skilled, motivated, flexible and diverse workforce is in place which will deliver value for money services and in turn make a positive difference to the people of Halton.

Managing Risks

The Council recognises the scale of its ambition and is realistic in its expectations of what can be achieved given the scale of resources being deployed. In addition it also recognises that risk management must be an integral part of the performance management framework and business planning process. This will increase the probability of success (and reduce the likelihood of failure) by systematically identifying, evaluating and controlling the risks associated with the achievement of its objectives.

The risk management process focuses attention and resources on critical areas, provides more robust action plans and better informed decision-making. It also fosters a culture where uncertainty does not slow progress or stifle innovation and ensures the commitment and resources of the Council to produce positive outcomes.

As part of implementing this Corporate Plan the Council has adopted a Risk Management Strategy and established a Strategic Risk Register. The Strategy sets out the risk management objectives; the role and responsibilities for risk management of the authority; the categorisation of risks and the approach to risk management action plans.

The Council's risks can be broadly categorised as either "strategic" or "operational". Strategic risks cover those threats/opportunities that could impact upon the achievement of medium and long-term goals. Operational risks cover those threats/opportunities that could impact upon the quality of service delivery.

Complementing this is the Council's business continuity management planning. This provides plans and procedures to ensure the Council can continue its functions in the event of a major emergency.

Equality & Diversity

The Council is determined to deliver its vision of a better future for Halton's people. We are committed to equality for everyone regardless of age, sex, caring responsibilities, race, religion, sexuality, or disability. We are leaders of the community and will not accept discrimination, victimisation or harassment. This commitment to equity and social justice is clearly stated in the adopted Equal Opportunities Policy of the Council. This states that the Council:

- Is committed to promoting equal opportunities in Halton.
- Values diversity and encourages fairness and justice.
- Wants equal chances for everyone in Halton to work, learn and live free from discrimination and victimisation.
- Will combat discrimination and will use its position of influence in the Borough, wherever possible, to help overcome discriminatory barriers.

The Council will work collaboratively to develop effective procedures and policies to combat all forms of unlawful discrimination and to share good practice. It will ensure that all services are provided fairly in order to eliminate discrimination, advance equality of opportunity, and foster good relations in the course of developing our policies and delivering services.

Reasonable adjustments will be made so that services are accessible to everyone who needs them. Cultural and language needs will be recognised and services will be provided which are appropriate to these needs. Partners will monitor the take up of

services from different sections of the population. The information collected will be used to inform service planning and delivery.

Equality Impact Assessments will also be carried out on Council policies and services to assess how policies and services impact upon different sections of the community. The results of the Equality Impact Assessments highlight areas for improvement that are dealt with through an Equalities Improvement Plan.

The Council takes complaints seriously. People who feel that they have been unfairly treated have the right to use the complaints procedure established by the Council.

Performance Management

This plan runs for five years, at which point we expect it be reviewed. It is an important step, but only a step, in a much longer journey to build a better future for people in Halton. If we succeed in achieving our targets, they will translate into real improvements for local people, including:

- Longer, healthier lives.
- A better urban environment and reasons to feel pride in Halton.
- Higher standards of education and skills and the greater employment and other life chances that go with them.
- Fewer people trapped by poverty, excluded or held back through some form of deprivation or disadvantage.
- The freedom to feel safe and enjoy life in an attractive neighbourhood.
- This is why it is important to know how we are doing and what headway we are making in meeting the improvement targets we have set ourselves.

By monitoring progress closely we can identify and build on successes, provide necessary assistance or support where progress has not met expectations, and adjust our efforts and resources to adapt to changing circumstances.

The performance management framework provides a mechanism through which those responsible for service delivery can be held to account. It also provides a process highlighting areas where performance has not moved on as expected, so that necessary assistance and support can be made available.

The framework for monitoring and review is essential in making judgements as to whether progress is being made against our stated targets and provides a basis for continued improvement. The Council has spent a considerable effort in developing an inclusive approach to engagement through an innovative community engagement strategy and network arrangements.

We will regularly review activities and services, to ensure that they are addressing the priorities identified within this plan. We will allocate resources to these priority areas, and monitor their effective use in the short and longer term.

We recognise that the solutions to some of these issues will take time to implement, and involve close working with our partners if we are to see real improvements. However, we do expect to see some benefits in the short term in all areas, and where we find progress is not being made then resources will be re-allocated. The Council is revising its performance management framework that will assist in the monitoring and review

process. This framework identifies the audiences involved in monitoring performance and the frequency and approach required to undertake it effectively.

This Plan highlights key objectives for each strategic theme and improvement targets by which success can be judged. The Council will report back the public each year on progress against its performance framework in its Annual Performance Plan.

Integration with Council Strategies and Plans

Delivering our priorities also means ensuring that all our strategies and plans - and the plans of other relevant organisations - dovetail together. The main strategies and plans which underpin our priorities include:

- Halton Sustainable Community Strategy 2011 - 2026
- Local Development Framework including the Core Strategy
- Integrated Equality & Diversity Policies and Corporate Equality Scheme.
- Town Centre Strategies.
- Local Transport Plan 3.
- Children & Young People's Plan.
- Sport Strategy.
- Joint Commissioning Strategy for Older People.
- Joint Commissioning Strategy for Carers
- Air Quality Action Plan.
- Climate Protection and Sustainable Energy Strategy.
- Municipal Waste Management Strategy.
- Hate Crime and Harassment Reduction Strategy
- Crime and Drugs Strategy.
- Housing Strategy.
- Corporate People's Plan and associated workforce strategies
- Community Engagement Strategy
- Child and Family Poverty Strategy
- Intergenerational Strategy
- Climate Change Strategy
- Volunteer Policy
- Digital Economy & Inclusion Strategy
- State of the Borough Report
- Joint Strategic Needs Assessment for Health
- Local Economic Assessment
- Waste Development Plan Document

The Corporate Plan has been prepared in the context of other key local plans and strategies. It does not stand alone in isolation; it is an overarching high level strategy that is supported by a multitude of detailed strategies that deal with specific topics and coordinate the delivery of services and projects. It has been drafted to conform to the Halton Sustainable Community Strategy and in this respect this Plan has been prepared to dovetail with other key Partnership plans and strategies. Figure 2 shows this relationship, the SCS forms a central core surrounded by the specific plans that allow the Council and its partners to deliver improvements that make a real difference to the people of Halton.

The Council's Corporate Plan is linked to this whole range of other plans, strategies and reports. These fit together as a system designed to achieve progress on Halton's key strategic priorities and to deliver improvement for local people.

Figure 2: Integration between the priorities of the Sustainable Community Strategy with the Corporate Plan and other key plans and strategies.



The Halton Sustainable Community Strategy has been prepared in the context of other key local plans and strategies. It does not stand alone in isolation; it is an overarching high level strategy that is supported by a multitude of detailed strategies that deal with specific topics and coordinate the delivery of services and projects

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director Policy and Resources

SUBJECT: Revision of the Performance Management Framework

WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

- 1.1 To update the Board concerning progress in the review of the Council's existing performance management and monitoring arrangements and provide the opportunity for the consideration of a future preferred approach.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION

That Executive Board approves the revised performance management framework as follows:

- (1) the development and use of a priority based performance report (as shown in the example) for each of the Council's six corporate priorities in 2012/13 for each Policy & Performance Board,**
- (2) the presentation of Directorate Overview Reports on a quarterly basis and progress against the Corporate Plan on a six monthly basis for 2012/13; and**
- (3) existing departmentally focused performance reports, developed for operational management purposes, continue to be made available to Members via the Council intranet, as advertised in the Members bulletin.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

Background and Context

- 3.1 On 6th September 2011 Corporate Services Policy and Performance Board received and endorsed a recommendation to Executive Board concerning the revision to existing performance reporting arrangements in light of emerging national and local circumstances as detailed below.
- 3.2 Changes to the National Performance Frameworks, such as the abolition of the National Indicator Set, the Local Area Agreement and Comprehensive Area Assessments, have afforded the Council some

degree of flexibility concerning the development of its future performance management arrangements.

- 3.3 Such changes reflect a transition away from authorities being performance managed by central government and toward being held to account at a local level through the transparent provision of accessible performance data.
- 3.4 Whilst such changes allow the development of a performance framework based upon local priorities it has to be remembered that national inspection framework for Children's Services and Adults Social Care by OFSTED and CQC respectively remain in place and therefore will need to be supported. Similarly, performance data will continue to be submitted as prescribed in the national single data set.
- 3.5 In light of such changes this Board endorsed a review of existing arrangements in order that in that the Council maintains a planning and performance framework that allows the identification and ongoing monitoring of key activities and performance measures that meet organisational needs. Performance management also continues to be important in our demonstration of value for money and outward accountability.

Progress to date

- 3.6 The consideration of future performance management and monitoring arrangements has run in tandem with the development of the revised Sustainable Community Strategy and Delivery Plan and Corporate Plan for the period 2011 – 2016.
- 3.7 These plans identify local priorities at a partnership and organisational level respectively and work to identify key performance measures and targets for each of the priority areas is now at an advanced stage. An update presentation will be delivered to Members on key objectives and key outcomes for the SCS and Corporate Plan on 6th September.
- 3.8 Also to aid the future target setting process a corporate template has been developed for all measures contained within the SCS Delivery Plan and Corporate Plan, for the period to 2016, to provide evidence based rationale. The process of identifying measures and targets to enable us to see progress in delivering the SCS and Corporate plan is an ongoing process over the term of this plan and will need fine tuning and refining as we go.
- 3.9 At the last meeting of this Board it was agreed that a review should be undertaken based upon an agreed set of principles based around the better management of performance information in terms of both strategic focus and volume.

3.10 As a result of this agreement a review of existing arrangements was undertaken which involved:-

- Capturing the views of Lead and Senior Officers and Elected Members in a number of forums.
- A review of adopted practice elsewhere e.g. in other neighbouring Councils, Primary Care trusts and best practice in Local Government and the Private sector.
- Consideration of the potential requirements and expectations of local authority self-regulation.
- The ongoing need to ensure that available resources are being deployed to best effective in addressing strategic priorities of the Council.

3.11 The primary findings of this review were that:-

- The adoption of a single departmentally based report was unlikely to meet the needs of the various audiences who receive, or may wish to receive, information reacting to Council performance e.g. Elected Members, Management Team, the local community.
- The amount of data contained within existing monitoring reports is extensive, with the inherent danger of information overload, and the relationships between strategic priorities, key actions and key impact and output measures are not readily apparent.
- The Directorate Overview Report as presented at Children and Young People PPB, at the request of the Chair of the PPB from quarter 2 of 2010/11, has been well received by Members to date. This report provides a more strategic summary of the key issues arising from performance in Quarter for the Directorate and aligned priority. At the same time access to the full departmental quarterly reports is available on the Members Information Bulletin via a link to an intranet page, to reduce the amount of paperwork sent out with the agendas and to allow Members access to the reports as soon as they have become available. This also has provided Members with an opportunity to give advance notice of any questions, points or requests for further information that will be raised to ensure the appropriate Officers are available at the PPB meeting. An example of the Directorate Overview Report for Quarter 4 of 2010/11 is attached for information – Appendix 1.
- Whilst the existing report format provides Elected Members with oversight as to what individual departments are doing / achieving the extent to which the Council is collectively making progress towards the corporate priority area is less clear.

- Additionally it is unlikely that the present format of performance reports would be suitable for the purposes of outward accountability and in informing public perceptions concerning the Council's achievements.

Future reporting arrangements

- 3.12 As a result of these findings it is suggested that the authority develops an approach to the future use of performance information that is, as far as possible, focussed primarily upon the needs of the receiving audience as opposed to being determined by the existing organisational structure.
- 3.13 This would mean constructing a priority based performance report that would allow Elected Members to monitor the activities that are being undertaken and the progress being made in achieving targets for each of the measures for each priority area contained within the Corporate Plan. This would continue to have a narrative element to detail key developments and emerging issues and actions taken to date against key objectives and performance measures and indicators. The report would be shorter and a more analytical document drawing out the key messages regarding performance across the priorities.
- 3.14 It is hoped that it will be possible to provide trend charts for the majority of the information within reports but this will be dependant upon the nature and availability of data. An example is shown for Children & Young peoples Services in Appendix 2. Relevant benchmark information will be provided where available for example CIPFA / Ofsted / APSE family groups.
- 3.15 It is therefore proposed that as an element of the business planning cycle for the coming financial year each of the PPB's would be supported in identifying those key business objectives and performance measures and targets from across departments that would support the delivery of their specific priority area, given that the PPB structure reflects the Council's six priorities.
- 3.16 In addition and where the availability of data permits, additional measures may be identified to provide some local context. Such information would provide the basis of a priority based report to be provided to Members through PPB agendas or separate Performance Sub Groups.
- 3.17 A worked example of this style of report, relating to the area of Employment, Learning and Skills Performance Sub Group is included as Appendix 3. It has to be remembered that this approach has been developed within the context of one priority area and some fine tuning may be required as individual priority based reports are developed.
- 3.18 It is proposed that the frequency of priority based reports for 2012/13 follows the existing quarterly timeframe although it should be remembered that for some impact measures the rate of change may only occur over longer timeframes.

- 3.19 Additionally information may be constrained by the frequency at which data becomes available. This is particularly relevant in relation to nationally sourced data with details emerging from various Government Department business plans and allied national benchmarking information.
- 3.20 Directorate Overview Reports could also be presented on a quarterly basis, and with progress against the Corporate Plan reported on a six monthly basis for 2012/13, to ensure that there are appropriate actions planned or in place to secure their achievement.
- 3.21 Existing departmentally focussed performance reports would still be constructed for operational management purposes and these would continue to be made available to Members via the Council's intranet site.
- 3.22 These reports and other operational reports on a ward basis e.g. to support "the Team around the family agenda" for example, would also be available to support future scrutiny arrangements of services by Members and Inspection regimes for Ofsted and Adult Social Care. It is also relevant to note that for the last announced inspection of Safeguarding and Looked after Children Services, which was assessed as "performing well", that under the inspection schedule for Performance Management and Quality assurance; the authority was judged by inspectors as 'Outstanding'.
- 3.23 Further consideration of content of local annual performance reports as and its presentation to public in an accessible format will be required, to ensure that the Council is effectively carrying out its commitment and meeting local needs in line with the 'transparency agenda' and further Government guidance and expectations.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

The Council's Performance Management Framework will continue to form a key part of the Council's policy framework.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

There are no direct costs associated with this approach.

In the present climate of severe financial constraints the ongoing monitoring of performance is critical to ensuring appropriate action is undertaken to enable the delivery of our priorities.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

- 6.1 Existing and future performance frameworks at both local and national level are linked to the delivery of the Councils' priorities.

6.2 Departmental service objectives and performance measures, both local and national are linked to the delivery of the Council's priorities. The introduction of a Directorate Overview report and the identification of business critical objectives/ milestones and performance indicators will further support organisational improvement.

6.3 Although some objectives link specifically to one priority area, the nature of the cross - cutting activities being reported, means that to a greater or lesser extent a contribution is made to one or more of the Council priorities.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 The proposed approach to the development of themed reports will allow the authority to both align its activities to the delivery of organisation and partnership priorities and provide appropriate information to all relevant stakeholders in accordance with the "transparency agenda".

7.2 A more strategic focus and evidence based approach to target setting would further support the tracking of progress over time and support effective decision making and the resources allocation process.

7.3 Performance Indicators are used by external agencies and the public at large in informing any judgement they make as to how the authority is currently performing.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

Minority and disadvantaged groups and geographic areas are involved with and taken into account in all stages of performance management, including planning, data collection and analysis, service delivery, policy and service development and the impact of policies.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place | Contact Officer |
|---|---|--|
| National Inspection Framework documents for Children's Services and Adult Social care | 2 nd Floor Municipal Buildings, Kingsway, Widnes | Hazel Coen DM Performance & Improvement |

APPENDIX 1 - Directorate Performance Overview Report**Directorate:** Children and Young People's**Reporting Period:** Quarter 4 – Period 1 January 2011 to 31 March 2011**1.0 Introduction**

This report provides an overview of issues and progress within the Directorate that have occurred during the Quarter 4. The way in which traffic light symbols have been used to reflect progress to date is explained within the Appendix.

2.0 Key Developments**2.1 Children and Families Recent Inspections**

Inglefield Short Break Unit for children with complex disabilities was inspected by Ofsted on 20 January 2011 and was judged to be outstanding across all areas. This is the first time one of our Children Homes has been rated as outstanding across all areas and it is now part of a small number across the country to achieve this.

Ofsted and the Care Quality Commission's Announced Inspection of Safeguarding and Looked After Children Services, took place from the 7 February to 18 February 2011. This rigorous three yearly inspection, focuses on the Council and its partners services; and judges how the whole system works together to safeguard children in Halton. The inspection judged the overall effectiveness of Safeguarding Services in Halton to be good with outstanding capacity to secure further improved outcomes for children and families, the overall effectiveness of services for Children in Care is also good, with outstanding capacity for further improvement; and leadership and management; ambition and prioritisation; along with performance management and partnership working for children and young people is outstanding in Halton. The outcome places Halton Council and its partners as one of the most consistently high performing areas in England.

Brookvale Children's Centre was inspected by Ofsted on 9 and 10 February. There are 5 key judgements within the inspection framework: overall effectiveness; capacity for sustained improvement; how good are outcomes; how good is provision; and how effective is leadership and management. In all these areas Brookvale was awarded a grade 2 - good. There are also 17 subcategories within areas and all but 3 of these were graded as good. A comprehensive action plan has been agreed to address the three areas, rated as satisfactory.

2.2 Upton All Saints Children Centre Widnes

To replace All Saints Upton CE Primary school, a new 210 place primary school has been built. This project has cost £3.5 million and incorporates a Children's Centre and pre-school. This facility provides significantly enhanced Children Centre provision, within the school building, thus improving access, and the capacity to deliver Children Centre activities. This is particularly important, given the levels of local need.

2.3 Inclusion

Contracts require developing between the Local Authority and the schools that will provide Specialist Resource Bases from September 2011. These resource bases provide specialist support within mainstream schools and have been developed in relation to the review of specialist provision. The contracts are in the process of being finalised and agreed between the parties concerned. The contracts will be annual and monitored through the local authority's quarterly monitoring processes.

2.4 Primary Education

Funding for external SIP's (School Improvement Partners) ceased as of 31 March. Funding has been identified to cover a final summer term visit for all schools.

The ECAW (Every Child a Writer) was launched in 15 primary schools. It is a targeted programme for years 3 and 4. Most recent data is showing an impact. As a result, a spin off project has been developed for other schools based on the same principles. The Literacy school improvement officer is also developing the role of subject leader in schools carrying out the project in order to share this practice beyond years 3 and 4. ECAR (Every Child a Reader) is continuing.

ECC (Every Child Counts) – most recent data is showing high impact. The Merseyside consortium school improvement officer, who leads this project, has identified that the 3 primary schools in Halton taking part have made more gains than any other schools in any other authorities.

School Improvement Officers continue to provide support for schools graded satisfactory or below. Despite the cessation of National Strategies funding at the end of March 2011, School Improvement Officers have been funded to provide school support until August 31st as a result of the high level of 'buyback' by schools.

2.5 Post 16 Performance

Post-16 performance at Riverside College continues to improve, the performance at the School Sixth Forms (St Chad's and St Peter and St Paul) remains satisfactory. The 14-19 Team are working with Sixth Form school leadership on action plans to improve performance. Provisional 2010 figures released by the Department for Education show Halton has made significant improvements in both Level 2 and Level 3 achievement by age 19. The indicators are a measure of the proportion of an academic year cohort that achieve general (Level 2) and further (Level 3) qualifications by the time the cohort is aged 19.

As a result of the budget reductions for 14-19 provision there has been a restructure of the 14-19 Development and 14-19 Entitlement Division. Appointments have been made to the new structure which will take effect from 1st May 2011.

3.0 Emerging Issues

3.1 Department for Education Review of Child Protection

In June 2010, the Secretary of State for Education, Michael Gove MP, asked Professor Eileen Munro to conduct an independent review of child protection in England. Her second report was published in February, with a final report expect in May. The final recommendations and the Government's response have the potential to make quite significant changes to the process and the mechanisms for safeguarding children and

young people. The report highlights the importance of; the CAF, early intervention and the value of locality based multi-agency teams; a “single” assessment process, i.e. ending the distinction between initial and core assessment; and relaxation of some of the Working Together standards. Several authorities have been given permission to pilot aspects of the latter, including Knowsley and Cumbria.

3.2 The NHS White Paper

The White Paper was published on 12 July 2010 and developed a number of proposals for the transformation of Health Services in the country. Key features include: the abolition of PCT's and Strategic Health Authorities, a consortium of GP's acting as commissioners of Public Health Care, and the creation of Health and Wellbeing Boards in all local authorities. This transformation will require the establishment of new partnerships and the need to ensure Children and Families services are effectively integrated into the new arrangements within the health economy.

3.3 14-19 Developments

Proposals have emerged to reconfigure the College provision in the Borough; a Skills and Enterprise centre in Runcorn, a high quality Sixth Form provision in Cronton and a vocational centre at Kingsway.

Halton 16-18 NEET has shown a slight increase since the annual figure was reported in January. The 2010/11 annual 16-18 NEET figure was 9.3%, with monthly NEET figures since then reporting 10.8% (March 2011).

3.4 Redesign of School Improvement Services

The redesign of School Improvement services continues to be a primary focus. There has been significant interest shown by a number of private providers who are keen to work in partnership, through a Joint Venture model, with Halton and Warrington. If successful we will be able to guarantee our schools the quality of support that they have been in receipt of historically and hopefully ensure a smooth transition of identified school improvement services post September.

The austerity measures are impacting upon staffing levels and we have to be increasingly selective in our allocation of resource to ensure that we maintain high standards in our schools and settings.

3.5 Capital Update

To replace All Saints Upton CE Primary school a new 210 place primary school has been built. This project has cost £3.5 million and includes a children's centre and pre-school. It open in January 2011 and external works are due to be complete in May 2011.

A project to remodel and improve Our Lady Mother of Saviour Catholic Primary has also been funded from Primary Capital at a cost of £1.1 million. The final phase of this project is scheduled for completion in April 2011.

3.6 Academy Conversion







Two Halton Schools have notified the authority that they intend to convert to Academy status. Palace Fields Primary originally indicated a conversion date of 1st May however revised this timeline at the end of April to 1st June. The Heath will also convert to Academy status on 1st June 2011. Charges for services provided by the Local Authority will be on a full cost recovery basis.

4.0 Performance Overview

The following information provides a synopsis of progress for both milestones and performance indicators across the key business areas that have been identified by each Directorate.

Transforming Environments/Capital Projects

Key Objectives / milestones

| Ref | Milestones | Q4 Progress |
|-------------|---|---|
| CFS5 (a) | Develop an integrated team around the family with a single point of access across a continuum of needs for all children and families in Runcorn/Widnes by March 2011. |  |
| OPS4 (a) | Develop a viable capital strategy in light of the Buildings Schools for the Future decisions in Halton by December 2010. |  |
| OPS4 (b) | To undertake a review of Primary School Provision in the Borough March 2011. |  |
| CFS5 (b) | Refocus Children's Centres to be more targeted and supporting the work of the team around the family, in accordance with the action plan by March 2011 |  |
| OPS4 (c) | Completion of All Saints Upton and Our Lady Mother of the Saviour Primary Capital projects by March 2011. |  |
| OPS3 | Deliver world-class youth facilities to meet the criteria of the MyPlace fund by March 2011. |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS5(a) and (b): The Integrated Working Support Team for Runcorn was operational for October 2010 and operating as a single a single point of access for services. For Widnes, this was complete in Quarter 3 however we continue to work to extend the range of agencies and services that are accessing the service including enhancing links with adult services.

OPS4(a): Capital funding has been allocated to the LA for 12 months. The outcome of the James Review has yet to be announced. The Capital Repairs Programme has been agreed by Executive Board for 2011/12.



OPS4(b): The level of Primary places has been reviewed for the following academic year. There are sufficient primary and secondary places for September 2011.

OPS4(c): All Saints Upton was completed January 2011. The final phase of Our Lady

Mother of the Saviour will be complete April 2011.

OPS3: CRMZ has been fully operational during quarter 4, with over 150 young people dropping in. The building is also used by a number of organisations and community groups delivering a range of structured programmes. Action for Children have now moved into CRMA with more organisations planned to move into the building in April 2011.

Key Performance Indicators





| Ref | Measure | 09/10 Actual | 10 / 11 Target | Q3 | Current Progress | Direction of travel |
|----------------|--|--------------|----------------|------|---|---|
| OPS LI4 | Percentage of milestones met in strategy | 100% | 100% | 100% |  |  |

Supporting Commentary

OPS LI4: Aiming for financial close for both schools (May 2011). Milestones amended in light of change to BSF.

Safeguarding

Key Objectives / milestones

| Ref | Milestones | Q4 Progress |
|----------|--|---|
| CFS2 | To ensure the effective operation of the Safeguarding Unit and develop a service to independently scrutinise and review Children in Need planning by September 2010, in accordance with the project plan for the Unit. |  |
| LAS5 | Further promote Safeguarding through early intervention and prevention delivered through the team around the family (locality Services) by March 2011, in accordance with the action plan. |  |
| OPS2 (a) | Continue to develop and re commence roll out of CareFirst6 in line with the project plan by April 2011. |  |
| OPS2 (b) | Continue roll out of replacement IT devices to CYPD staff by April 2011 in accordance with the project plan. |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS2: Independent reviews for Children in Need are now undertaken by the Independent reviewing managers. With a priority cohort of those cases open to Children's social care for more than 26 weeks. Ref. training continues to be provided to ensure all designated

persons are up to date.












LAS5: Team around the family divisional managers have visited every school to make aware of the support available from Team around the family. That they can seek advice with Integrated Working Support Team for any issue that affects their pupils that do not require a statutory Social Care response. We are now monitoring the uptake of this service and schools and Common Assessment Framework (CAF) support workers are working with many schools to support those putting together CAF plans to their pupils.

Progress is not as expected for:

OPS2 (a): A Strategic CYP CareFirst 6 Project Board has been introduced and the CF6 Project has been re-established. Fortnightly ICS Development meetings are taking place with Social Care IT Development Team, Children's Social Care Managers and Practitioners working together to agree how the ICS forms will be developed and implemented within CF6. There are currently 20 out of 25 ICS forms used by the Children In Need Teams under development. It is anticipated that CareFirst 6 will start to be rolled out into the Child in Need Teams by the end of May 2011.

OPS2 (b): The roll out of CareFirst 6 into the Children In Need Teams is on track to start 6th June 2011. The Project Team has not been in a position to be able to propose an anticipated roll out date of April 2011. The initial estimate of end May 2011 has slipped due to work on the Safeguarding Inspection and has been rescheduled to provide for maximum user support whilst maintaining day to day support for other system users.

Key Performance Indicators

| Ref | Measure | 09/10 Actual | 10 / 11 Target | Q4 | Current Progress | Direction of travel |
|---------|--|--------------|----------------|------------------------------|---|---|
| NI 059 | Percentage of Initial Assessments completed within 7 working days | 80% | 85% | 78.4 % (prov) |  |  |
| NI 060 | Percentage of Core Assessment completed within 35 working days | 93.7% | 92.5% | 88% (prov) |  |  |
| NI 063 | Stability of Children in Care: long term duration of placement (LAA) | 69.6% | 81.5% | 85% (prov) |  |  |
| LAS LI1 | Percentage of relevant staff having attended Safeguarding Training | N/A | 100% | N/A | Refer comment | N/A |
| OPS LI2 | Number of teams rolled out on CF6/ICS | N/A | 1 | 1 |  | N/A |
| NI 111 | First Time Entrants to Youth Justice System (LAA) | 149 | 234 | 104 (Quarter 3 Final Figure) |  |  |
| LAS LI9 | Percentage of schools inspected by OFSTED in the quarter achieving good or outstanding for safeguarding. | N/A | 100% | 100% |  |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

NI063: There has been a significant improvement in performance. Additional foster care capacity, the introduction of Support Assistants within the foster care service, training for foster carers and residential staff and careful matching processes contributed to positive performance.

OPS LI2: The Intensive Support Team (IST) are currently live on CF6. It is anticipated that the roll out in CIN teams will start June 2011 this is on track to achieve this.

LAS LI9: There were five schools and one nursery inspected during the quarter. All settings achieved good or better for safeguarding.

NI111: This NI is measured by monitoring the rate of first time entrants to the Youth Justice System. Figures are provisional and sourced from the YOT Case Management System, Careworks. The official outturn will be released by the Ministry of Justice in October 2011 and is taken from the Police National Computer (PNC). In Halton during Q3 there have been 22 new entrants, making a cumulative total of 104 so far this year. The baseline (2007/08) was 249. This shows a significant reduction so far of 58.2% against a target of 6%, with only one quarter remaining. Quarter 4 data will not be available until mid May 2011.

LAS L1: Quarter 4 not available therefore Quarter 3 has been used as a proxy. Due to staff absence an accurate record of all training delivered can not be provided for this quarter. However refresher training was delivered on 30th March 2011.






Progress is not as expected for:

NI059: Completion of Initial assessments within 7 days remains challenging especially in light of an increased rate of referrals for 2010-11 compared with the previous year. The completion of IA's is closely monitored by the Divisional Manager and systems reviewed. The roll out of laptops has been completed to the Child in Need teams. The implementation of CareFirst6 will significantly reduce the burden of maintaining multiple systems. It must be noted that whilst the national indicator measures performance in 7 working days, Working Together guidance and OFSTED measure performance on 10 working days. Provisional data indicates performance on 10 working days currently at 88.3% at the end of Quarter 4.

NI60: This data is will be subject to final quality assurance processes and is likely to increase and be closer to target. It is also likely that there will be an increase in the actual number of Core Assessments completed this year (as there was last year), which will also impact on performance. This is a positive increase as it indicates that an increasing number of referrals are at the correct of level of need for children's social care intervention.

Early Intervention

Key Objectives / milestones

| Ref | Milestones | Q4 Progress |
|----------|--|---|
| CFS1 | Review the impact of the team around the family (locality working) on demand for children's social care services by March 2011. |  |
| CFS5 (a) | Implement recommendations from the CAF Review by March 2011. |  |
| OPS2 | Extend and deliver flexibly the free early years entitlement to 2, 3 and 4 year olds as per the Child Care Act 2006 by March 2011, in accordance with the action plan. |  |
| OPS3 (a) | Improve young people's sexual health by reducing teenage conception through targeted services in the youth service by March 2011, as outlined in the action plan. |  |
| OPS3 (b) | Improve young people's employability and reduce NEET through service delivery improvement by March 2011. |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS1: Monitoring systems have been established to track cases where a CAF, supported by the Integrated Working Support Team (IWST), has progressed to Social Care Services. Social Care cases progressing down the level of need to CAF level are also being monitored. Pathways to access Team Around the Family (TAF) have been agreed, as too have pathways between TAF and Social Care services. Processes are beginning to embed and monitoring of consultations is becoming more effective. During this quarter, 9 cases open to IWST (Runcorn and Widnes) needed Social Care intervention: 4 had completed CAFs and 4 had been initiated. There is growing evidence of agencies contacting IWST for support and advice and an increasing number of active CAFs, all of which should have a positive impact on the demand for Social Care services.

CFS5 (a): The development of the Team around the Family model of early intervention continues to address all of the recommendations of the CAF review.







OPS2: This is now complete and in place to deliver flexibly free early years entitlement to the appropriate 2, 3 and 4 years olds.

OPS3(b): A Connexions Personal Advisor working within the Teenage Pregnancy Team has successfully linked young parents back into work, education and employment. The recent Care to Learn data has highlighted Halton as being the 2nd best performing authority across England for the engagement of Teen parents onto the programme. The proportion of teen parents engaged in suitable education, training or employment has increased from 31.8% in Quarter 3 2009 to 35.6% in Quarter 3 2010.

Progress is not as expected for:

OPS3 (a): A range of health services for young people, including sexual health, have been developed and these have been made more accessible. The implementation of six days a week provision across Runcorn has been delayed due to the unavailability of suitable premises. The VRMZ outreach bus is now fully operational and is engaging high numbers of young people. The service is providing information, advice and guidance to young people on positive sexual health across Halton at weekends and other identified times. The actual number of teenage conceptions increased slightly in 2009 by comparison to 2008. There is still much more to be done. We need to maintain efforts to reduce teenage pregnancy rates, making a vital contribution to Halton's strategy to reduce child poverty and health inequalities.

Key Performance Indicators

| Ref | Measure | 09/10 Actual | 10 / 11 Target | Q4 | Current Progress | Direction of travel |
|---------|---|---|--|--|---|---|
| CFS L18 | Number of CAF's with plans and reviewed in a timely manner | N/A | Baseline established | 127 (prov) | N/A | N/A |
| NI 053 | Increase the prevalence of breastfeeding at 6-8 weeks from birth (LAA) | 19.3% | 23% | a) 18.38% |  |  |
| NI 056 | Reduce obesity among primary school age children in Year 6 (LAA) | 22.2% (2008/9) | 21.3% | 21.6% (2009/10) |  |  |
| NI 116 | Children in poverty (proxy indicator: narrow gap between North West average and Halton for Percentage of families in receipt of out of work benefits) (LAA) <i>Annual indicator next update Jan 2011</i> | 26.6% | TBA | 27% (2009/10 data) | Refer Comment | N/A |
| NI 112 | Under 18 conception rate (per thousand of the population) | 52.6 per 1000 (Rolling Qtrly Average Rate Dec 2008) | 21.3 per 1000 (Rolling Qtrly average.) -55% (Change from 1998) | 58.9 Per 1000 (Rolling Qtrly average.) +24% (Change from 1998) |  |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS L18: 127 live CAF's on the database. In this quarter there were 13 new CAF Assessments, 72 reviews and 25 new action plans.

NI116: Issues around the poverty indicator have prevented the indicator from being reported previously. Government Office North West were using data for the proportion of families claiming out of work benefits where there are children as a proxy measure for children in poverty. The target adopted for the indicator is to reduce the gap between the Halton figure and the North West average from 5.7% in 2007 to 4.6%. Halton are on

course to meet this target with the latest data provided indicating the gap is currently 4.8%.

Progress is not as expected for:







NI053: Q3 has been updated and used as a proxy for Q4 which will not be available until the end of April 2011.

NI056: Halton reduced its Year 6 obesity rate in 2009/10 and it is expected this trend will continue as we move forward into the 2010/11 year. This is in contrast to the National and regional picture where obesity rates have increased. A comprehensive overweight and obesity programme is being rolled out across all primary schools. In addition we have the Passport for Health programme which works around nutrition, exercise and self esteem and leads to an award for older children. The teenage weight management programme is now embedded and early results are encouraging with 62% of teenagers reducing their BMI, 75% increasing their levels of physical activity and 100% eating more healthily.

NI112: Whilst performance published by ONS shows an increase in Halton's teenage conception rate at December 2009 as against the 2008 level, the number of conceptions has reduced in the last quarter - December 2009.

Standards

Key Objectives / milestones

| Ref | Milestones | Q4 Progress |
|----------|--|---|
| CSF5 | Ensure the delivery of the full core offer in Children's Centres and Extended Services by October 2010 in accordance with the action plan. |  |
| LAS1 (a) | Demonstrate improved performance at Early Years Foundation Stage and Primary attainment by quality assurance, ECER audits and the implementation of an Early Years Outcome Duty action plan by March 2011. |  |
| LAS1 (b) | Review and evaluate systems for managing and supporting settings and schools at risk of local authority categorisation and reduce the number of schools in Ofsted categories by March 2011. |  |
| LAS1 (c) | Work with schools to develop action plans to narrow the gap for young people to attain 5 A*-C GCSE including English and Maths by November 2010. |  |
| LAS2 | The Learning and Achievement service to evaluate their service providing a service proportionate to need, whilst supporting the most vulnerable children to achieve the best outcomes by March 2011. |  |
| LAS3 | Work with settings to encourage an increase in the numbers of employment, education or training by March 2011 in accordance with the action plan. |  |

Supporting Commentary

All key milestones met for this theme as regards:

CSF5: Full core offer was achieved by July 2010

LAS1(a): In 2010 there was an improvement in the percentage of pupils gaining 78+ points or more 73.8% compared to 72.1% in 2009. The score for the lowest 20% improved to 60.7% from 59.7% and the % gap decreased to 29.4%. 26 settings have undertaken Early Childhood Environmental Rating Scale and Infant and Toddler Environmental Rating Scale (ECER's/ITER's) audits to date. EYFSP outcomes for 2011 will be reported post July.







LAS1(b): Halton's Strategy for Support and Intervention with Schools Causing Concern is due to be revised in line with the White Paper. The LA continues to use its powers of intervention, including the issuing of warning notices, and also undertakes school reviews as necessary. The Cross Service Monitoring Group (CSMG) provides a 'team around the school' approach and Single School Updates are held to support the planning of collaborative support for schools most in need. The outcome of SIP visits is currently fundamental to this process. There is currently 1 primary school in special measures. The most recent Ofsted monitoring report was very positive and it is anticipated that the school will come out of measures Summer 2011.


















LAS1(c) 50% of pupils across the Authority attained this benchmark in 2010 – Halton's highest performance. This led to a 5 point rise on 2009 attainment. Free school meal pupils attainment has risen from 24% in 2009 to 30% in 2010. FSM attainment gap has narrowed to 26.4 points, down from 27.3 in 2009.

LAS2: We are within the second phase of supporting Sts Peter and Paul in developing their approach to vulnerable groups and have also been working with St Chad's this term, with support from National Strategies colleagues. A data mapping exercise has been undertaken with regard to vulnerable pupil data within the LA – this will now be reviewed and analysed with a view to ensuring that the data collected informs decision making and service delivery.

LAS3: The NEET Strategy Group continues to implement collaborative initiatives to increase the number of young people in employment, education or training. A monthly case conferencing meeting between providers and Connexions attempts to match hard to reach young people with learning opportunities. A similar group exists for NEET learners with specific vulnerable issues and personal barriers to learning.

Key Performance Indicators

| Ref | Measure | 09/10 Actual | 10 / 11 Target | Q4 | Current Progress | Direction of travel |
|---------|--|--------------|----------------|-----------|---|---|
| CFS LI7 | Number of disabled children receiving short breaks | 333 | 360 | 402 (Dec) |  |  |
| NI 148 | Percentage of Care Leavers in Employment, Education or Training | 55.6% | 72.5% | 66.7% |  |  |
| LAS LI3 | Percentage of Early Years settings inspected by OFSTED in the quarter graded good or outstanding | 63% | 75% | 64% |  |  |

| | | | | | | |
|---------|---|--|--------------|-------------------------------|---|---|
| LAS LI4 | Percentage of settings achieving enhanced ICAN accreditation | 14% | 20% | 37.5% |  |  |
| LAS LI5 | Percentage of schools involved in the Communication Language & Literacy Project | 29% | 90% | 100% |  |  |
| LAS LI7 | Number of Early Childhood Environmental Rating Scales (ECERS) audits completed of settings | N/A | 15 | 31 |  | N/A |
| NI 82 | Inequality gap in the achievement of level 2 qualification by age 19 (Annual indicator) Published March 2011 | 24% (2008/09) | 51% | 22% (2009/10) |  |  |
| NI 081 | Inequality gap in the achievement of level 3 qualification by age 19 (Annual indicator) Published March 2011 | 18% (2008/9) | 16% | 21% (2009/10) |  |  |
| CYP1 | Reduce the 13% gap in attainment of 5 A*-C GCSEs (incl. English and Maths) by 25% between those living in the worst 10% LSOA nationally and the Halton average in the three years to 2011 (Annual indicator) Published March 2011 | 13.1% gap (Academic Year 2008/9) | 9.75% gap | 10% |  |  |
| NI 117 | Percentage of 16-18 year olds not in education, employment or training (proxy indicator: narrow gap between North West average and Halton for Percentage of families in receipt of out of work benefits) (LAA) Expected February 22 nd 2011 | 10.3% | 7.7% | 9.3% (Nov 2010 – Jan 2011) |  |  |
| NI 079 | Achievement of a level 2 qualification by the age of 19 | 66.8% | 67% | 74.8% (2009/10) |  |  |
| NI 080 | Achievement of a Level 3 qualification by the age of 19 (Annual indicator) Published March 2011 | 33.7% | 42.2% | 42.3% (2009/10) |  |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS LI7: Figures last calculated end of December. Quarter 4 information available at end of April 2011.

LAS LI4: 21 accreditations have been awarded since the start of the project, 15 of these are at 'Supporting Communication Level'. 6 of these are at 'Enhancing Communication Level'.

LAS LI5: 15 schools are now submitting data (29%). CLLD is now universal and a further 6 schools have expressed an interest in having a CLLD lead.

LAS LI7: 31 settings audited in total = 41 ITTERS, 44 ECERS R & ECERS E

NI079: The increase in 2009/10 recorded figure represents a 7.6% increase upon the 2009 figure and is the largest annual local authority increase nationally for this indicator. Further growth in this indicator is forecast next year with the 78% of the 2011 cohort having already secured a Level 2 qualification.

NI080: This 8.4% increase upon the 2009 recorded figure for this indicator represents the second largest annual local authority increase. Further growth in this indicator is forecast with large proportion of the 2011 cohort having already secured a Level 3 qualification

NI082: Annual increases in Level 2 achievement by age 19 of both FSM and non-FSM cohorts has led to a 2% reduction in the inequality gap, which currently stands at 22%.

Progress is not as expected for:

NI148: This figure shows a 17% increase on the previous year. Despite efforts to engage with them, 3 care leavers have remained persistently NEET, 1 due to health issues, 1 due to accommodation and custody issues and 1 by choice.




NI117: Work undertaken through the 14-19 Strategic Partnership such as a case-conferencing approach to NEET (where individual NEET learners are matched to possible vacancies) as well as more flexible start dates for provision within the borough has had a positive impact within this cohort. Improved tracking of learners through the September Guarantee group has helped with the reduction. Within the NEET cohort priority areas for 2011 are vulnerable groups and those age 18+. Latest monthly figures show a slight increase in 16-18 NEET.







LAS LI3: Group care (day nurseries, out of school care and pre-schools) good and better 70%. Childminders good and better 58%

NI081: 25% of pupils aged 19 in 2010 that were eligible for Free School Meals when in Year 11 achieved a Level 3 qualification. This is a 5% increase on the 2009 cohort. 46% of pupils aged 19 in 2010 that were not eligible for Free School Meals when in Year 11 achieved a Level 3 qualification. This is an 8% increase on the 2009 cohort. A higher percentage increase in the non-FSM cohort has led to a widening of the inequality gap.

Managing Resources Effectively

Key Objectives / milestones

| Ref | Milestones | Q4 Progress |
|------|---|--|
| CFS3 | Implement and ensure the effectiveness of Children in Care Strategy in line with the invest to save and efficiencies agenda by March 2011 covering the following areas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • implementation of increased level of payments to Foster Carers by September 2010 • Review current residential provision by September 2010. |   |
| CFS4 | To improve services to care leavers through : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recruitment to 7 Apprenticeships within Halton Borough |  |

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| | <p>Council by March 2011.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased employment opportunities within Halton BC to 3 by March 2011. Increase the semi independent accommodation provision for care leavers by 4 by March 2011. |   |
| LAS1 | To develop a proposal for School Improvement Services across the Learn Together Partnership November 2010 with the objective of creating and implementing a shared or trading service by March 2011. |  |
| LAS3 | Commission a range of quality post-16 provision (including SEN) in Halton to reduce the number of young people accessing provision outside the borough by March 2011. |  |
| OPS1 (a) | Develop a virtual joint commissioning unit with the PCT by December 2010. |  |
| OPS1 (b) | To determine the total resources available across the Children's Trust and develop a jointly agreed financial strategy for the Children's Trust in accordance with Total place March 2011. |  |

Supporting Commentary

Progress has been made towards this theme, and most notably positive progress has been made in regards to:

CFS3: The increased level of payment to foster carers was implemented 1st September 2010. Residential provision has been reviewed and a redesign of services was concluded in March 2011 with the closure of a children's home and the development of supported accommodation for care leavers.

CFS4: 7 apprenticeships were recruited to in the year although only 3 remained in place as of 31st March 2011. A new apprenticeship scheme has been devised for the coming year which will offer opportunities to 4 young people. Semi independent accommodation provision has been increased by 4 units and a further 5 have been commissioned

LAS1: We are working in partnership with Warrington BC to develop a Traded Service for school improvement post September 2011. This will involve working with a private sector provider. The opportunity to share a range of services is being explored across the wider LTP. We intend to retain the statutory functions around schools causing concern and associated intervention so there is a need to guarantee some level of central support.

OPS1(a): Joint Commissioning meetings have been set for the next twelve months and work has now started to develop process and performance systems. A three day training programme was delivered by one PCT and one Local Authority Commissioner from within the team following their attendance at a Train the Trainers course. Action plans have now been developed to address the priorities that emerged from the training. Colleagues from St Helen's Local Authority also attended the 3 training days.

OPS1(b): Work is continuing to identify the funding available across the Children's Trust. Joint commissioning priorities have been agreed with the PCT. In addition, the opportunity to pool further resources is being explored.

Progress is more uncertain for:

LAS3: Evidence shows improvement to post-16 FE provision as per OFSTED inspection of Riverside College. HBC 14-19 team are working with Sixth Forms to raise standards. Provisional 2010 figures released by the DfE show Halton has made significant improvements in both Level 2 and Level 3 achievement by age 19.

CFS4: Only 1 care leaver had employment with the Council. A revised Care Leaver Employment Policy is now in place giving some preference to care leavers

Key Performance Indicators

| Ref | Measure | 09/10 Actual | 10 / 11 Target | Q4 | Current Progress | Direction of travel |
|------------|---|-----------------|-------------------|----|---------------------|------------------------|
| OPS LI1 | Value of services commissioned using Joint planning and commissioning framework | £6.7m | £7.5m | | Refer Comment | N/A |

Supporting Commentary




OPS LI1: Awaiting Year End Accounts to be finalised.

5.0 Financial Statement

The Directorate's quarter 4 financial statements will be prepared once the Council's year-end accounts have been finalised and will then be made available via the intranet by 30 June.




Appendix- Explanation for Use of Symbols

Symbols are used in the following manner:

| <u>Progress</u> | | <u>Objective</u> | <u>Performance Indicator</u> |
|------------------------|---|--|---|
| Green |  | Indicates that the <u>objective is on course to be achieved</u> within the appropriate timeframe. | <i>Indicates that the annual target <u>is on course to be achieved</u>.</i> |
| Amber |  | Indicates that it is <u>uncertain or too early to say at this stage</u> , whether the milestone/objective will be achieved within the appropriate timeframe. | <i>Indicates that it is <u>uncertain or too early to say at this stage</u> whether the annual target is on course to be achieved.</i> |
| Red |  | Indicates that it is <u>highly likely or certain</u> that the objective will not be achieved within the appropriate timeframe. | <i>Indicates that the target <u>will not be achieved</u> unless there is an intervention or remedial action taken.</i> |

Direction of Travel Indicator

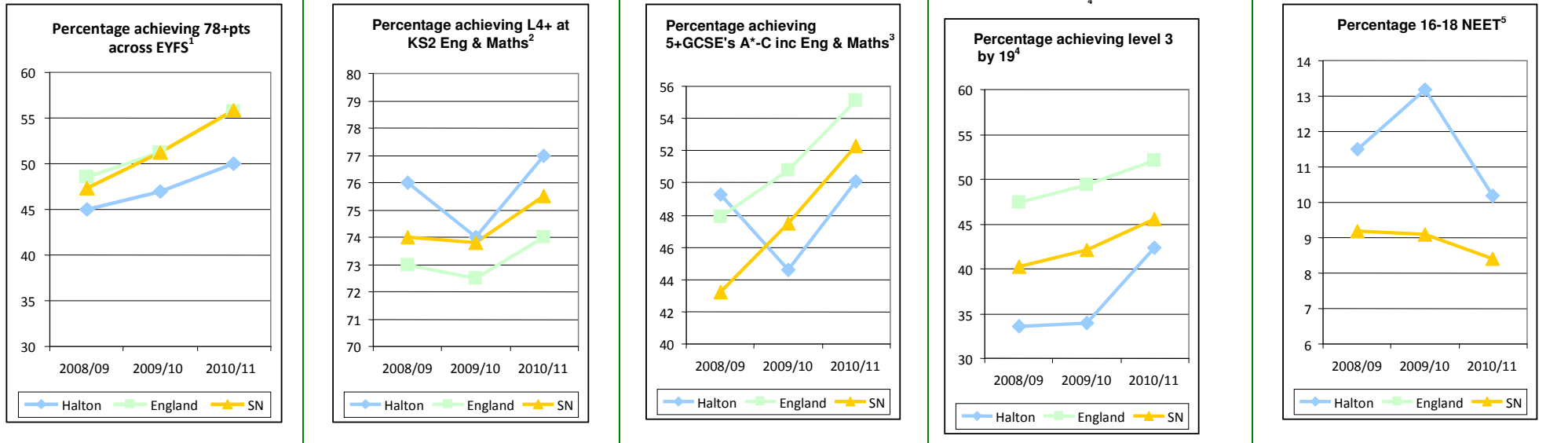
Where possible performance measures will also identify a direction of travel using the following convention

| | | |
|--------------|---|---|
| Green |  | <i>Indicates that performance is better <u>as compared to the same period last year</u>.</i> |
| Amber |  | <i>Indicates that performance is the same <u>as compared to the same period last year</u>.</i> |
| Red |  | <i>Indicates that performance is worse <u>as compared to the same period last year</u>.</i> |
| N/A | | <i>Indicates that the measure cannot be compared to the same period last year.</i> |

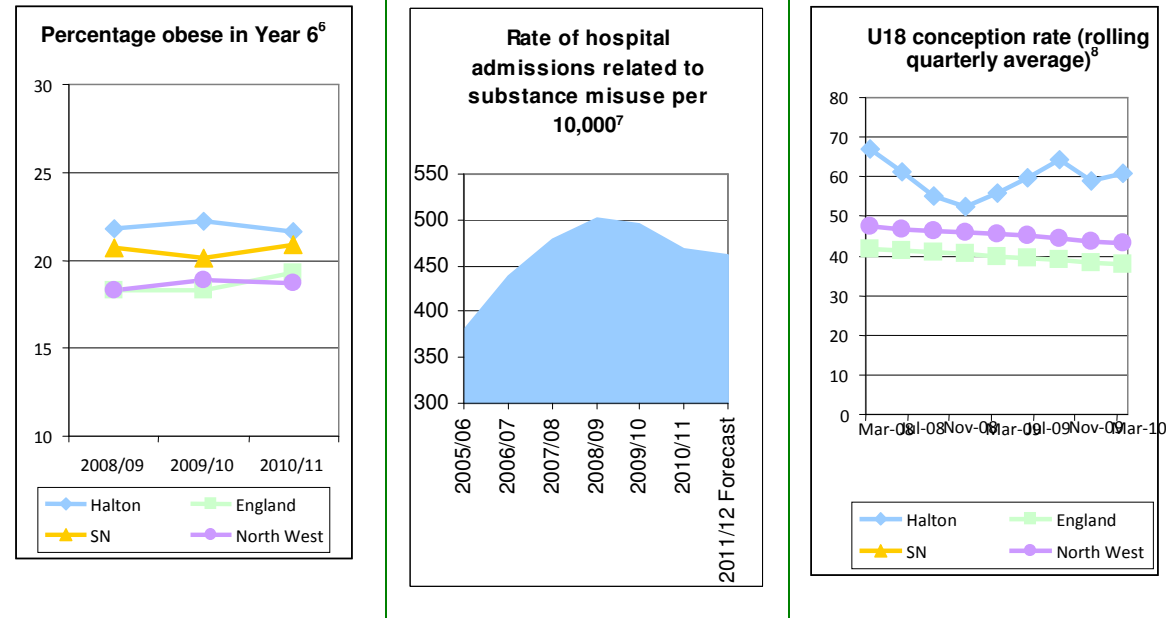
Sustainable Community Strategy Indicators

The Children and Young People of Halton ...

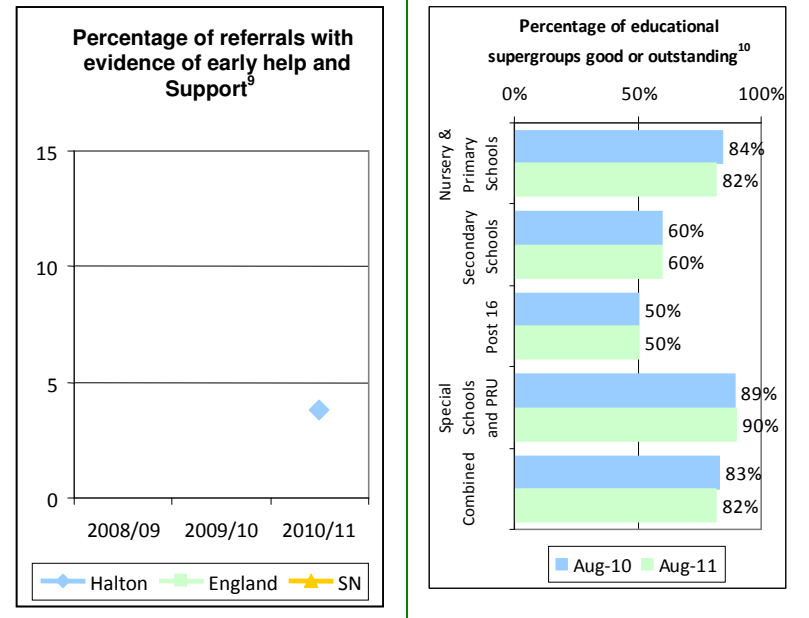
Are successful when they leave school



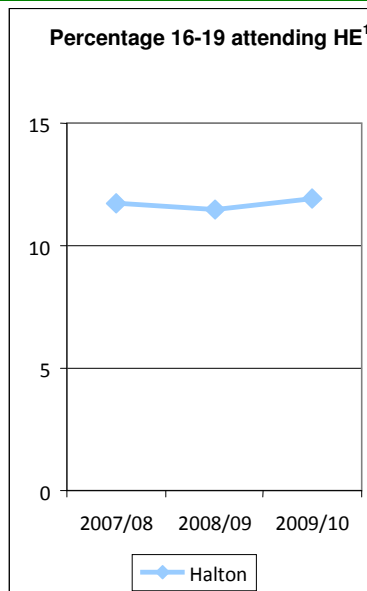
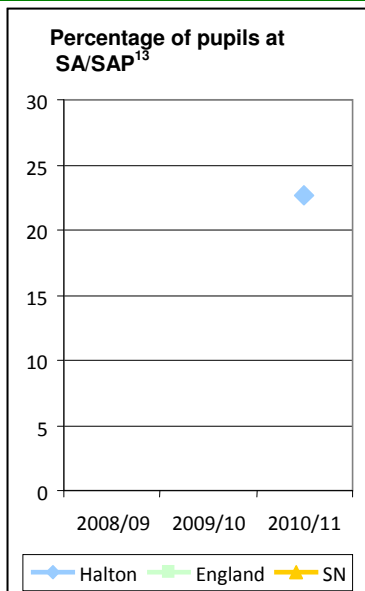
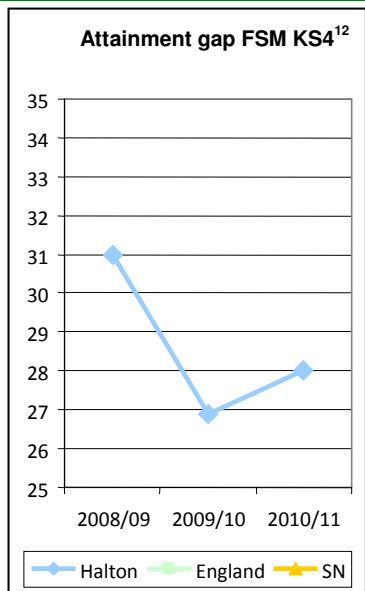
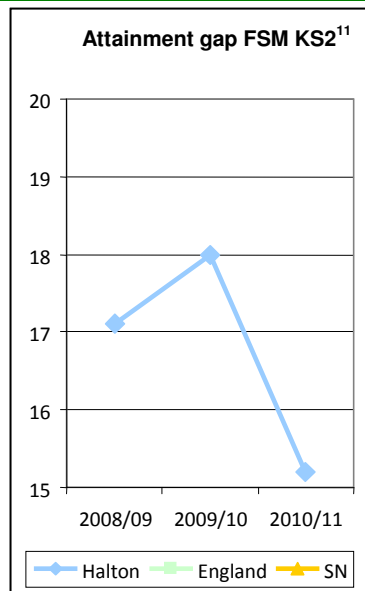
Are emotionally, physically and sexually healthy



Will feel safe at home, in school and in their communities



Do well wherever they live and whatever their needs



Percentage of children with Statements of Special Educational Needs or receiving enhanced provision achieving two levels progress¹⁵ - Measuring their progress is now a requirement of the resource bases and first measurement will commence in 2011/12. Targets will then be set from the baseline position provided from this measurement.

Increase the percentage of children in care achieving their expected outcomes at Key Stage 2 and Key Stage 4¹⁶ - This is a new local measure and therefore 2011/12 data will be the baseline year from which targets can be set in future.

Performance Summary:

Halton measures the performance of the priority outcomes using the indicators outlined above. Progress is shown, where possible, with 5 years information to measure trend, and comparator information where applicable. Targets are aligned to a direction of travel required for the indicators.

Then a summary of what the performance shows and summary of key actions being taken against the areas where performance is not meeting targets etc.

Performance & Improvement

¹ Previously NI072,
² Previously NI073,
³ Previously NI075,
⁴ Local Indicator.
⁵ Previously NI117, no England comparator data
⁶ Previously NI056
⁷ Local Indicator
⁸ Based on NI112, however this is rate not percentage change from baseline
⁹ Local Indicator, no comparator information
¹⁰ Local Indicator based on Children's Services Assessment, Performance Profile from Ofsted
 No comparators available

¹¹ Previous NI102 (a), no comparator information available
¹² Previous NI102 (a), no comparator information available
¹³ Local Indicator, no comparator information available
¹⁴ Local Indicator, no comparator information available
¹⁵ Local Indicator, baseline position to be established 2011-12
¹⁶ Local Indicator, no comparator information available

Performance & Improvement

- ¹ Previously NI072,
- ² Previously NI073,
- ³ Previously NI075,
- ⁴ Local Indicator.
- ⁵ Previously NI117, no England comparator data
- ⁶ Previously NI056
- ⁷ Local Indicator
- ⁸ Based on NI112, however this is rate not percentage change from baseline
- ⁹ Local Indicator, no comparator information
- ¹⁰ Local Indicator based on Children's Services Assessment, Performance Profile from Ofsted
No comparators available

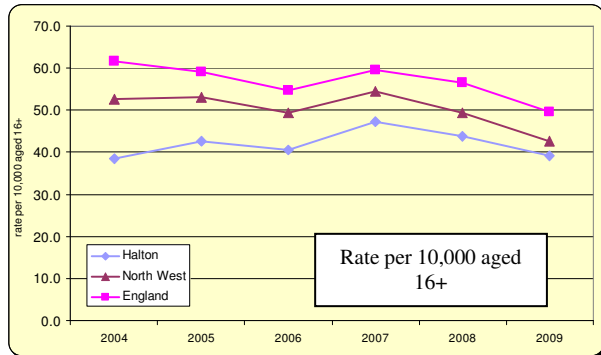
- ¹¹ Previous NI102 (a), no comparator information available
- ¹² Previous NI102 (a), no comparator information available
- ¹³ Local Indicator, no comparator information available
- ¹⁴ Local Indicator, no comparator information available
- ¹⁵ Local Indicator, baseline position to be established 2011-12
- ¹⁶ Local Indicator, no comparator information available



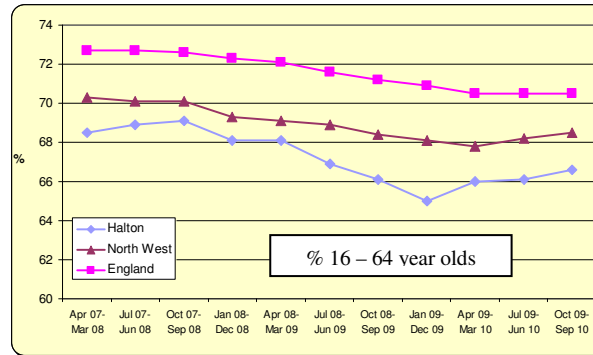
| Outcome: | Children and Young People of Halton are successful when they leave school | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--------|---------|----|---------|----|----|----|---------|----|------|------|---------|----|----|------|------------------------------|
| Indicator: | Increase the percentage of children attaining level 4 or above in English and Maths at Key Stage 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p style="text-align: center;">Percentage achieving L4+ at KS2 Eng & Maths</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <caption>Data for Percentage achieving L4+ at KS2 Eng & Maths</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Year</th> <th>Halton</th> <th>England</th> <th>SN</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2008/09</td> <td>76</td> <td>73</td> <td>74</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2009/10</td> <td>74</td> <td>72.5</td> <td>73.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2010/11</td> <td>77</td> <td>74</td> <td>75.5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Year | Halton | England | SN | 2008/09 | 76 | 73 | 74 | 2009/10 | 74 | 72.5 | 73.5 | 2010/11 | 77 | 74 | 75.5 | Indicator definition: |
| | Year | Halton | England | SN | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2008/09 | 76 | 73 | 74 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2009/10 | 74 | 72.5 | 73.5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2010/11 | 77 | 74 | 75.5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Percentage of all children who attain at least level 4 or above in English and Maths at Key Stage 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Data Summary: | Data is taken from KeyPas performance system and is available on an annual basis. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Performance Summary: | Trend for performance has been positive, with a slight dip in performance in 2009. Halton has consistently higher performance than statistical neighbours since 2008. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Key activities taken or planned to improve performance: | To be completed by the accountable officer. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Key Contextual Measures

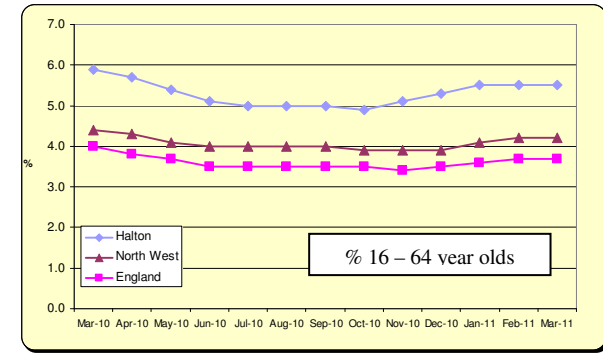
VAT business registrations



Employment Rate



JobSeekers Allowance Claimant Rate



Key developments / emerging issues

The coalition government continue to roll out the initiatives contained within the White Paper 'Local Growth; Realising Every Places Potential with the intention that support for the business sector will increasingly migrate from the public to the private sector. For example the abolition of the Northwest Development Agency and the demise of Business Link will mean that a number of programmes typically accessed by Halton companies will cease.

PA Consulting, a private sector enterprise, have recently been awarded the contract to deliver the United Kingdom Trade and Investment service and the government have announced a competitive bidding process to appoint a single contractor to deliver 'Business Coaching for Growth' to support existing and new high-growth Small and Medium Enterprises.

The North West Development funding for the Widnes Waterfront has now come to an end and phase I of the venture fields project is due to be handed over to tenants by the end of September 2011. the opening of Widnes Bowl, Reel Cinemas and Frankie & Benny's is due in October with the Ice Rink likely to open in 2012.

A regeneration programme manager has been seconded to the Construction Halton project from April 2011 which will provide a sound link between regeneration activity, the Council's employment, learning and skills teams and developers contractors.

With the whole Investor Development team being issued redundancy notices The Mersey Partnership have recalled the secondees

delivering the project in Halton. This post has for some years been an integral part of the Business Development Team providing support to a significant number of local businesses and decisions will now have to be made concerning the future level of support that can be offered.

The restructure of Halton people into Jobs was completed by the end of quarter 4 prior to new reporting arrangements coming into play in the new financial year.

3.0 Progress during the period

Key Milestones

| Ref | Milestone | Progress |
|-------|--|----------|
| EEB1 | Develop science, technology and advanced manufacturing (STAM) sectoral action plan | ✓ |
| | Deliver Business Improvement District 3 year action plan | ✓ |
| EEB 2 | Launch expanded enterprise academy by September 2010 | ✓ |
| | Deliver enterprise week programme by November 2010 | ✓ |
| | Deliver expanded start up programme by March 2011 | ✓ |

Summary of Planned and Emergent Activities including exception reports.

The multi-agency STAM group continues to meet on a monthly basis to advance the sector and have developed a number of initiatives. Given the coalition governments significant changes to the governance of the sector the development of a plan will now necessitate the involvement of both the new Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus Joint Venture and other public and private sector agencies.

All elements of the BID Year 3 Action Plan are on programme and on budget.

Halton Chamber of Commerce and Enterprise are delivering the expanded Enterprise Academy and Aftercare Programme. Halton education Business Partnership and Young Enterprise have jointly appointed a Schools Enterprise Officer who is leading the Next Generation Entrepreneurs schools programme and a successful Enterprise week programme was delivered a planned in November 2010.

The Division has now secured a further £60K to continue to deliver an expanded start up programme in Halton. A Service Level











Agreement is now in place for 2011 – 12 for Enterprising Halton to provide 1 to 1 start up advice, pre start up training, 'kick start' courses for individuals wanting to become self-employed or start up their own business. These services will operate alongside the new Enterprise Allowance Scheme (DWP) and the Intensive Start Up Programme.

Exception reports

Unfortunately the number of Council apprentices has not increased as was planned and work is being done with Riverside College and the Corporate Training Centre to covert some existing staff onto apprenticeships. Additionally the Construction Investors Handbook has not yet been produced (**so what and why?**).

Some delay has occurred in relation to Widnes Waterfront and St Michaels golf course due to funding issues.

Key internal indicators

| Ref | Measure | Q4 09-10 | 2010 – 11 Target | 2010 - 2011 | | | | Progre ss | Travel |
|-------------|---|-------------|---------------------|-------------|----|----|--------------|---|---|
| | | | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | | |
| EEB LI 1 | Number of local people into jobs | 374 | 300 | - | - | - | 623 |  |  |
| NI 153 | Worklessness within the most deprived LSOA's | 29.6% | 33.5 | - | - | - | 32.8 |  |  |
| LI 5 | Number of inward investment enquiries | 119 | 200 | - | - | - | 162 |  |  |
| LI 6 | Inward investment enquiry conversion rate | 13.4 | 11 | - | - | - | 14.8% |  |  |
| EEB LI 9 | New business start ups and self employed starts | 154 | 110 | - | - | - | 148 |  |  |

Summary of Performance measures and Targets including exception reports

A significant number of local people have been assisted into employment during the year although worklessness within the most deprived LSOA's has increased since last year. Unfortunately the number of disabled people into permitted work (29) has fallen significantly short of annual target (75) and this situation has not been helped by the current economic climate.

As would be expected given the economic climate the number of business inward investment enquiries has declined since last year although the conversion rate remains impressively high and shows an improvement upon that achieved in 2009 – 10. Additionally although the number of start ups and self employed starts failed to achieve annual target levels remain relatively constant.

In the actual version of the report we would seek to develop a commentary that encapsulates the main messages in relation for example to the nature of self-employment in Halton, what drew business to the borough etc.

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22nd September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director Policy and Resources

SUBJECT: Merseyside and Halton Joint Waste Development Plan Document – Publication and Submission Stages

WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 The Council is producing a Merseyside and Halton Joint Waste Development Plan Document (referred to in this report as the Waste DPD) for the Merseyside sub-region. The report's purpose is twofold:
- 1.2 Firstly, to report back the results of public consultation on the Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 (New Sites) Report that was undertaken between May and June 2011. Detailed feedback is given in Appendix 1.
- 1.3 Secondly, to seek approval to proceed to Publication and Submission stages. The Publication version of the Waste DPD will undergo a final six week consultation at the end of 2011. The Publication Document forming the basis of the consultation is contained in Appendix 2. Submission of the Waste DPD to the Secretary of State follows shortly after the consultation has closed on the Publication Document and any representations received have been considered and collated by the Waste DPD Team. The final steps to adopt the Waste DPD are set out in Sections 3.11-3.19 and 5.0 below.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That the Council be recommended

- (1) to note the results of consultation (Appendix 1) undertaken between May and June 2011 on the Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 (New Sites) Report;**
- (2) to approve the Joint Waste DPD Publication Document (Appendix 2) and a final six-week public consultation commencing at the end of 2011;**
- (3) to approve the Submission of the Waste DPD to the Secretary of State in early 2012 and that this approval be subject to the detailed comment in paragraph 3.19;**
- (4) to approve the spatial distribution of one sub-regional site per district (Table 2 and paragraph 4.11); and**

- (5) to give delegated authority to the Operational Director, Policy, Planning and Transportation, in consultation with the Portfolio Holder, Physical Environment, to make any minor drafting amendments to the Waste DPD.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

- 3.1 The Waste DPD is focussed on (i) providing new capacity and new sites for waste management uses and (ii) delivering a robust policy framework to control waste development whilst meeting the identified waste management needs in Merseyside and Halton. The Waste DPD deals with all waste including commercial and industrial, hazardous, construction, demolition, excavation and municipal waste. Waste management requirements include reception, recycling, treatment and transfer activity all designed to minimise the amount of waste requiring final disposal. This amounts to approximately 4.5 million tonnes of material each year. Of that approximately 800,000 tonnes arises from local authority collected waste. The recycling, treatment and disposal of local authority collected waste is the responsibility of the Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority and Halton Council.
- 3.2 The Waste DPD aims to deliver significant improvements in waste management across the sub-region whilst also diverting waste from landfill. Specifically, the Waste DPD will provide a high degree of control through its land allocations and policies to direct the waste sector to the most appropriate locations primarily on allocated sites. It therefore will provide industry with much greater certainty in bringing forward proposals to meet waste management needs.
- 3.3 The Publication Document is the final consultative stage in Waste DPD preparation and follows completion of the Preferred Options 2 consultation.
- 3.4 Results of the Preferred Options 2 (New Sites) Consultation**
- 3.5 A 6-week consultation was completed on 20th June 2011. The scope of the consultation was limited to only four new sites proposed to be allocated for waste management uses. Large sub-regional sites were consulted upon in Halton, Liverpool and St. Helens and a smaller local site in Sefton. All sites consulted upon were identified as replacement sites to ones that had previously been deleted as a consequence of previous consultation.
- 3.6 A total of 2930 consultation responses were received as well as 1 petition with 4259 signatures relating to Site S1596, Sandwash Close, St Helens. Consultees were asked to show their support or opposition to the allocation of sites and the results are summarised below (as respondents expressed a view on more than one site the table below totals 3262 representations). A more detailed analysis, including originating postcodes etc is available in the Results of Consultation

Report (Appendix 1) and online at <http://merseysideeas-consult.limehouse.co.uk>.

| District Site | Support Strongly | Support | Oppose | Oppose Strongly |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|
| Atlantic Park, Bootle, Sefton | 76 | 62 | 13 | 37 |
| Widnes Waterfront, Halton | 130 | 52 | 12 | 38 |
| Sandwash Close, Rainford, St. Helens | 5 | 7 | 26 | 2604 |
| Garston, Liverpool | 78 | 71 | 9 | 42 |

- 3.7 No significant issues arose from the proposed allocations in Halton, Liverpool and Sefton. Consultation responses were received from waste operators and landowners including two statements expressing specific concerns as to the soundness of the Joint Waste DPD. The grounds provided for challenging the soundness of the Waste DPD are not considered to be strong on the basis that the Waste DPD is supported by comprehensive evidence base and the emerging policies are justified and consistent with National Policy.
- 3.8 A very considerable degree of local community and business opposition was experienced for the replacement sub-regional site in St. Helens with an estimated 2573 consultation responses from the immediate locality, with 2569 of these (99%) being opposed or strongly opposed to the proposed allocation. The Waste DPD team, along with colleagues from St. Helens, have analysed and considered all the responses received. As part of this process and to demonstrate a continuing high degree of transparency, all reasonable planning matters and consultee concerns have been thoroughly re-examined.
- 3.9 No significant planning, procedural or deliverability issues have come to light as a consequence of this re-assessment of the St. Helens site, nor as a result of the consultation responses received which make this sub-regional site unacceptable or require that a new site be selected. Consequently, there is no technical case to remove this proposed sub-regional allocation.
- 3.10 All four new sites which were the subject of Preferred Options 2 consultation will therefore be included within the Publication Waste DPD alongside those moving forward from Preferred Options 1. This gives a total of 6 sub-regional sites (1 per District of >4.5 hectares in each authority), 13 local sites proposed as allocations, and 2 inert landfill sites (see section 4.16 below - Cronton Clay pit (K5) and Bold Heath (S3)). Table 2 in section 4.12 of this report lists allocations for built facilities.

3.11 Publication and Submission of the Waste DPD

3.12 The Publication Stage of the Waste DPD is the final 6-week consultation stage whereby the consultees can submit comments. Comments can only be submitted on the basis of “soundness matters” and can relate to technical content or procedural matters (i.e. the process by which the Waste DPD has been prepared).

3.13 At Publication Stage, the 6 Districts are required to formally approve the Waste DPD as a Council document and part of their Local Development Framework. The proposed timetable for the 6-week Publication consultation starts at the beginning of November. All consultation processes are carried out in accordance with each Council’s Statement of Community Involvement.

3.14 Submission of the Waste DPD to the Secretary of State follows shortly after the consultation has closed on the Publication Document once the representations received have been considered and collated. At this stage the Waste DPD team and Districts are able to set out how it intends to respond to any soundness issues raised. Upon Submission to the Secretary of State, the formal examination of the Waste DPD starts with the appointment of an independent Planning Inspector. This is not a consultative process but one of rigorous examination of any “soundness” matters raised at Publication stage or that the Planning Inspector chooses.

3.15 The requirements of the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004 (s20 (5)) and as set out in PPS12 para 4.51 and 4.52 is that the plan is “sound”. To be “sound” a plan should be justified, effective and consistent with National Policy.

3.16 To be justified it must be founded on a robust and credible evidence base and the most appropriate strategy when considered against the reasonable alternatives.

3.17 To be effective it must be: Deliverable; Flexible; Able to be monitored.

3.18 In terms of the issue of alternatives PPS12 para 4.38 sets out: -

“The ability to demonstrate that the plan is the most appropriate when considered against reasonable alternatives delivers confidence in the strategy. It requires the local planning authority to seek out and evaluate reasonable alternatives promoted by themselves and others to ensure that they bring forward these alternatives which they consider the LPA should evaluate as part of the plan making process. There is no point in inventing alternatives if they are not realistic. Being able to demonstrate the plan is the most appropriate having gone through an objective process of assessing alternatives will pay dividends in terms of easier passage for the plan through the examination process. It will assist in the process of evaluating the claims of those who wish to oppose the strategy”.

- 3.19 Members should note that given timescale pressures all six partner authorities will be seeking Full Council approval of Submission in tandem with Publication. Therefore, delegated authority is sought for the Operational Director Policy, Planning and Transportation, in consultation with the Physical Environment Portfolio Holder, to make any minor drafting amendments.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

4.1 Contents of the Publication Waste DPD (Appendix 2)

- 4.2 Members are reminded that the content and issues to be addressed within the Waste DPD are governed by the requirements of national planning policy and waste strategy, particularly Planning Policy Statements 10 and 12. The Waste DPD is also supported by a large evidence base of technical assessments and reports ranging from Equality Impact Assessments to Sustainability Appraisals. Section 12 (below) provides a list of the technical appendices that are publicly available within the web site (<http://merseysideas-consult.limehouse.co.uk>) as downloadable resources. Alternatively paper copies can be made available for inspection.
- 4.3 The Waste DPD lists all relevant existing operational licensed waste management and disposal facilities within Merseyside and Halton. The Waste DPD site allocations proposed in Table 2 are additional to these existing sites.
- 4.4 The Vision and Strategic Objectives of the Waste DPD were established at the Spatial Strategy and Sites and original Preferred Options consultation stages. These are being taken forward virtually unaltered and are set out in Section 3.2 of the Publication Document.
- 4.5 Chapter 2 summarises the evidence base whereby current and projected waste management capacity needs are identified over a 15 year period to 2027 taking into account changes in waste arisings, progress with new waste infrastructure and the effects of policy and legislative change. The Waste DPD then forecasts what waste management capacity and sites are needed to divert, minimise, recycle, treat, reprocess and finally dispose of the waste arisings on Merseyside and Halton.
- 4.6 Government policy and independent planning advice make it clear that it is necessary for the Waste DPD to have sufficient flexibility to take account of changes in waste management needs and also is able to accommodate some loss of allocated sites to other uses during the Plan period. The level of need and how it is expressed in proposed allocations has already been agreed by Members at Preferred Options stage. The proposed allocations set out in Table 2 are the minimum level of allocations necessary to meet identified needs and policy requirements.

4.7 Both the Vision and Strategic Objectives strive for Merseyside and Halton to become self-sufficient in waste management over the plan period.

4.8 Site Allocations

4.9 Chapter 4 sets out the approach to site prioritisation and identifies the site allocations. Identification of sites for waste management use is an essential and challenging part of the Waste DPD. Therefore, a policy (WM1) has specifically been inserted to ensure that the waste management industry is directed towards site allocations and sets out a series of rigorous tests that need to be met by potential developers. The policies relating specifically to sites are shown in Table 1.

Table 1: Site-related Policies in the Waste DPD

| Policy Number | Purpose & content |
|---------------|--|
| WM1 | Guide to Site Prioritisation – primarily guides developers to allocated sites before considering other areas of search or unallocated sites. |
| WM2 | Sub-regional Site Allocations – identifies the sub-regional site allocations. |
| WM3 | District Site Allocations – identifies the district site allocations |
| WM4 | Allocations for Inert Landfill – identifies the inert landfill allocations |
| WM5 | Areas of Search for Small-scale Waste Management Operations and Re-processing Sites – identifies favoured areas of search for other small-scale waste management operations. |
| WM6 | Additional HWRC Requirements – defines criteria for identifying further HWRC facilities within the City of Liverpool. |

4.10 The site allocations included within the Waste DPD Publication document are set out in Table 2 below. All of the sites have already been formally approved by Members at Preferred Options stages and subject to at least one public consultation process. All site allocations are supported by a technical assessment.

4.11 A good spatial spread of sites has been achieved such that there is one sub-regional site per authority, with a variable number of smaller district-level sites per authority. This pattern of site distribution has evolved over the course of several public consultations and cycles of Council approvals. Members are asked to formally endorse the approach of one sub regional site per authority at Publication stage (site listings in Table 2 below).

4.12 All sites identified are either vacant land suitable for new facilities or have the potential for significant modernisation and/or intensification of use to meet identified waste management need. All sites included as allocations have the support of the landowner / operator.

Table 2: Site Allocations in the Waste DPD

| District | Site Reference & Name | Site Area (ha) |
|----------|--|----------------|
| Halton | H1 Widnes Waterfront Sub-regional Allocation | 7.8 |

| District | Site Reference & Name | Site Area (ha) |
|-----------|---|----------------|
| | H2 Eco-cycle, 3 Johnsons Lane, Widnes | 2.0 |
| | H3, Runcorn WWTW | 1.2 |
| Knowsley | K1 Butler's Farm, Knowsley Industrial Park Sub-regional Allocation | 8.0 |
| | K2 Image Business Park, Acornfield Road, Knowsley Industrial Park | 2.8 |
| | K3 Brickfields, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park | 2.3 |
| | K4 Former Pilkington Glass Works, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park | 1.3 |
| | K5 Cronton Claypit | 22.3 |
| Liverpool | L1 Land off Stalbridge Road, Garston Sub-regional Allocation | 5.4 |
| | L2 Site off Regent Road/ Bankfield Street | 1.4 |
| | L3 Waste treatment plant, Lower Bank View | 0.7 |
| Sefton | F1 Alexandra Dock, metal recycling site Sub-regional Allocation | 9.8 |
| | F2 55 Crowland Street, Southport | 3.6 |
| | F3 Site North of Farriers Way, Atlantic Business Park | 1.7 |
| | F4 1-2 Acorn way, Bootle | 0.6 |
| St Helens | S1 Land SW of Sandwash Close, Rainford Industrial Estate Sub-regional Allocation | 6.1 |
| | S2 Land North of TAC, Abbotsfield Industrial Estate | 1.3 |
| | S3 Bold Heath Quarry | 40.3 |
| Wirral | W1 Car Parking/ Storage Area, former Shipyard, Campbeltown Road Sub-regional Allocation | 5.9 |
| | W2 Bidston MRF/ HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 3.7 |
| | W3 Former goods yard, adjacent to Bidston MRF/ HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 2.8 |

4.13 A site profile including a map and the information shown in Table 2 is included in the Publication Document and is supported by technical assessments as part of the evidence base. These assessments include amongst other matters sustainability and effects on European nature conservation designations.

4.14 Landfill

4.15 The opportunity for final disposal of non-inert waste (wastes which do decompose or rot when deposited in landfill (including most household wastes)) to landfill within Merseyside and Halton is extremely limited due to land use constraints alongside geological and hydrogeological limitations. Detailed technical assessment has concluded that there are no opportunities within Merseyside and Halton for non-inert landfill disposal, and therefore there are no allocations for this purpose. Over time as behaviour changes in terms of the quantities and types of waste

produced and as new treatment facilities become operational the reliance that Merseyside and Halton have on exporting non-inert waste to landfill will decrease. The Waste DPD therefore will be based on a continuing but decreasing export of non-inert landfill to existing operational sites outside of the Merseyside and Halton throughout the Plan period (operational sites such as Arpley Landfill in Warrington and Hafod Landfill in Wrexham).

4.16 Merseyside and Halton do however have the potential to provide final disposal sites for inert waste. Two sites, both of which are existing active minerals operations are proposed as inert landfill allocations to meet the continuing, but decreasing, quantities of inert waste at Cronton Clay Pit (K5) and Bold Heath Quarry (S3). As fiscal and waste diversion pressures continue to impact on this waste stream, it is expected that relatively modest quantities of inert waste will be deposited at these sites over time, as most inert waste can be recycled and reprocessed into new recycled products and raw materials.

4.17 Policies

4.18 Chapter 5 sets out the policy framework intended to provide industry with a high degree of certainty and some flexibility in coming forward with proposals for new waste management infrastructure. The policies also set the bar high in terms of the very tight control that the Local Authorities will exercise over waste management activities and these policies strongly direct the waste management industry towards allocated sites. Table 3 summarises the key Waste DPD policies.

Table 3: Development Management Policies in the Waste DPD

| Policy & Page number | Purpose and content |
|----------------------|--|
| WM7 | Protection of Existing Waste Management Capacity – to ensure that the existing essential waste management capacity is maintained to serve the needs of Merseyside and Halton. |
| WM8 | Waste Prevention and Resource Management – to promote the prevention of waste and make efficient use of waste for all developments. |
| WM9 | Design and Layout for New Development – for all new non-waste developments to enable the easy and efficient storage and collection of waste. |
| WM10 | Design and Operation of New Waste Management Development – to ensure high quality design and operation of new waste management facilities to minimise impact of local communities. |
| WM11 | Sustainable Waste Transport – to minimise and mitigate the impacts of waste transport on local communities. |
| WM12 | Criteria for Waste Management Development – sets out the criteria against which all waste management proposals will be assessed. |

| | |
|------|---|
| WM13 | Waste Management Applications on Unallocated Sites – sets out the criteria that must be addressed for sites brought forward on unallocated sites. |
| WM14 | Energy from Waste – states that no large EfW facilities are needed but makes provision for small-scale EfW that serves an identified local need for energy or heat. |
| WM15 | Landfill on Unallocated Sites - sets out the criteria that must be addressed for landfill proposals brought forward on unallocated sites. |
| WM16 | Restoration and Aftercare of Landfill sites –sets out the information requirements for planning restoration and aftercare of landfill sites. |

4.19 The Waste DPD policies are designed to work with and not duplicate the District specific policies in their Core Strategy and other Development Plan Documents.

4.20 Implementation and Monitoring

4.21 The Waste DPD is required by planning policy (PPS12) to include an implementation plan and monitoring arrangements and these are set out in Chapter 6 of the Publication document. Responsibility for implementation principally lies with the Local Planning Authority with support from Merseyside EAS, Waste Collection Authorities, MWDA, landowners and the waste industry.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

5.1 Examination in Public

5.2 The Public Examination is a formal part of the plan making process, and starts upon Submission of the Waste DPD to the Secretary of State. A Planning Inspector is appointed by the Planning Inspectorate and the Waste DPD team will need to provide a secretariat for the Examination Hearing process including resources, a Programme Officer and a venue for the Inspector and their team and the formal hearing.

5.3 On the basis of the current work programme, the Examination Hearing is planned for May 2012. We expect to receive the Inspectors' Report 13 weeks after the completion of the Examination.

5.4 Adoption

5.5 The Waste DPD will need to be formally adopted, like all other statutory planning documents, by each of the Merseyside Districts as part of the adopted statutory development plan. Adoption is likely to take place in November 2012.

5.6 Previous Consultation

5.7 The Publication Document is the product of substantial public, business and stakeholder consultation. The table below lists the previous consultation periods.

| Public Consultation | Date |
|--|---|
| Issues and Options Report. | March to April 2007 – 6 weeks |
| Sites and Spatial Strategy Report | November 2008 to January 2009 - 8 weeks |
| Preferred Options Report | 24 May to 4 July 2010 – 6 weeks |
| Preferred Options 2 (New Sites) Report | 9 May to 20 June 2011 – 6 weeks |

5.8 Financial Implications

5.9 Final costs for the preparation of the Waste DPD have already been agreed and appropriate budgetary provision has been made, including the costs of Examination In Public. Currently no additional preparation costs are anticipated.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

6.2 This report has no direct implications for children and young people in Halton. Indirectly, the Waste Development Plan Document (Waste DPD) places sustainability at its very core, protecting valuable resources for future generations and promoting the most sustainable methods of waste handling and treatment (Sustainability Appraisal – Phases 2 & 3 (Scott Wilson 2007-2009)).

6.3 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

6.4 Each developed site will generate employment benefits for the surrounding area. The estimated total number of direct jobs to be created as a result of development of the Waste DPD allocated sites is 500-700 with additional indirect jobs estimated at up to twice this number. Temporary jobs related to construction of facilities are expected to total 25-400 per site, depending on the scale of the facility being built.

6.5 A Healthy Halton

6.6 There are concerns about environmental nuisance, odours, emissions and the effects that waste facilities may or may not have on the health of residents. The Waste DPD has been supported by an independent review of this matter. Scientific and medical consensus is that there are no direct health issues arising from the normal operation of modern waste facilities. The Waste DPD encourages the use of more efficient and precautionary technologies.

6.7 A Safer Halton

6.8 The main implication, aside from the health aspects noted above, is the consideration of increased traffic movements in the vicinity of any developed site.

6.9 Halton's Urban Renewal

6.10 A great deal of effort has been directed by the Council into changing perceptions about Halton that stem from its industrial legacy. A prime concern is the impact on inward investment in the Borough. Waste facilities must be designed to a high standard of quality and mitigate against all environmental nuisance that is associated with waste facilities.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 Due to the increasing number of private sector planning applications for waste treatment facilities and the pressing need for Merseyside and Halton to secure new infrastructure for sustainable waste management it is vital that rapid progress is maintained with the Waste DPD. Advancing the Waste DPD to a stage where it can start to influence planning decisions will greatly assist the Districts in making those decisions.

7.2 Delay to the Waste DPD will:

- Increase costs to the Districts in the future through the cost of landfill disposal and financial penalties.
- Have a knock on effect of Waste DPD project timescales with resultant increases in costs of plan preparation.
- Have very serious implications for the soundness of each of the District emerging Core Strategy documents.
- Result in a continuation of an industry-led approach to the location of new waste facilities rather than the pro-active plan-led approach proposed within the Waste DPD.
- Reduce the Council's ability to resist applications of the wrong type and in the wrong places

7.3 These risks are mitigated by a monthly review of all significant risk factors highlighted by the project's risk assessment.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 An Equality Impact Assessment has been prepared for this project and is available at www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk. Where appropriate, action has been taken on the findings of the Equality Impact Assessment.

9.0 REASON(S) FOR DECISION

9.1 Government policy (PPS10) requires that waste must be dealt with in a sustainable way. The Council is producing a Joint Waste Development Plan Document (DPD) for the Merseyside sub-region. Drafting of the Plan has reached the stage where the policy framework contained in the Waste DPD needs to be subject to public scrutiny.

10.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

10.1 The Waste DPD has been prepared through a multi-stage process. Four previous public consultation stages have been completed and these are detailed in section 5.7.

These reports document the evolution of the Plan and the options for policies and sites that have been considered and rejected. The results of the public consultation, engagement with stakeholders, industry and the Local Authorities and, detailed technical assessments have all been used to inform the preparation of this Report, forming a fifth and final public consultation stage. The Preferred Options stage reports set out the alternative options considered.

11.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

11.1 The Joint Merseyside Waste DPD is scheduled to be adopted by all the six partner Districts in November 2012.

12.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|---|--|-----------------|
| Broad Site Search Final Report (SLR Consulting September 2005) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Initial Needs Assessment (Land Use Consultants September 2005) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Agricultural Waste Survey (Merseyside EAS April 2007) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| North West Commercial and Industrial Waste Survey Final Report (Urban Mines May 2007) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| North West Construction, Demolition and Excavation Waste Final Report (Smith Gore July 2007) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Revised Needs Assessment Report (SLR Consulting December 2007) [Needs Assessment Version 2] | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Merseyside Radioactive Waste Arisings Review (Merseyside EAS December 2007) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Planning Implications Report (Merseyside EAS January 2008) [Needs Assessment Version 3] | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Review of Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Waste Management Facilities (RPS April 2008). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Review of Health Impacts from Waste Management Facilities (Richard Smith Consulting June 2008). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |

| | | |
|--|--|-----------|
| Equality Impact Assessment (Merseyside EAS July 2008). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| North West Regional Broad Locations Nov 08. | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Survey for Landfill Opportunities in Merseyside (Merseyside EAS - 2008). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| All Sites Scored.xls - Built Facilities sites long list prepared for Spatial Strategy & Sites report. | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| All sites to be assessed for Landfill.xls | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Built Facilities Site Search Methodology Preferred Options. | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Built Facilities Site Search Methodology Preferred Options 2. | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| St Helens sub-regional sites assessment | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Sustainability Appraisal – Phase 1 (Mouchel Parkman (2006-7). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Strategic Flood Risk Assessment (Capita Symonds 2008-9). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Habitats Regulations Assessment (Scott Wilson 2007-present). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Sustainability Appraisal – Phases 2 & 3 (Scott Wilson 2007-present). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Review of Relative Sustainability of Waste Management based on Mass-Burn or Two-Stage Recovery of Energy from Waste (Juniper Consulting 2009). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Risk Assessment for EfW Options for MSW in Merseyside & Halton November 2009 | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Revised Needs Assessment (Merseyside EAS November 2009) [Needs Assessment version 4]. | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Issues and Options Report (March 2007). | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| The Halton Council, Liverpool City Council, Knowsley Council, Sefton Council, St Helens Council and Wirral Council Joint Waste Development Plan Document Spatial Strategy and Sites Report. (Merseyside EAS November 2008) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Spatial Strategy and Sites Q and A Document | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| Spatial Strategy and Sites Summary Report | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| The Halton Council, Liverpool City Council, Knowsley Council, Sefton Council, St Helens Council and Wirral Council Joint Waste Development Plan Document Preferred Options Report (MEAS Dec 2009) | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |
| WasteDPD Preferred Options 2 Report | www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk or Rutland House, Halton Lea, Runcorn. | Tim Gibbs |

Joint Merseyside Waste Development Plan Document

Preferred Options 2 : Consultation on New Sites

Results of Consultation Report

Contents

| | | |
|----|---|----|
| 1 | Purpose of the Report | 2 |
| 2 | Communication and Promotion of the Preferred Options 2 Report | 2 |
| 3 | Overall Levels of Participation in the Preferred Options 2 Consultation | 2 |
| 4 | Responses received to the consultation..... | 4 |
| 5 | Source of Responses | 5 |
| | 5.1 Geographic Analysis..... | 5 |
| | 5.2 Sector Analysis..... | 6 |
| 6 | Analysis of responses to specific questions. | 7 |
| | 6.1 Question 1. Proposed Allocations for Sites | 7 |
| | 6.2 F0885 - Key Issues raised and actions arising | 8 |
| | 6.3 H2309 - Key Issues raised and actions arising | 9 |
| | 6.4 L2337 - Key Issues raised and actions arising: | 9 |
| | 6.5 S1596 - Key Issues raised and actions arising..... | 10 |
| | 6.6 Conclusion on responses to Question 1 | 12 |
| | 6.7 Question 2. General Comments on the Waste DPD..... | 12 |
| 7 | Petitions and pro-forma letters..... | 15 |
| 8 | Sites Brought Forward During the Consultation..... | 16 |
| 9 | Consultation Events..... | 17 |
| 10 | Next Steps | 17 |

1 Purpose of the Report

This report provides an overview of the Consultation on New Sites (Preferred Options 2) which took place from May 9th to June 27th 2011. It highlights key issues raised against each of the sites which were included in this consultation and the actions arising for the District Councils and the Waste DPD Team in taking the Waste DPD to the next stage.

Should Consultees wish to see the individual consultation responses received during the consultation process, please visit <http://merseysideeas-consult.limehouse.co.uk>. On this portal all responses and comments are logged and available for viewing. Consultees responses will be available on this site until the final version of the Waste DPD is published.

2 Communication and Promotion of the Preferred Options 2 Report

The following means were used to communicate the consultation to potential consultees:

- Statutory advertising (notices) during the week of commencement of consultation
- Press Releases to local newspapers
- Posters in District Council Libraries, One-Stop shops and Council receptions as required in District Statements of Community Involvement (SCIs)
- Information on District Council websites with links to consultation portal (see below)
- Consultation events held in each relevant District (Halton, Liverpool, Sefton and St.Helens)
- Emails and letters sent to consultees on Merseyside EAS and Council SCI databases (3668 individuals and organisations)
- Letters to all local authority Councillors in Merseyside & Halton following local elections in May 2011
- Paper questionnaire with reply-paid envelope included with Report for hard copy responses
- Dedicated consultation portal for direct electronic response at <http://merseyside-consult.limehouse.co.uk/portal>
- Waste Planning Website: www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk
- In addition, Community Organisations and Individuals in Rainford, St.Helens publicised the consultation through newsletters and providing facilities for copying, distributing and collecting paper questionnaires in their area.

3 Overall Levels of Participation in the Preferred Options 2 Consultation

The consultation portal allows data to be gathered on use of the site during the consultation period. The cumulative visitor statistics for the site are shown in Table 1 below.

| Web Traffic over 7 weeks | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Site visits | 2631 |
| Visits / week | 375 |
| Unique visitors | 1566 |
| Page views | 28811 |
| Pages / visit | 11 |
| Time / visit (min) | 9.55 |

Table 1: Participation via the Consultation Portal

The statistics reveal a considerable level of interest with over 1500 unique visitors viewing the site over the consultation period. Clearly however (see following section), only a very small proportion of visitors left consultation responses and/or comments on the website. There is no way of measuring whether some of the website visitors responded to the consultation by other means, having initially browsed the consultation material on the website. During the same period there were 29 visits to the Interactive Mapping site to which readers were directed from the main on-line document to view site plans and constraint maps.

The attendance at consultation events also provides some useful information on the level of interest generated. A total of approximately 850 consultees attended the four events organised across the four Districts. Further details are reported in Section 9 of this report.

4 Responses received to the consultation.

Responses to the consultation were received by four principal methods:

- Direct web-site responses
- Responses on the paper questionnaire circulated with the Preferred Options 2 Report, obtainable on demand from MEAS, and also distributed by Community Organisations in Rainford
- Letters
- Emails

Additional responses were also received in the form of petitions, pro-forma letters and from comments received at consultation events.

Web-site and questionnaire responses are easiest to analyse numerically since there are unambiguous answers to questions such as “Do you support allocation of these sites?” Where responses are received via letters and emails, these questions, although addressed, are not necessarily directly answered and in order to feed into numerical analysis, Merseyside EAS interpreted the responses received as answers to specific consultation questions that were posed. Where such interpretation has been applied, all results are posted on the consultation portal and consultees are able to check how their responses have been interpreted and analysed. Where an email address has been registered by a consultee, an email is automatically sent to the consultee informing of posting of comments on the portal. Other Consultees who registered comments will be notified about the publication of this report by letter.

Table 2 shows responses received via the different methods of communication. Petitions and pro-forma letters are covered in a Section 7.

| Type | Number | Percent |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|
| E-Mail | 74 | 2.5 % |
| Letter | 36 | 1.2 % |
| Paper Questionnaire | 2688 | 91.7 % |
| Web Questionnaire | 132 | 4.5 % |
| Total | 2930 | 100 % |

Table 2: Responses received to Consultation

The vast bulk of the responses received were unambiguous (96% from web-forms and the paper questionnaire) with only 4% requiring some interpretation. Since most of the 4% emails and letters which did require some interpretation were generally not problematic, we have a high degree of confidence that the results presented in the statistical summary of the individual questions provide an accurate picture of the views of the consultees who responded.

Results of Consultation - Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 : New Sites Report

A particular feature of responses received in this consultation was the frequency with which multiple responses were received from the same individual or organisation. Typically, a paper questionnaire was backed up by a letter or email received separately. Generally such multiple responses were amalgamated into a single response from the organisation or individual and where additional points were made or issues were raised in the separate communication, these were added to the original issues noted.

Each “response” in Table 2 above represents a single answer to one of the two specific consultation questions asked in the Preferred Options Report. These responses were made by **2747 individual consultees, of whom 232 represented 91 organisations**. This includes a number of organisational responses that were made by a number of individuals from the same organisation (For example one organisation - Rushton Hinchy Solicitors Ltd - submitted responses from 49 individuals).

There were 2751 responses to Question 1 (sites) and just 179 responses to Question 2 (general views on Waste DPD). The latter number represents something of an over-estimate of interest in Question 2, since many respondents used Question 2 to simply amplify their views on site issues. The consultation responses were therefore strongly biased towards Question 1 (site) issues.

5 Source of Responses

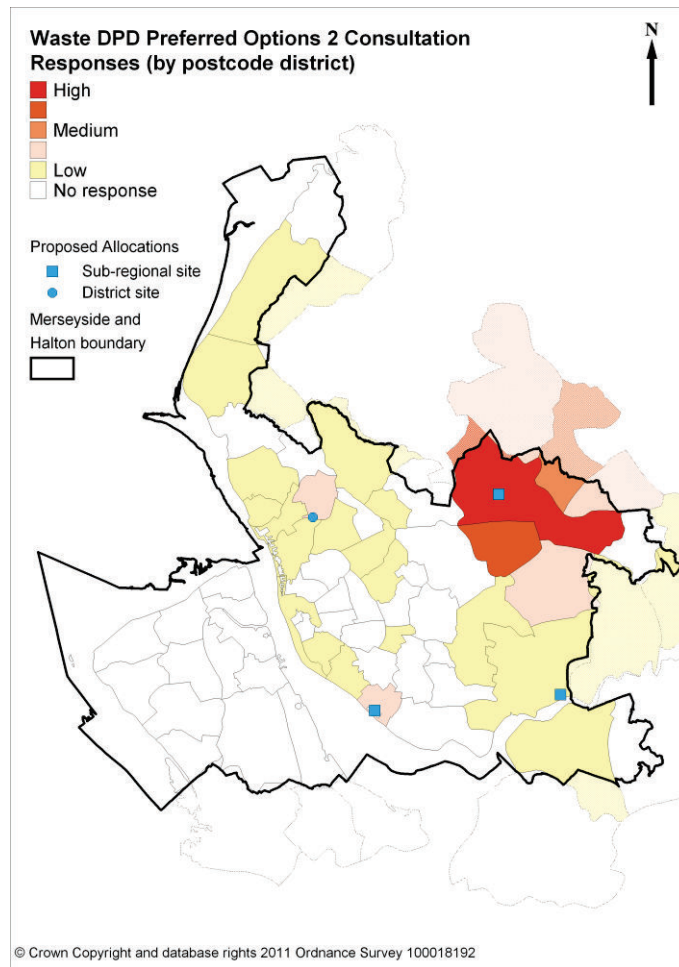
5.1 Geographic Analysis

From the level of general inquiries and subsequent responses and correspondence received, it was clear that much of the interest in this consultation was in relation to one specific site : S1596 in St.Helens. This overall impression is backed up by an analysis of the Postcode Areas provided by consultees (Postcode information is required on the paper questionnaire and is a mandatory field when registering on the website – no consultees are registered manually unless they supply this piece of information). The Table below shows the 5 most frequently occurring postcode areas in responses to the individual site questions.

| Post Code Sector | Count of Q1 Responses |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| WA11 | 2430 |
| WA10 | 141 |
| WN5 | 26 |
| WN8 | 16 |
| L19 | 13 |

Table 3 Most frequently recurring consultee postcode areas

Consultees from the top four postcode areas (see mapping below) represent 2613 responses of the 2751 responses received on individual sites (95% of responses). Given this high level of response from a specific area surrounding one site (and the relatively low level response from areas surrounding other sites), analysis of responses should be undertaken at least partly on the basis of consultee origin. With such skewed data, if local origin is ignored, there is a danger of local views on a site where there were few local representations made being outnumbered by responses originating from the area with the largest number of representations.



5.2 Sector Analysis

Consultees responding to the Preferred Options consultation were categorised as:

- Private Individuals
- Private Organisations
- Public Organisations

Analysing all consultees according to this grouping, the following breakdown can be defined:

| Group | Number of consultees | Percentage of consultees |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Private Individuals | 2747 | 97 % |
| Private Organisations | 68 | 2 % |
| Public Organisations | 23 | 1 % |

Table 4. Types of Consultee Responding

Nearly all of the responses, therefore, were submitted on behalf of private individuals with the remainder, which were submitted on behalf of organisations, split roughly 70% from private sector organisations (mainly businesses) and 30% from public sector organisations.

6 Analysis of responses to specific questions.

6.1 Question 1. Proposed Allocations for Sites

Consultees were asked to show their support or opposition to the allocation of sites.

| 1A. No Postcode Analysis - All Responses | | | | | | |
|--|--------|-----------------|-------------------|---------|------------------|-------|
| Site | Oppose | Oppose Strongly | No view expressed | Support | Support Strongly | Total |
| F0885 | 13 | 37 | 2545 | 62 | 76 | 2733 |
| H2309 | 12 | 38 | 2501 | 52 | 130 | 2733 |
| L2337 | 9 | 42 | 2533 | 71 | 78 | 2733 |
| S1596 | 26 | 2604 | 91 | 7 | 5 | 2733 |
| | | | | | | 10932 |

In the following table, all "Do not wish to Express a View" responses have been removed from the analysis.

| 1B. No Postcode Analysis – after removal of "Do not wish to express a View" responses | | | | | |
|---|--------|-----------------|---------|------------------|-------|
| Site | Oppose | Oppose Strongly | Support | Support Strongly | Total |
| F0885 | 13 | 37 | 62 | 76 | 188 |
| H2309 | 12 | 38 | 52 | 130 | 232 |
| L2337 | 9 | 42 | 71 | 78 | 200 |
| S1596 | 26 | 2604 | 7 | 5 | 2642 |
| | | | | | 3262 |

As noted above, this analysis suggests that there is considerable support for some of the sites (eg 130 "strongly support" responses for site H2309). It is instructive, however, to see how many of these supporting responses are local to that site and how many come from "cross-voting" from other areas. The following table repeats the analysis taking into account **only the responses** from the postcode areas surrounding the site with the high level of response – S1596:

| 2. Postcode areas: WA10, WA11 and WN* only | | | | | |
|--|--------|-----------------|---------|------------------|-------|
| Site | Oppose | Oppose Strongly | Support | Support Strongly | Total |
| F0885 | 12 | 27 | 53 | 72 | 164 |
| H2309 | 11 | 36 | 44 | 123 | 214 |
| L2337 | 8 | 29 | 66 | 73 | 176 |
| S1596 | 25 | 2544 | 1 | 3 | 2573 |
| | | | | | 3127 |

And finally the following table analyses the responses from the remaining postcode areas:

| 3. Other postcode areas | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------|-----------------|---------|------------------|-------|
| Site | Oppose | Oppose Strongly | Support | Support Strongly | Total |
| F0885 | 1 | 10 | 9 | 4 | 24 |
| H2309 | 1 | 2 | 8 | 7 | 18 |
| L2337 | 1 | 13 | 5 | 5 | 24 |
| S1596 | 1 | 60 | 6 | 2 | 69 |
| | | | | | 135 |

| Site ID | Location |
|---------|---|
| F0885 | District Site, Site North of Farriers Way, Netherton Industrial Estate. |
| H2309 | Sub-Regional Site: Widnes Waterfront, Halton |
| L2337 | Sub-Regional Site :Land Off Stalybridge Road, Garston, Liverpool |
| S1596 | Sub-Regional Site : Sandwash Close, Rainford Industrial Estate, St.Helens |

Key to sites

6.2 F0885 - Key Issues raised and actions arising

| Issue | Action |
|--|---|
| Road Capacity & Road Safety. Routes for access to the site (Farriers Way <i>versus</i> new site access road) | Ensure that Waste DPD policies address waste transport issues adequately. Make clear that for grant of Planning Permission a satisfactory transport assessment will be required which will allow safe access to the site with minimal environmental impact. |
| Noise, Smell & Dust | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require best practice in operation of waste management facilities. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Proximity to Residential Development | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of residential developments or mitigation through design and good practice. Note that proximity to housing taken into account in site selection. Site has been designated for allocation on the basis of good separation from nearest housing. Alternative sites considered were nearer to significant housing developments. |
| Type of waste facility allowed and Possibility of hazardous materials on site | Ensure that potential waste management uses of site are clear in site profile and clarify that only indoor treatment of waste will take place. |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Proximity to Schools | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of schools or mitigation through design and good practice. Proximity to schools taken into account in site selection. |
| Vermin | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require best practice in operation of waste management facilities. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Proximity to Recreation Facilities | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of recreational facilities or mitigation through design and good practice. Proximity to green space, parkland etc taken into account in site selection. |

6.3 H2309 - Key Issues raised and actions arising

| Issue | Action |
|--|---|
| Proximity to Residential Development | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of residential developments or mitigation through design and good practice. Note that proximity to housing taken into account in site selection. Site has been designated for allocation on the basis of good separation from nearest housing. Alternative sites considered were nearer to housing. |
| Concerns with regard to health effects of facilities | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate a high level of protection from environmental health risks. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Alternative sites proposed | Consultee suggests a nearby alternative site should be designated since it currently operates below capacity as a Waste Transfer Station. At this late stage in the development of the plan, no specific action is proposed on this issue since the allocation of H2309 is based on a wide range of possible waste management uses on a sub-regional scale. |

6.4 L2337 - Key Issues raised and actions arising:

| Issue | Action |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Proximity to Residential Development | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of residential developments or mitigation through design and good practice. Note that proximity to housing taken into account in site selection. Site has been designated for allocation on the basis of reasonable separation from nearest housing. |
| Road Capacity & Road | Ensure that Waste DPD policies address waste transport |

Results of Consultation - Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 : New Sites Report

| Issue | Action |
|--|--|
| Safety | issues adequately. Make clear that for grant of Planning Permission a satisfactory transport assessment will be required. |
| Regeneration Issues | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require waste management facilities to be designed and built to high standards to enhance rather than detract from regeneration opportunities. |
| Noise, Smell & Dust | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require best practice in operation of waste management facilities. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Concerns over Consultation Process | Consultation processes will be reviewed prior to the forthcoming consultation on the Waste DPD Publication Document and any lessons learnt will be incorporated. Note that Consultation Processes at all stages of Waste DPD production have been fully compliant with all relevant District Statements of Community Involvement (SCIs). |
| Protection of Wildlife / Ecological Assets | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate a high level of protection from ecological damage. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Alternative Sites Proposed | Comments suggest that there are “better sites in South Liverpool” and that a site should be found “outside of the city” but no specific suggestion. No specific action to be taken at this late stage in development of the plan. |
| Concerns over Site Selection Process | Ensure that when the Waste DPD Publication Document is made available, supporting materials are provided which provide a complete and transparent guide to how sites were selected – both with respect to objective criteria (scoring) and wider planning deliverability issues. |
| Pollution and Health Concerns | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate a high level of protection from environmental health risks. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Proximity to Schools | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of schools or mitigation through design and good practice. Proximity to schools taken into account in site selection. |

6.5 S1596 - Key Issues raised and actions arising

| Issue | Action |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Road Capacity & Road Safety | Commission some further work on assessment of local highway network to quantify capacity with respect to potential waste management developments. Ensure that Waste DPD policies address waste transport issues adequately. Make clear that for grant of Planning Permission a satisfactory transport assessment will be |

Results of Consultation - Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 : New Sites Report

| Issue | Action |
|--|---|
| | required. Review the acceptable categories of waste management facilities on this site. |
| Noise, Smell, Dust & Vermin | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require best practice in operation of waste management facilities. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. Review the acceptable categories of waste management facilities on this site. |
| Proximity to Residential Development | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of residential developments or mitigation through design and good practice. Review the acceptable categories of waste management facilities on this site. Note that proximity to housing taken into account in site selection. Site has been designated for allocation on the basis of good separation from nearest housing. Most alternative sites considered were nearer to significant housing developments. |
| Local History of Waste Facilities / Fear of Landfill development | Ensure that it is clear that allocation is for an enclosed, built waste management facility, different in nature from the landfills that have historically affected this area. |
| Pollution and Health Concerns | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate a high level of protection from environmental health risks. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Greenbelt & Green Space Issues | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require waste management facilities to be designed and built to high standards to allow compatibility with surrounding land uses. Make clear that proximity to Green Belt and other Green Space is taken into account in site selection process. |
| Protection of Wildlife / Ecological Assets | Commission some additional ecological survey to enhance existing information in site profile. Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate a high level of protection from ecological damage. Make clear operational factors will additionally be controlled by Environment Agency permits. |
| Footpath and Right-of-Way Issues | Ensure that additional transport assessment (see above) includes impact on Rights of Way and measures to mitigate problems. |
| Alternative Sites Proposed / Preference for Brownfield sites | Comments suggest that there are “better sites in St Helens” and that a site should be found “on brownfield land” but few specific suggestions were made. No specific action to be taken at this late stage in development of the plan, since where specific sites have been suggested, these have generally already been assessed and discounted. There is no case for assessing completely new sites where these have been suggested, since the Plan now has a set of sites which meet Planning and Deliverability criteria. |
| General Amenity / Rural Character and Visual Impact Issues | Ensure that Waste DPD policies require waste management facilities to be designed and built to high standards to allow compatibility with surrounding land uses. Make clear that proximity to Green Belt and other Green Space is taken into account in site selection process. |
| Possibility of Hazardous | Ensure that potential waste management uses of site are |

Results of Consultation - Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 : New Sites Report

| Issue | Action |
|---|---|
| Materials on site | clear in site profile. Make clear that the Environment Agency site is extremely unlikely to allow this site to be used for hazardous waste because of Flood Risk Zone. |
| Concerns regarding impact on local businesses | Ensure that Waste DPD policies incorporate high quality design elements and environmental protection standards which will make any proposed facility developed a welcome addition to the industrial estate rather than a potential “bad neighbour”. Make clear that allocation is for an enclosed, built waste management facility, different in nature from the landfills that have historically affected this area. Review the acceptable categories of waste management facilities on this site. |
| Concerns over Consultation Process | Consultation processes will be reviewed prior to the forthcoming consultation on the Waste DPD Publication Document and any lessons learnt will be incorporated. Make clear that Consultation Processes at all stages of Waste DPD production have been fully compliant with all relevant District Statements of Community Involvement (SCIs). |
| Proximity to Recreation Facilities | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of recreational facilities or mitigation through design and good practice. Proximity to green space, parkland etc taken into account in site selection. |
| Current agricultural use of the site | Make clear in site profile that although the site is currently in agricultural use, it is allocated for Employment use in the UDP. |
| Concerns over Site Selection Process | Ensure that when the Waste DPD Publication Document is made available, supporting materials are provided which provide a complete and transparent guide to how sites were selected – both with respect to objective criteria (scoring) and wider planning deliverability issues. |
| Proximity to Schools | Ensure waste DPD policies incorporate protection of schools or mitigation through design and good practice. Proximity to schools taken into account in site selection. |

6.6 Conclusion on responses to Question 1

While various issues have been raised, and in the case of site S1596, by a large number of consultees, none of these issues constitute new valid Planning reasons for withdrawing any site from the process. It is proposed that in preparing the Publication Document for the next stage of the Waste DPD, actions should be undertaken to address the issues raised as indicated in the tables above.

6.7 Question 2. General Comments on the Waste DPD

Brief explanation: This question asked Consultees to provide any further general comments on the Preferred Options 2 Report.

Qualitative Analysis

174 responses were originally registered as answering Question 2. On analysis however a large number of these responses (111), although written in the Question 2 box were in fact clearly continuations of responses to Question 1. These are not included in the following analysis which lists issues raised in the remaining 63 responses to question 2 in order of the frequency with which the issue was raised

Key Issues Raised and Actions arising :

| Issues | Action |
|---|--|
| Concerns over Consultation Process | Consultation processes will be reviewed prior to the forthcoming consultation on the Waste DPD Publication Document and any lessons learnt will be incorporated. Make clear that Consultation Processes at all stages of Waste DPD production have been fully compliant with all relevant District Statements of Community Involvement (SCIs). |
| Suggests Alternative Site(s) – generally non-specific suggestions. | No specific action to be taken at this late stage in development of the plan, since where specific sites have been suggested, these have generally already been assessed and discounted. There is no case for assessing completely new sites where these have been suggested, since the Plan now has a set of sites which meet Planning and Deliverability criteria. |
| Concerns over the Site Selection process | Ensure that when the Waste DPD Publication Document is made available, supporting materials are provided which provide a complete and transparent guide to how sites were selected – both with respect to objective criteria (scoring) and wider planning deliverability issues. |
| Responses providing general guidance from National or Regional bodies | Waste DPD policies to be checked to ensure compliance as appropriate |
| Concerns over Spatial Strategy and Self-Sufficiency issues | Ensure that Publication Document and background documents published alongside provide a full picture of the Spatial approach to be taken in the Waste DPD and of the approach to net self-sufficiency. |
| Technical points regarding technologies to be adopted etc | Ensure that the Publication Document reflects an accurate and up-to-date approach to waste management technologies in the Merseyside and Halton context, bearing in mind the general requirement that the DPD should be “technology neutral”. |
| General positive comments | No action required |
| Concerns over Insufficient Detail provided on potential developments | Ensure that the Publication Document and background documents issued alongside make clear the distinction between site allocation at the plan-making stage and potential specific development at the Planning Permission stage, when more detailed information will be available. |

7 Petitions and pro-forma letters.

The following petitions and signed pro-forma letters were received objecting to the proposed allocation of the specific sites mentioned:

| Site | Materials Received | Number of Signatures |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| S1596, Sandwash Close, Rainford, St.Helens | Petition from local residents | 4259 |

8 Sites Brought Forward During the Consultation

During previous consultations (Issues & Options; Spatial Strategy & Sites and Preferred Options) a “Call for Sites” was issued inviting consultees to submit ideas for sites which in their view should have been evaluated as possible allocations in the Waste DPD.

There was no corresponding Call for Sites with this consultation since it is the last planned consultation before proceeding to the Plan Publication Stage. Nonetheless, several consultees (see tables above) raised the possibility of alternative sites – either in a non-specific sense or by referring to specific sites which they consider to have merits over those which have been proposed for allocation. As well as individual consultees bringing forward ideas on alternative sites, a number of sites were brought forward by landowners and land agents during the consultation.

It is not proposed to undertake further site assessments at this late stage in development of the plan. Where specific sites have been suggested, these have in most cases already been assessed and discounted. There is no case for assessing completely new sites in the small number of cases where these have been suggested, since the Plan now has a set of sites which fully meet Planning and Deliverability criteria.

9 Consultation Events.

As part of the consultation process, four public meetings were held around the sub-region, one per district. These meetings were held to give the public an opportunity to find out more about the Waste DPD and Preferred Options Report and also to provide the chance to discuss various issues with both the Waste Team and district officers. The meetings also had the added use of flagging up key issues that need to be resolved or investigated prior to the next stage of the Waste DPD.

| Date and Venue | Number of attendees |
|---|---------------------|
| Monday 23 rd May 2011 at Stobart Stadium, Halton. | 12 |
| Thursday 26 th May 2011 at Millenium House, Liverpool | 11 |
| Tuesday 7 th June 2011 at Rainford Parish Hall, St Helens | Approx 800* |
| Thursday 9 th June 2011 at Netherton Neighbourhood Centre, Sefton. | 16 |

* Due to large numbers at this consultation event, it was not possible to ensure all attendees signed in when entering the hall therefore an approximation has been given here.

There was no need to register for the event; people could just turn up on the day and were organised as informal “drop in” sessions with officers from MEAS and District Councils available for informal discussions following the Questions and Answer session. At most sessions there was also a representative from the relevant authority’s Waste Collection Department in attendance to answer any queries regarding household waste and collection arrangements.

These meetings provided the public with opportunity to talk to the waste team and District officers, and also provided a means of flagging up issues regarding the Waste DPD, site allocations and consultation process itself.

10 Next Steps

Publication. The next stage in the development of the Waste DPD will be the Publication of a Final Draft of the Plan (the Publication Document) which is scheduled to take place in November 2011. A six week period will be available for interested parties to submit representations as to the soundness of the Plan.

Submission. The Publication Document is then submitted to the Secretary of State (Department of Communities and Local Government) along with the representations that have been made with respect to the soundness of the Plan. This should take place in January 2012. This marks the start of the Examination in Public of the Plan.

Examination Hearing. The Secretary of State will appoint a Planning Inspector to conduct

Results of Consultation - Waste DPD Preferred Options 2 : New Sites Report

a formal hearing in public at which parties who have made representations will be heard. The Inspector will write a report in which he or she will reach a conclusion as to the soundness of the Plan. The hearing should take place in May 2012 and the report should follow in September 2012.

Adoption. If the Plan is found to be sound, all six District Councils involved will vote on its adoption as part of their individual Local Development Frameworks. At that point (likely to be in December 2012) the draft policies and land allocations will become formal policies adopted by the Councils.



| | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. Introduction | 3 |
| 1.1 Joint Waste DPD | 3 |
| 1.2 Representations on Soundness | 6 |
| 2. Evidence Base | 7 |
| 2.1 Portrait of Merseyside and Halton | 7 |
| 2.2 Updating the Needs Assessment, Capacity Gaps and Site Requirements | 12 |
| 2.3 Summary of Needs Assessment | 13 |
| 2.4 Implications : Sites requirements | 22 |
| 3. Vision and Spatial Strategy | 35 |
| 3.1 Vision | 35 |
| 3.2 Spatial Strategy | 40 |
| 4. Site Allocations to deliver capacity requirements | 43 |
| 4.1 Sub-Regional Sites | 45 |
| 4.2 District-level Sites | 48 |
| 4.3 Landfill Sites | 50 |
| 4.4 Additional Sites | 52 |
| 5. Development Management Policies | 58 |
| 5.1 Protection of Existing Waste Management Capacity | 58 |
| 5.2 Waste Prevention and Resource Management | 59 |
| 5.3 Design and Layout for New Development | 60 |
| 5.4 Design and Operation of New Waste Management Facilities | 61 |
| 5.5 Sustainable Waste Transport | 63 |
| 5.6 Criteria for Waste Management Development | 65 |
| 5.7 Waste Management Applications on Unallocated Sites | 68 |
| 5.8 Energy from Waste | 71 |
| 5.9 Development Management Policy for Landfill | 72 |
| 5.10 Restoration and Aftercare | 75 |
| 6. Implementation and Monitoring | 77 |
| 6.1 Delivery Framework | 77 |
| 6.2 Monitoring Framework | 84 |
| 7. Glossary | 88 |



| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| 8. Appendices | 96 |
| 8.1 Appendix 1 : Waste Uses | 97 |
| 8.2 Appendix 2 : Site Profiles | 104 |

1 Introduction

1.1 Joint Waste DPD

1.1 Government policy and EU legislation strongly encourages local authorities to work jointly in preparing Joint Waste Development Plan Documents given the strategic nature and scale of waste management. The preparation of a Waste Development Plan Document (Waste DPD) is the responsibility of all districts and will form an important part of their statutory District Local Development Frameworks (LDFs).

1.2 Preparation of the Waste DPD began early in 2006 following Full Council approval to commence preparation of a joint DPD from Knowsley, Liverpool, St Helens, Sefton and Wirral Councils. In 2007, Halton Council also joined the Waste DPD process, and this was accompanied by further Full Council resolutions. Figure 1.1 indicates the Waste DPD plan area, showing the 6 participatory Districts in Merseyside and Halton.

Figure 1.1 Waste DPD - Plan Area



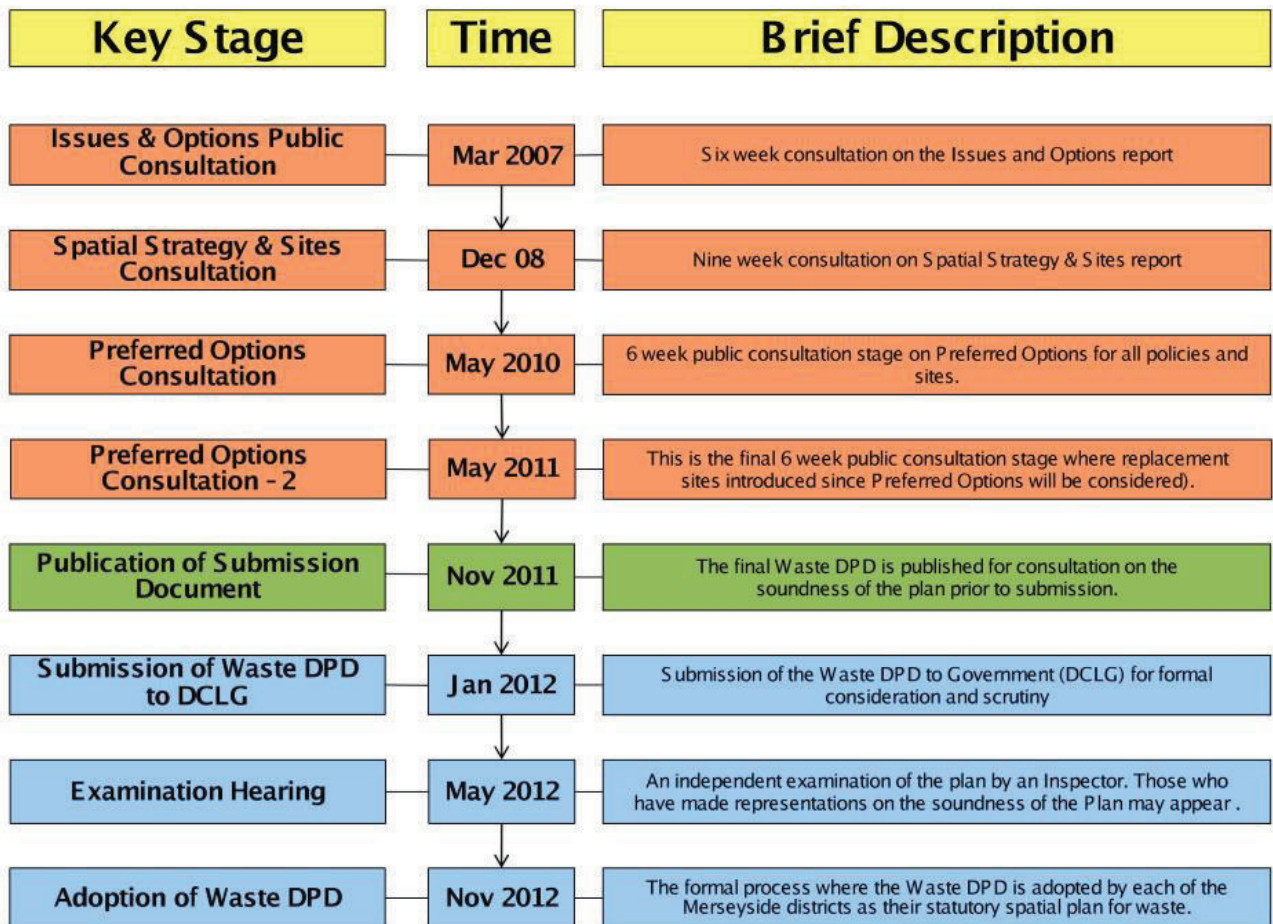
Glossary of Technical Terms

This document contains some technical terms and abbreviations. Many of them are defined in the Glossary (Section 7). To assist readers in accessing these definitions, where terms are used which are defined in the Glossary, these are annotated with a super-script letter "G", eg : Habitats Regulations Assessment^G.

1.3 The Waste DPD has taken account of the local visions identified in the Sustainable Community Strategies^G (SCSs) for each of the participating authorities and Local Strategic Partnerships^G (LSPs) which set out the long term plans for their individual communities. By taking account of those aspects of the SCSs that relate to waste and climate change, the Waste DPD will contribute to the delivery of local vision of the areas individually and to the sub-region as a whole, through focused delivery of sustainable waste management.

1.4 The Waste DPD has been through several rounds of public consultation before reaching the final stage, and has been approved by the six districts at each stage of the process. These are shown in the diagram below:

Figure 1.2 Timeline for development of the Waste DPD



1.5 At each stage, the results of the consultation have been used to inform the development of the subsequent documents. There has been a good deal of consensus on all of the policy issues. The process of identifying appropriate site allocations has been complex and challenging. Several sites have been deleted during the course of developing the Waste DPD, and these have been replaced using the same comprehensive site selection process. At each stage any new sites proposed for allocation have been the subject of a consultation to ensure that stakeholders have had opportunity to comment.



1.6 The Waste DPD is supported by a series of supporting documents including a Needs Assessment and Sustainability Appraisal⁶ (SA), it has also been subject of a Habitats Regulations Assessment⁶ (HRA), all of which can be viewed at on the Consultation Portal at <http://merseysideeas-consult.limehouse.co.uk/portal>. The key documents are listed in Table 1.1:

Table 1.1

| |
|--|
| Broad Site Search Report |
| WRATE Modelling report |
| Health Impacts Assessment |
| Radioactive Waste Survey |
| NW Region Broad Locations Report 2008 |
| NW C&I Survey 2006/7 |
| NW CD&E Survey 2006/7 |
| PO LF sites short list |
| LF methodology |
| Built facilities methodology |
| Built Facilities sites long list |
| All Sites Scored for Preferred Option list |
| Equality Impact Assessment |
| Publication Document HRA Report |
| Map of European sites designated under Habitats Regulations |
| PO Needs Assessment and P.I. Report |
| Publication Document Non-Technical Summary |
| Merseyside Waste DPD Sub-Regional Strategic Flood Risk Assessment final report |
| Sustainability Appraisal - Report |
| Sustainability Appraisal - Non-Technical Summary |
| Agricultural Waste Survey |
| Issues and Option Report |
| Spatial Strategy & Sites Report |
| Preferred Options Report |
| Preferred Options 2 Report : new Sites |
| Results of Consultation on Issues and Option Report |
| Results of Consultation on Spatial Strategy & Sites Report |
| Results of Consultation on Preferred Options Report |
| Results of Consultation on Preferred Options 2 Report : new Sites |



1.7 Once adopted the Waste DPD will replace the policies for waste development contained within the Unitary Development Plans (UDPs) for Halton, Knowsley, Liverpool, Sefton, St Helens and Wirral (see section 3.30 and Table 3.1).

1.2 Representations on Soundness

1.8 Merseyside Environmental Advisory Service (Merseyside EAS) is publishing the Publication Waste DPD (the proposed Submission Draft) on behalf of the six districts for representations to be made. The Joint Merseyside and Halton Waste Development Plan Document (DPD) Submission Version will then be submitted to the Secretary of State for examination by an independent Inspector.

1.9 The Waste DPD sets out the vision, strategic objectives and spatial strategy for waste management for the districts of Halton, Knowsley, Liverpool, St. Helens, Sefton and Wirral and outlines a planning policy vision to 2027, to make the sub-region as self sufficient and sustainable as possible in waste management.

1.10 The Waste DPD applies to the whole of the administrative areas of all the six districts in the Merseyside and Halton sub-region.

1.11 Period for Representations

1.12 The period for representations to be made will commence on the November 2011 and will finish on December 2011.

1.13 Representations can only be made on issues of soundness and legal compliance. Details of what makes a sound and legally compliant plan are available separately.

1.14 Representations may be made by way of electronic communication by using an on-line response form available on the website at merseysideeas-consult.limehouse.co.uk, or as an email attachment to waste.dpd@sefton.gov.uk or in writing by sending a completed form to:

Merseyside EAS
1st Floor, Merton House
Stanley Road
Bootle
Merseyside, L20 3DL

1.15 A copy of the form can also be obtained from the address above, or by contacting the Waste DPD Team on 0151 934 2804.

1.16 Merseyside EAS will collate and rationalise the representations on soundness and legal compliance on behalf of the six districts before submission to the Planning Inspectorate with the Submission Version. Any representation may be accompanied by a request to be notified, at a specified address of:

- The submission of the document for independent examination;
- The recommendations of any person appointed to carry out an independent examination of the DPD; and,
- The adoption of the Waste DPD.

1.17 A copy of the [Publication Waste DPD and supporting documents](#) and response forms, is available at One Stop Shops and local libraries throughout the sub-region, check local branch for opening times. A copy of each document and library opening hours are also available on the Council websites and at www.wasteplanningmerseyside.gov.uk



2 Evidence Base

2.1 Portrait of Merseyside and Halton

Merseyside and Halton

2.1 Merseyside is made up of the five metropolitan boroughs of Liverpool, Knowsley, Sefton, St. Helens and Wirral. Halton is a unitary authority to the east of Merseyside which covers the towns of Widnes and Runcorn. The sub-region is strongly influenced by the River Mersey and its estuary which borders four of the six Districts.

2.2 Despite being highly urbanised, between 33 and 50% of land in all the districts except Liverpool is designated as Green Belt. The vast majority is high quality agricultural land and farming remains economically important particularly in Sefton, St Helens and Wirral. The geology and aquifers underlying the sub-region are also highly sensitive, and has an impact on the types of waste management facility which are appropriate in particular locations.

The Population of Merseyside and Halton

2.3 The current combined population of Merseyside and Halton stands at just under 1.5 million. Some of the wards across all six districts are amongst the most deprived nationally. Without exception, all districts have given high priority to renewing housing stock in attempt to stem population and economic decline. This has largely been through a programme of housing clearance and rehabilitation, and the Housing Market Renewal Initiatives in several of the districts. This has an impact on waste management, in terms of the volumes of construction and demolition waste created and the potential increase of Local Authority collected waste produced as the number of households increases. The needs assessment has also accounted for projected increases in household numbers and its impact on waste generation.

Industrial Heritage and Its Effects on Waste

2.4 Liverpool and surrounding districts were in their industrial prime during the 18th and 19th Centuries and the Industrial Revolution. The towns of St. Helens, Widnes, Runcorn, Port Sunlight and Prescot were dominated by the glass and chemical industry and some of this business continues to this day. Liverpool, Bootle and Birkenhead were the focus for port activity and linked the North West to the rest of the world. Port activity remains a key economic driver for these districts, with tonnages being handled by the Port and docks increasing in recent years and continues to do so.

2.5 In recent history, employment patterns on Merseyside and Halton have changed from being dependent on industry to a more commerce and service based economy, although this varies locally. Halton, Knowsley and St. Helens still have significant manufacturing industries within their districts. The overall decrease in heavy and manufacturing industry across Merseyside and Halton and the increasing importance of commercial and service sectors can be seen in the amounts and types of waste produced across the sub-region. In planning to meet Merseyside's future waste management needs account has been taken of the changing patterns of economic activity and the effect this is likely to have on the amount and type of waste generated.

2.6 The industrial heritage of Merseyside and Halton has led to derelict and contaminated land across the sub-region as well as high levels of unemployment as a result of declining industries. This can have an impact both in terms of what development is appropriate on the land, the cost of redevelopment and also in the generation of contaminated wastes for disposal.

Economic Activity and Governance and its Effects on Waste

2.7 Liverpool is the second largest city in the North West region, and this is reflected in the creation of Liverpool City Region (LCR). Halton, Knowsley, Liverpool, Sefton, St. Helens and Wirral are the core districts of the Liverpool City Region, although its geographical reach also extends to adjacent authorities.

2.8 The City Region has become more important as the Coalition Government makes moves to abolish the regional layer of planning and is replacing regional development agencies with Local Enterprise Partnerships (LEPs). The Liverpool City Region LEP will assist inward investment, continued regeneration and investment in the Low Carbon economy. It has the potential to affect the quantities and types of waste arising in the sub-region.



2.9 The global economic downturn has inevitably affected the sub-region, as it has affected the rest of the country, and the intensity of development has slowed down noticeably. The pace of development has been further exacerbated by public sector spending cuts affecting construction projects such as 'Building Schools for the Future' and the availability of support for public sector regeneration and housing schemes. Budget restraints have also been imposed on the Merseyside local authorities which will have a knock on effect on spending across all departments including waste collection and management. All this in turn will affect the amount of waste being generated and recycled, particularly construction, demolition and excavation (CD&E) wastes but also commercial and industrial (C&I) wastes.

2.10 Each site developed for waste management uses is however expected to generate employment benefits for the surrounding area. The estimated total number of direct jobs that may be created as a result of the development of the sites allocated in the Waste DPD is 500-700 with additional indirect jobs estimated at up to twice this number. Temporary jobs related to construction of facilities are expected to total 25-400 per site, depending on the scale of the facility being built.

Self Sufficiency in Waste Management in Merseyside and Halton

2.11 The Merseyside and Halton sub-region is the third largest producer of waste in the North West region behind Lancashire and Greater Manchester. The sub-region is a highly urbanised area with limited opportunity for landfill operations and significant constraints on land for built facilities. Currently about 13% of waste arisings is exported outside the area for landfill disposal.

2.12 There is a continuing interest in developing new waste management facilities in the sub-region varying from waste transfer stations and materials recycling facilities⁶ (MRFs) to autoclaving⁶, gasification⁶ and other large scale Energy from Waste⁶ (EfW) facilities with proposals at the planning stage or with valid consents to be implemented. This has resulted in an increasing ability for the sub-region to be self sufficient, but also in significant over-capacity of consented EfW facilities in the sub-region. Some of these facilities will be of regional, if not national, significance, and their capacity may not therefore, be entirely available for Merseyside and Halton's needs.

Impacts of Land Availability on Waste Management in Merseyside and Halton

2.13 There are three land availability issues which are having an important effect on waste management in Merseyside and Halton. Firstly, there is a limited supply of brownfield land and other land suitable for employment uses. This also has an impact on the availability of sites for waste management allocations. This is particularly the case for larger sites which would be suitable for sub-regional size facilities which are in direct competition with strategic employment and regeneration sites. This has had an impact on land availability for waste management uses in all districts, as they are planning for employment growth over the Plan period.

2.14 Secondly, due to the underlying geology and aquifers being highly sensitive to pollution, the sub-region is severely constrained in terms of potential locations for future landfill sites. The majority of the sub-region is classed as major aquifer, with limited areas being afforded any kind of protection by drift geology, such as boulder clay. There are significant groundwater protection issues associated with landfill activity, and the Environment Agency will not permit landfill sites to be developed where this is likely to be an issue, or where the effects cannot be adequately mitigated for.

2.15 Thirdly, much of the landfill activity has occurred in areas where quarrying or mining has already taken place. These opportunities are now very limited in Merseyside and Halton. Only two active minerals quarries remain, both of which are constrained by underlying major aquifer and other geological issues.

Transport Infrastructure and Movement of Waste

2.16 The transport infrastructure for the sub-region is diverse, offering excellent connectivity to the rest of the UK and beyond. The River Mersey and its ports remain major economic drivers for the sub-region and its economic regeneration and provides an opportunity to transport waste between dock and wharf facilities by a generally more sustainable means than offered by road transport. This depends on many factors including distances travelled and loading facilities. There is also access to the canal network including Manchester Ship Canal, Leeds-Liverpool Canal and Bridgewater Canal. Transportation is a key consideration in the Sustainability Appraisal (SA) conducted to inform the preparation of the Waste DPD.



2.17 The motorway network includes the M62, M57, M58 and M6 linking to a network of "A" roads into and around the sub-region. Plans are well advanced for the second Mersey Gateway crossing between Widnes and Runcorn, which will both improve the sub-regional road infrastructure and create and utilise large quantities of construction, demolition and excavation waste. Currently, the majority of waste produced in the sub-region is transported on the road network alone.

2.18 The national West Coast Mainline branches into the Liverpool Lime Street Terminus Station. Electrification of the Liverpool to Manchester and Liverpool to Preston lines is expected to commence during 2011. There are goods rail termini located at Knowsley Industrial Park, Sefton, Liverpool and Garston Docks and Mersey Gateway, Widnes and Weston Docks, Runcorn. There are rail connections to the docks with potential to re-open old goods lines. There are long term plans to develop an inter-modal rail freight depot at Parkside in St.Helens. In the long term, these present opportunities to move waste by rail rather than by road.

2.19 Liverpool John Lennon Airport is situated at the boundary between Liverpool, Knowsley and Halton. It is the second largest airport in the region, and is also an important economic driver for the sub-region. Its growth reflects the importance of the tourism and leisure sectors. Growth of these sectors has a corresponding effect on the generation of commercial waste across the sub-region.

Natural and Heritage Assets and Their Impacts on Waste Activity

2.20 Liverpool City Region has a wealth of European Union (EU) and international nature conservation site designations for its coast and estuaries with international designations covering the Sefton Coast, Mersey Estuary, Dee Estuary, River Alt Estuary, Mersey Narrows and North Wirral Foreshore all of which are protected under UK and EU legislation. In terms of waste management, the conservation value of the Mersey Estuary limits the potential locations and type of waste management facilities due to potential effects on designated natural assets, and these matters have primarily been addressed through the Habitats Regulations Assessment process.

2.21 The City of Liverpool has a significant architectural and cultural heritage, and the world renowned Liverpool waterfront was designated UNESCO World Heritage Status in 2004. There are also a number of Listed Buildings & Conservation Areas throughout Liverpool and the wider city region, which are also subject to special legal protection. There should be no direct impact on the heritage assets from waste management activities as a result of the sites and policies within the Waste DPD. Heritage issues have been factored into the site selection process and SA. There is national and local policy in place to protect areas of heritage value.

Current Focus of Waste Management Activity in the Sub-region

2.22 Whilst many small scale local waste management facilities are relatively widespread across the sub-region within existing business areas, industrial estates or the Port Estate, current waste-related activities have tended to focus in the following broad areas:

- In Halton, the Widnes waterfront is identified as a key area for regeneration. This fits well with the existing pattern of waste activity which is focused around the Widnes Industrial Estates and waterfront, but there are major energy users located on both sides of the river.
- Most of the current waste activity in Knowsley is focused around Knowsley Industrial Park to the north, and Huyton Business Park which sits at the junction of the M62/M57 motorways.
- Waste activities in Liverpool are largely focused around the dockland areas to the north of the city centre, but some small clusters of activity exist in other employment areas, particularly Gillmoss, which is a strategic location for Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority, as well as Garston Industrial areas.
- Within Sefton, the majority of current waste activity is located in Bootle and the port area, although there are some strategic and small scale facilities which serve Southport and other towns to the north of the district.



- Historically, many of Merseyside's landfill sites have been located in St.Helens. Existing built waste management facilities are concentrated in central St.Helens and Earlestown.
- In Wirral, most of the current waste-related activities are focused around the industrial dockland areas by the River Mersey, in Wallasey and Birkenhead. Other smaller scale facilities serve local needs across the district, with a small cluster at Tarran Industrial Estate in Moreton.

Progress with Local Development Frameworks in the Merseyside and Halton

2.23 Sub-regional plans such as the Waste DPD must be consistent with national and regional policy. It must contribute to achieving the goals of the Waste Strategy for England and the Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) for the North West whilst dealing with local priorities. The Coalition Government intends to abolish RSS through the implementation of the Localism Bill. However, it is still not clear when the Localism Bill will be introduced, and RSS was still extant at the time of producing the Publication Version. The North West region was preparing a single Regional Strategy, and had produced a significant amount of supporting evidence. It is understood that this evidence can still be used to support LDFs, post introduction of the Localism Bill, and the waste-related evidence has been used to support the needs assessment and policy positions in this Waste DPD. The Waste DPD covers the issues addressed by the RSS, and therefore, will still be relevant when RSS is finally abolished.

2.24 Halton Council consulted on its Core Strategy Publication Development Plan Document in November 2010. The Publication document was submitted to the Secretary of State in May 2011 with adoption anticipated in early 2012. The focus for regeneration is at the 3MG site in Ditton, West Runcorn and South Widnes.

2.25 Knowsley Council is in the process of developing its Core Strategy, and consulted on its Preferred Options report during Summer 2011. The focus for economic and employment regeneration remains within Knowsley Industrial and Business Parks, Huyton Business Park and South Prescot.

2.26 Liverpool Council consulted on the Preferred Options for its Core Strategy DPD in February 2010. Inner north Liverpool remains an area for significant growth and development, especially the area defined as the Atlantic Gateway Strategic Investment Area (SIA), where there remain significant areas of vacant, former industrial land and buildings with low grade uses set in a poor environment.

2.27 Sefton Council is in the early stages of developing its Core Strategy Development Plan Document, and consulted on its Core Strategy Options Report during Summer 2011. Economic and employment activity will continue to be focused in primarily industrial areas and other strategic sites.

2.28 St.Helens Council submitted its Core Strategy Publication Document in June 2011. This indicated that the focus for new economic development will be Haydock and the town centre. The former Parkside Colliery is identified as a site for a strategic regional Inter-modal Freight Park. Construction of a new rugby stadium is underway, and work has also commenced on urban villages at Lea Green Colliery, Moss Nook and Vulcan Works.

2.29 Wirral Council published the Preferred Options Report for its Core Strategy DPD consultation in November 2010. A Draft Core Strategy is expected to be approved for consultation towards the end of 2011, with a target date for adoption of late 2012. Much of Wirral's regeneration activities will focus around the long term development at Wirral Waters, and associated development around the dock areas.

Current Waste Management Planning Policy

2.30 Halton, Knowsley, Liverpool, St.Helens, Sefton and Wirral Councils all have a number of waste policies within existing UDPs, which will be replaced entirely once the Waste DPD is adopted. Most of these policies have been saved by the Secretary of State to enable their continued use until DPD policies come into force. The number, detail and effectiveness of the policies varies from district to district which is one of the reasons why a sub-regional Waste DPD is being produced. The policies which will be replaced once the Waste DPD is adopted are shown in the following table.



Table 2.1 Existing 'Saved' Waste UDP Policies which will be Replaced by Waste DPD Policies upon Adoption

| District | Waste Policy Reference | Date UDP Adopted | Waste Policies Saved |
|-----------|--|--------------------|--|
| Halton | MW2, MW3, MW6, MW7, MW8, MW9, MW10, MW11, MW12, MW13, MW14, MW15, MW16, MW17, MW18 | 7th April 2005 | Saved by Secretary of State (SoS) Direction beyond 6th April 2009 |
| Knowsley | MW4, MW5, MW6 | June 2006 | SoS Direction has indicated that all waste policies saved beyond June 2009 |
| Liverpool | EP3, EP4, EP5, EP6, EP7, EP8, EP9, EP10 | 13th November 2002 | Liverpool City Council saved all UDP policies in 2007 (except for 4 non waste policies). |
| St.Helens | WD1, WD2 (Policies WD3 & S11 deleted) | 2nd July 1998 | Saved for 3 years from 27th September 2007 |
| Sefton | EMW1, EMW2, EMW4, EMW5, EMW6, EMW7, EMW8, EMW9 | 29th June 2006 | All policies saved beyond June 2009 |
| Wirral | WMT1, WMT2, WM1, WM2, WM3, WM4, WM5, WM6, WM7, WM8, WM9, WM10 | February 2000 | Only WMT1 and WM10 did not remain in force beyond 27th September 2007. |

Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority and the Joint Municipal Waste Management Strategy

2.31 Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA) is responsible for arranging for the disposal and recycling of household waste which is collected by the individual districts of Merseyside. It also provides 14 Household Waste Recycling Centres throughout Merseyside. MWDA operates its activities through three procurement contracts, as follows:

- Recycling Contract;
- Interim Landfill Contract;
- Resource Recovery Contract.

2.32 The recycling contract is held by Veolia Environmental Services and procures recycling activity including operation of the HWRCs, WTSs and MRFs. The activities at these sites has been taken into account in the Needs Assessment, as have recently consented operations, such as the MRF at Gillmoss which is due to become operational later in 2011. The interim landfill contract was awarded to WRG and procures landfill capacity at the WRG site at Arpley Landfill in Warrington. This has been counted as local capacity within the Needs Assessment as it is contracted. The Resource Recovery Contract falls under the Private Finance Initiative with £90M secured from the Government for this purpose. MWDA announced in 2010, that the two final bidders for the contract are Covanta and Sita. Covanta intend to build an Energy from Waste (EfW) facility at the Resource Recovery Park at Ince, Cheshire which will handle the waste from this contract and others. Sita intend to use an EfW facility in Teeside for this purpose, and is currently exploring waste transfer stations associated with railheads. The final timetable for letting this contract is not yet decided.

2.33 MWDA is currently in the process of reviewing its Joint Municipal Waste Management Strategy (JMWMS). It consulted on the Draft JMWMS during Summer 2011. The JMWMS takes account of the activities of the recycling contract, but does not cover dealing with residual waste as this is covered by either the Landfill or the Resource Recovery contracts referred to in 3.32 above.

2.2 Updating the Needs Assessment, Capacity Gaps and Site Requirements

2.34 The evidence base⁶ and needs assessment has been updated several times during the process of developing the Waste DPD, and has enabled refinement of the capacity⁶ figures and number of sites required.

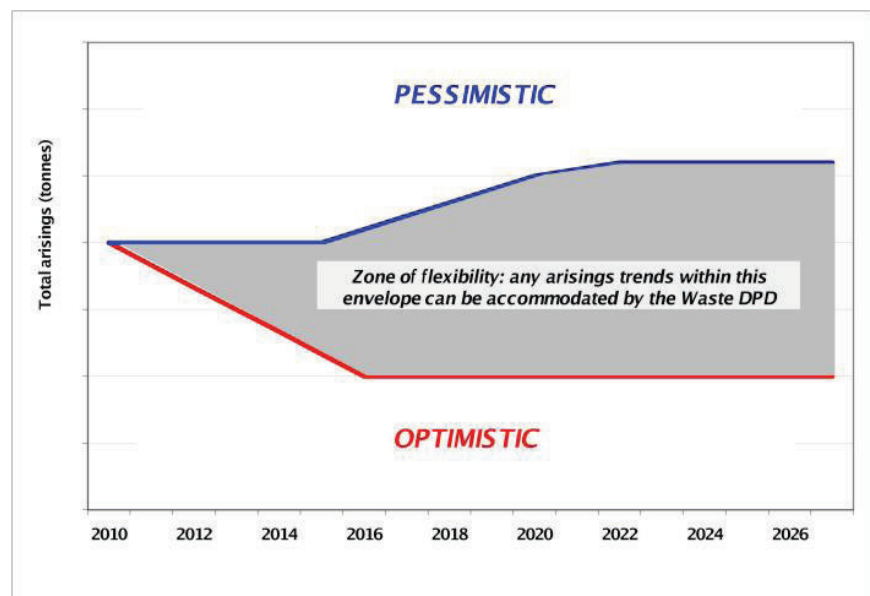
2.35 The process of forecasting waste capacity needs and therefore the number of sites required is complex and influenced by a number of factors including:

- Continuing legislative and other change which have the scope to affect waste management in the way the landfill tax accelerator has done since 2006;
- Incomplete data about arisings, capacity, etc. which mean we have imperfect knowledge of how the waste sector operates;
- Uncertainty about the future availability of landfill capacity as many of the North West's largest sites are near the end of their consented periods and there is no guarantee that extensions will be granted;
- The limited scope of the planning system to influence the activities and priorities of the commercial waste sector which accounts for the majority of waste management functions in Merseyside, Halton and the rest of the North West;
- Effects of sustainable consumption and production initiatives, particularly in terms of reducing waste creation, which will start to have an increased effect in the first 5 years of the adopted Waste DPD.
- Effects of recession on business output and household budgets, in terms of their immediate effect on waste arisings, together with uncertainty about when a recovery might begin and what it will do to waste arisings; and,
- Effects of recession on the ability of waste companies to secure the investment needed to build treatment and recycling facilities and its effect on the phasing of delivery of new capacity.

Figure 2.1 Envelope of uncertainty

2.36 In the light of these uncertainties it would be inappropriate to plan capacity and site requirements on a single 'best estimate' which is both inflexible and which might be invalidated by a significant change to any one, or a combination, of the factors listed above. Instead the needs assessment predicts an 'envelope' of waste management needs. For each of the four principal waste streams:

- An upper bound forecast (referred to as '*pessimistic*') assumes the maximum realistic growth rate we might expect for each stream. It represents a greater waste challenge because larger tonnages of waste need to be managed. It also assumes lower rates of recycling and treatment and therefore a greater reliance on landfill capacity which is both locally scarce and an unsustainable waste management option. Whereas;
- A lower bound ('*optimistic*') forecast assumes, in most cases, a gentle drop in arisings over at least the first half of the current decade due to the combined effect of recession and waste minimisation initiatives identified. It assumes all recently consented facilities will enter service in line with current information about the phasing of delivery of new capacity; and that higher but not over-ambitious rates of recycling and landfill diversion will be achieved.





2.37 This approach enables the Waste DPD to be flexible and that it has the scope to accommodate unforeseen changes. The '*optimistic*' forecast therefore represents the desirable outcome of implementing its Vision and Strategic Objectives, while the '*pessimistic*' forecast represents a "Plan B" which identifies what the Waste DPD may need to deliver if things do not go according to plan. Any future combination of circumstances which results in waste arisings growth between the '*optimistic*' and '*pessimistic*' bounds can therefore be accommodated by the Waste DPD – this is the '*Zone of Flexibility*' referred to in Figure 2.1.

2.38 The dates and sources of the data which this assessment draws are summarised in Table 2.1:

Table 2.2 Date and Source of Data

| Stream | Date | Source | Released |
|--------------------|-----------|--|---------------|
| Municipal | 2009/2010 | Defra | November 2010 |
| Commercial | 2009 | Environment Agency North West | March 2010 |
| Industrial | | | |
| Construction, etc. | 2006 | North West Regional Technical Advisory Body (RTAB) | July 2007 |
| Hazardous | 2009 | Environment Agency | January 2011 |

2.39 The evidence base takes 2010 as the base year for forecasts and is based on the most recent data in all cases. Due to its age, assumptions about management of construction wastes has been updated with reference to a more recent report issued by WRAP (2008 data) and as a result of discussions with representatives of the local waste management sector.

2.40 One final, key assumption is the approach taken to assessing capacity. Any management capacity that has received planning consent is included in the assessment, even where work has yet to start on building the facility. This is referred to as 'pipeline' capacity and has been monitored in the following ways:

- In addition to industry liaison meetings, such as the Waste DPD Technical Advisory Group (TAG), periodic meetings with the relevant consent-holders have been held to ensure the most up-to-date assessment about the phasing of delivery of this capacity is used;
- Where the consent-holder already has contracts in place (or at an advance stage of negotiation) to manage wastes from outside Merseyside and Halton (eg. the Ineos Chlor facility at Runcorn) the long-term capacity available is reduced proportionally in the needs assessment model.

2.41 The Needs Assessment report which was finalised in June 2011 is presented in support of the Publication Waste DPD. It summarises the approach, principal assumptions and conclusions. The Needs Assessment report prepared at the Preferred Options stage is also available as a supporting document and provides some additional detail on the approach taken and assumptions used, though the forecasts it contains have been superseded by those based on the newer data referred to above.

2.3 Summary of Needs Assessment

Local Authority Collected Waste

2.42 The term Local Authority Collected Waste⁶ (LACW, previously known as Municipal Solid Waste or MSW) is generally used in this report but references to MSW will be found in some figures, tables etc. The new term Local Authority Collected Waste was introduced in order to align UK terminology with that required by the EU Waste Framework Directive. All detail in this section refers to LACW originating in Merseyside and Halton which is managed in accordance with the Joint Municipal Waste Management Strategy (JMWMS)⁶ by District Waste Collection Authorities and Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA). Halton has a separate Waste Management Strategy but its work is integrated with the rest of Merseyside and Halton's and its Waste Disposal Authority is a member of the Merseyside Waste Partnership.



How much waste will we have to manage?

2.43 Over the past decade the annual growth rate in LACW arisings has decreased steadily:

- 2000-2005/6: 3% to begin with but falling to around 1% by the end of this period;
- 2006/7-2008/9 (3 years): a small fall in arisings, followed by another 1% increase and then a second 2% fall;
- 2009/10: a 4% drop - this is more significant because it is the first time that arisings have fallen in consecutive years.

2.44 It is not possible to identify how much of the recent fall has resulted from waste minimisation initiatives, and how much reflects decreased household spending as a result of the recession. Fluctuation in arisings in the recent past suggests it is not appropriate to project straight line growth. Also, the recent fall in arisings in successive years suggests that the needs assessment must consider a decline in arisings.

2.45 The pessimistic forecast is adapted from the growth rates stated in the current JMWMS for Merseyside and Halton. These rates have been adjusted slightly to reflect the effects of recession in the period to 2015, a short recovery thereafter and are virtually identical waste arisings to those forecast by the JMWMS from 2020 onwards. This is consistent with the adopted Strategy which is being reviewed at the time this final Needs Assessment was completed.

2.46 The lower bound (red) forecast (see Figure 2.2) is based on assuming the estimated level of collected waste per household in Merseyside and Halton at 2010 falls to the corresponding national average (for England) by 2020. Thereafter the figure remains constant. However, the forecast is adjusted to take account of extra waste generated by new households added over the plan period based on the levels required by the North West Regional Spatial Strategy and the successful housing growth-point bids made by districts within the sub-region. Although the Localism Bill will result in the RSS being abolished the figures represent the best forecast of housing growth on which to base this assessment.

2.47 Table 2.2 sets out the forecast of municipal waste arisings at five yearly intervals.

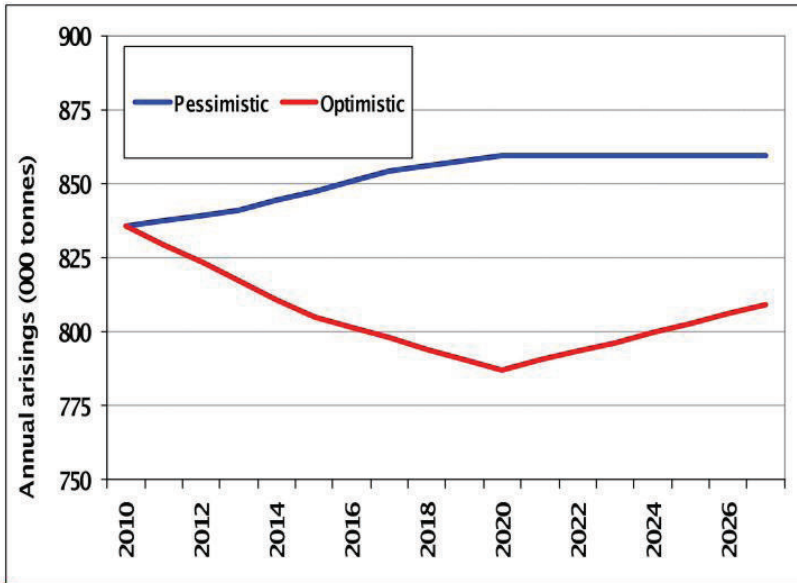
Table 2.3 Comparison of Forecast Local Authority Collected Waste Arisings under Different Growth Scenarios

| All figures are in thousands of tonnes [Source: Merseyside EAS] | | | | | |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|
| Scenario | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 |
| Pessimistic (Short recession) | 836 | 848 | 860 | 860 | 860 |
| Optimistic (Waste reduction) | 836 | 805 | 787 | 803 | 819 |

2.48 Table 2.2 shows that this means a difference between the two forecasts which is at its greatest at 2020 (88,000 tonnes) but the gap closes to around 50,000 tonnes by the end of the plan period in 2027 as a result of an increase in the number of households.

2.49 The forecast envelope for LACW is shown in Figure 2.2 and is based on the two solid-line trends for the upper bound ('pessimistic' - solid blue) and lower bound ('optimistic' - red).

Figure 2.2 MSW growth forecast



Halton.

2.51 In addition to the facilities directly operated or contracted by MWDA, a number of open windrow composting⁶ facilities are operated on a merchant basis which handle both LACW and commercially collected green waste. Recyclable material derived from the MRFs and HWRCs is sent to a wide variety of re-processors⁶ who also operate on a merchant basis.

Capacity Gap Implications for LACW

2.52 Once the RRC PFI contract has been awarded, most residual⁶ waste will be managed through the RRC. The revised JMWMS indicates a small amount of residual waste will continue to go to landfill and this is included in the capacity need referred to later in this section, but there will be no capacity gap for residual waste requiring treatment.

2.53 However a key forthcoming issue is that it is difficult to see how individual districts can meet the national 2020 target to recycle or compost 50% of household wastes without collecting food wastes and new facilities will be needed to handle this material.

2.54 In order to meet ongoing recycling, composting and landfill diversion targets set out in the 2011 revisions of both the JMWMS and Waste Strategy for England, MWDA is forecast to need an additional MRF and up to three food waste composting facilities, although some of this capacity could be managed for both LACW and commercial wastes. The forecast capacity gaps and phasing of these requirements is shown in Figures 2.8 and 2.9.

Commercial & Industrial Waste

How much waste will we have to manage?

2.55 The growth trends for the commercial & industrial waste streams over the last 10 years are very different. Commercial wastes have risen at a rate of around 2% annually while industrial wastes have declined at almost double this rate. These trends are believed to reflect the re-structured sub-regional economy which is increasingly dominated by the service sector while heavy industry and manufacturing have declined. The latter cannot continue indefinitely but, equally, commercial activity will be affected by a greater reliance on electronic business, reducing physical waste, and by the current recession.

Commercial Wastes

How Much Capacity for Managing Local Authority Collected Waste Do We Have?

2.50 Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA) is managing LACW through three main contracts. Recycling contract - this was awarded to Veolia in 2008, and involves operation and management of 14 Household Waste Recycling Centres (HWRCs), 4 waste transfer stations (WTS) and 2 Materials Recycling Facilities (MRFs). Interim landfill contract - this was awarded to WRG also in 2008. Waste is currently exported to Arpley Landfill in Warrington under contract until 2015, after which most residual waste will be diverted from landfill via the Resource Recovery Contract (RRC). The RRC is currently planned to be awarded in 2012, and will deal with waste in both Merseyside and

2.56 The size, composition and management methods for both waste streams were surveyed in 2006 and 2009 with results available for Merseyside and Halton separately, though they are amalgamated here. The most recent data suggests that commercial wastes still grew at almost 2% annually between 2006 and 2009 even though the economy was in recession for almost half of this period. Following discussion with the local waste management sector through the Waste DPD Technical Advisory Group (TAG), it was concluded that this apparent rate could not be used as the basis for forecasting the base forecast growth as it was considered too optimistic for either the optimistic or pessimistic scenario in the short-term. The TAG also advised that:

- Recovery from recession is unlikely to start before 2015;
- The forecast needs to reflect the effect of extension of the Courtauld Agreement, the Producer Responsibility Regulations, etc. on waste creation rates. This is likely to result in a reduction in arisings over part of the period until 2020. The optimistic scenario forecasts that these effects will last longer and the eventual increase in arisings as a result of economy recovery will be shallower than that assumed for the pessimistic scenario.

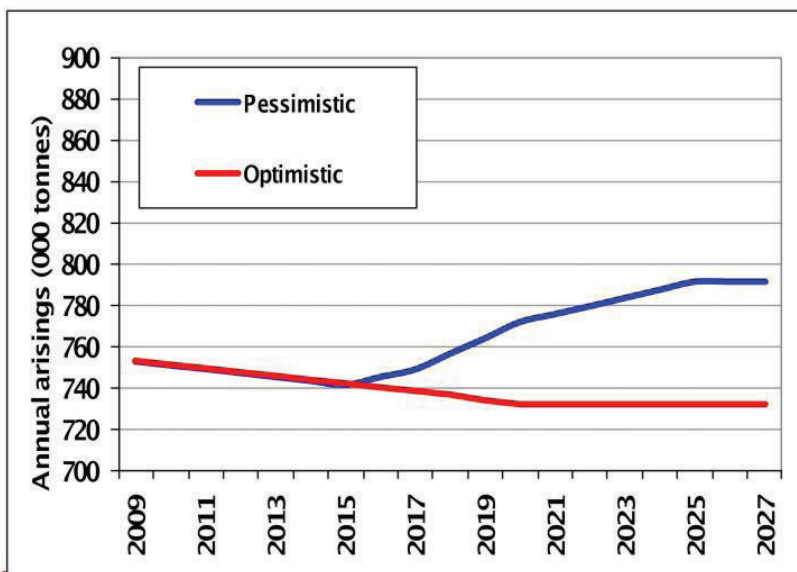
2.57 It was also recognised that Merseyside and Halton has a higher than average level of employment in the public sector, which is undergoing significant reduction in scale, budgets and employment. As that sector contributes a substantial proportion of “commercial” wastes these effects will also depress arisings growth in both scenarios.

2.58 Table 2.3 sets out the forecast of Commercial Waste arisings at five yearly intervals for both the optimistic and pessimistic scenarios. The optimistic scenario shows a reduction in commercial waste arisings over the plan period with the pessimistic scenario showing a decline and then an increase in arisings.

Table 2.4 Comparison of Forecast Arisings under Different Growth Scenarios for Commercial Waste

| All figures in thousand of tonnes [source Merseyside EAS] | | | | | |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|
| Scenario | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 |
| Pessimistic (recession/rebound) | 751 | 742 | 772 | 791 | 791 |
| Optimistic (waste reduction) | 751 | 742 | 733 | 733 | 733 |

Figure 2.3 Commercial Waste growth forecast



2.59 Industrial Wastes

2.60 As stated previously, the 2009 survey results suggest industrial wastes continued to fall as the recession took hold rather than as a result of re-structuring of the regional economy. The needs assessment assumes that any further decline will end after 2013 because the rate of business closures or reduction of manufacturing capacity will have slowed or been replaced by corresponding new facilities which will generate some wastes. This trend is taken as the basis of the optimistic scenario though this might still be seen as conservative in that no overt account is taken of the additional effect of waste minimisation.

2.61 The recent historical fall in industrial wastes creates difficulties for defining the pessimistic scenario. Following discussion with representatives of the local waste management sector

it was concluded that the forecast envelope would not offer sufficient flexibility if it also assumed some decline, and is implausible that a future increase in arisings would occur. Therefore the pessimistic scenario assumes that no further change in industrial waste arisings occurs.

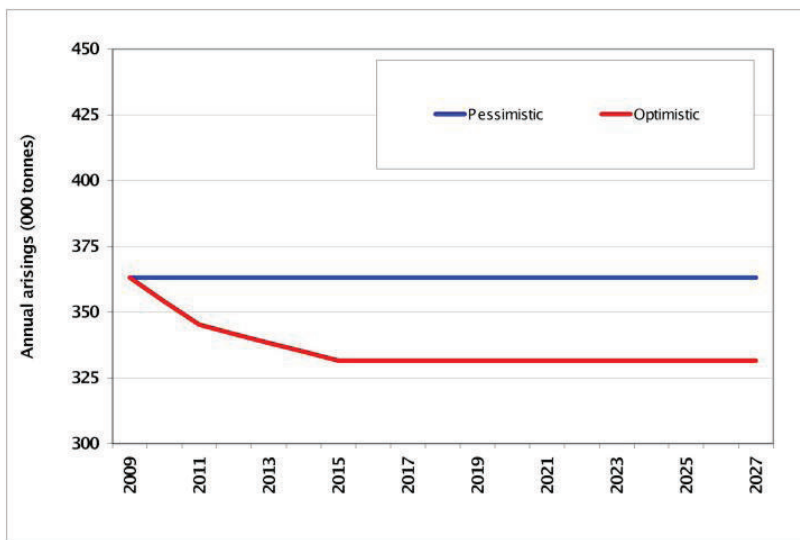
2.62 Table 2.4 shows the forecast of industrial arisings for both optimistic and pessimistic scenarios.

Table 2.5 Comparison of Forecast Arisings under Different Growth Scenarios for Industrial Waste

| All figures in thousand of tonnes [source Merseyside EAS] | | | | | |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|
| Scenario | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 |
| Pessimistic (zero growth) | 363 | 363 | 363 | 363 | 363 |
| Optimistic (short recession) | 354 | 331 | 331 | 331 | 331 |

2.63 This is illustrated in figure 2.4.

Figure 2.4 Industrial waste forecast



How Much Existing Capacity for Managing Commercial & Industrial Waste Do We Have?

2.64 Merseyside and Halton are well served by MRFs⁶ and WTSs⁶, although these are generally on a smaller scale than those operated by MWDA. There are a number of privately operated open windrow composting facilities and a plethora of re-processors which serve both the commercial and industrial sectors, as well as taking municipal wastes. The sub-region's sole existing primary treatment facility for handling mixed residual waste (Orchid Environmental in Huyton) closed in Summer 2011, however there are existing permissions for four other plants, each of which has a capacity of 135,000 tonnes per annum, or greater.

2.65 Merseyside and Halton also have a substantial capacity for thermal treatment with more than 1,500,000 te per annum provided by four facilities. More than half of this capacity is provided by Ineos Chlor's plant at Runcorn (Halton) which was at a moderately advanced stage of construction at the time the needs assessment was completed. However half of the planned capacity is already earmarked to manage wastes originating in Greater Manchester and Cheshire, although this still leaves close to 400,000 te of capacity uncontracted.

2.66 At the time the Needs Assessment was completed work was yet to begin preparing the sites for the other three facilities, however meetings have been held periodically with the site operators to keep up to date on plans in terms of when capacity will be available and how much might be available to manage wastes from Merseyside and Halton.

2.67 There is non-inert landfill void space available at Lyme and Wood Pit Landfill until June 2012, after which its planning consent expires. At the time the Needs Assessment was completed, St.Helens Council was awaiting the site operator to submit proposals for managing the completion of the site and its restoration to a country park. However, as this information is outstanding the Needs Assessment cannot assume that the site will supply further void space after that date.

Capacity Gap Implications for Commercial and Industrial Wastes



2.68 The largest capacity shortfall for commercial and industrial wastes is for non-inert landfill. The capacity gap figures are shown in table 2.7, this includes only a small element of LACW in the form of incinerator bottom ash⁶ (IBA), counted in annual capacity figures post 2015. There is also a need for food waste composting facilities which could be shared for LACW and commercial requirements. There is also a marginal need for a small-scale thermal treatment facility to manage industrial waste and which might also contribute to local demand for energy and heat.

Construction, Demolition & Excavation Waste (CD&E)

How much CD&E Waste will we have to manage?

2.69 Historically this has been the most difficult waste stream to forecast accurately. National survey data suggests the waste industry is delivering good, sustainable management practices with about 50% of arisings recycled or re-used at source; around 12% spread on land for landscaping or other improvements; and a correspondingly low rate of landfill disposal. However one problem of this situation is that the quantity of waste recycled at source or spread on land is not recorded for waste management licensing purposes, making it difficult to monitor total waste arisings and any further improvement landfill diversion rates.

2.70 The 2006 regional survey of CD&E waste (NWR TAB July 2007) was compromised by a lack of data on waste arisings, and by other aspects of the data collection and analytical approach. Following various checks and adjustments, the need assessment has estimated around 2.4 million te of these wastes were created at that time. Subsequent growth projections have been based on discussion with representatives of the local waste management industry, specifically certain companies that principally handle inert construction wastes.

2.71 Both optimistic and pessimistic scenarios reflect their advice that this part of the waste industry began to contract rapidly as early as 2007, in contrast to the preceding part of that decade which had seen a major phase of regeneration and other projects and an annual increase in CD&E wastes of between 2% and 3% of an already very large total.

2.72 The local waste management industry has advised that there are few signs of any recovery in the near future; and offered a very conservative view that the sector is very unlikely to return to the levels of waste creation seen in the middle of the last decade. One influence specific to Merseyside is the prolonged effect of cuts to public sector expenditure which will affect urban regeneration projects - including those for housing and schools - that made a significant contribution to CD&E waste arisings before recession began.

2.73 The effect of major development proposals such as Wirral Waters, Liverpool Waters, and the second Mersey Crossing, will help to drive the level of arisings upwards in the longer term. However both of the dockland regeneration projects will have development timescales of 30-40 years due to their scale and phasing, and this is reflected in the assumption of a gentle increase in CD&E waste stream. It is also important to recognise that the needs assessment does not assume cessation of construction activity, but that it will be at a lower intensity than that before the recession began, and that it also reflects the effects of better management and re-use of arisings through Site Waste Management Plans and waste audits for smaller sites.

2.74 The pessimistic scenario assumes that these projects will result in a gentle but steady increase in arisings starting in 2013/4, reflecting the timelines proposed for the larger developments. It also assumes that this will persist through the rest of the plan period given the duration of these projects. The optimistic scenario is based on similar assumptions except that arisings will not begin to grow again for a further two years and the rate of growth will be lower. In both cases the total arisings predicted for the end of the plan period are still below that estimated from the 2006 regional survey, reflecting the local waste industry's advice as well as recent market and economic conditions.

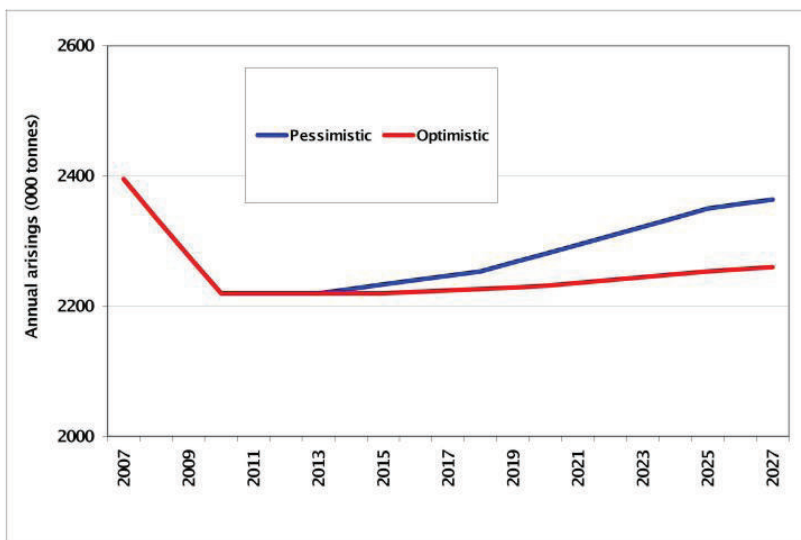
2.75 Table 2.5. sets out the forecast for CD&E waste arisings at five yearly intervals for the Plan period. The final column shows the effect of taking a more conservative view of long-term growth prospects on future arisings, which has been informed through local waste industry liaison. Neither scenario assumes arisings will rise above the pre-recession level of around 2.4 million te.

Table 2.6 Comparison of Forecast Arisings under Different Growth Scenarios for CDE Waste

| All figures are in thousands of tonnes [Source: Merseyside EAS] | | | | | |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|
| Scenario | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 |
| Pessimistic (shorter recession) | 2220 | 2233 | 2280 | 2336 | 2385 |
| Optimistic (deeper recession) | 2220 | 2220 | 2231 | 2253 | 2270 |

2.76 This is illustrated in Figure 2.5 which shows the forecast envelope for CD&E wastes. The limited spread of the two bounds reflects feedback that was received from the local waste sector that arisings are unlikely to exceed pre-recession levels for the reasons stated above.

Figure 2.5 CDE waste forecast



How Much Existing Capacity For Managing CDE Waste Do We Have?

2.77 There are over 60 transfer stations with combined capacity of about 1,290,000 tonnes. Some of these deal only with CD&E wastes. There are a further 3 sites located in Simonswood Industrial Estate, West Lancashire, which are known to receive waste from Merseyside, but whose capacity has not been included in the Needs Assessment.

2.78 The non-inert fraction of CD&E waste such as insulation materials, uPVC etc. requires non-inert landfill capacity which is still available at Lyme and Wood Pit Landfill. Some inert waste may also be deposited at non-inert landfill as daily cover, for landfill engineering purposes, or to fill void space⁶ where excess void space exists.

2.79 There are two sites with consent to receive inert waste both existing mineral sites overlying major aquifers. The total void space available is approximately 3.5 million m³, but this depends on continuing mineral extraction at both sites.

Capacity Gap Implications for CD&E Waste

2.80 The only implications for capacity relate to landfill. From an inert landfill perspective this relates to rate of mineral extraction. For the non-inert fraction of CD&E waste, this relies on non-inert landfill once all material that can be recycled or recovered has been exhausted

Hazardous Waste

2.81 A different approach has to be adopted for these materials because the hazardous waste management sector is organised to provide a regional and national network of facilities, whereas capacity for the other streams is largely provided by each sub-region, or sometimes by larger regionally significant facilities. This results in a large proportion of locally produced hazardous waste leaving Merseyside and Halton because the specialised facilities need to recycle, treat or dispose of it exist elsewhere in the country. However this is balanced by a

corresponding movement of a large quantity of hazardous wastes into the sub-region to those specialised facilities that exist locally. The waste management need is therefore the sum of locally-arising wastes that remain in the sub-region plus those that are imported.

2.82 Note also that the arisings totals for the other main waste streams have been reduced to take account of the hazardous proportion of each of them in order to eliminate the risk of double-counting around 160,000 te of these materials.

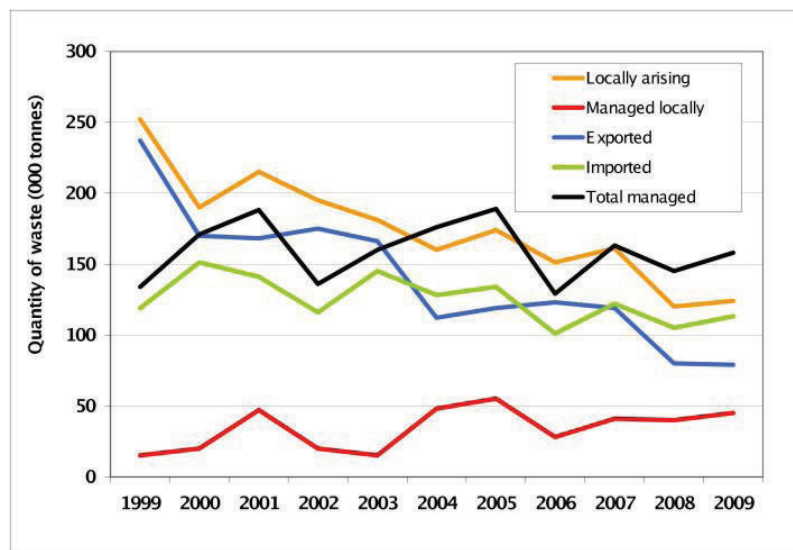
How Much Hazardous Waste Will We Have to Manage?

2.83 Again, the approach adopted here is slightly different to the other streams because the management need must reflect the relative proportions of locally managed arisings, imports and exports, and the trends in each.

2.84 In 2004/5 there were a series of significant regulatory changes to the definition of hazardous wastes and how they should be managed. While these changes caused some problems with the quality of data, they had limited effect on the medium-term trends. These are summarised in Figure 2.6 and were already somewhat erratic, with marked changes from year to year. Nevertheless there are clear trends of falling quantities in all of them apart from the amount of waste that arises and is managed locally, which has risen slightly over the last decade.

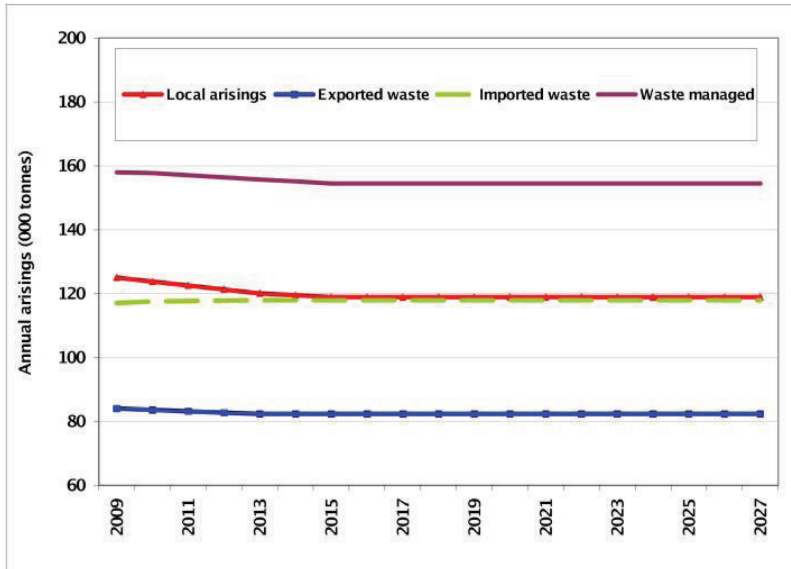
2.85 This has led us to adopt a forecast with limited further change in all the elements of the management need, and to consider there is little need to model separate pessimistic and optimistic forecasts.

Figure 2.6 Historical trends in arisings of hazardous waste



2.86 Figure 2.6 illustrates the main assumption of slight further reduction in local arisings and therefore the quantity of waste that is exported. With little change to the quantity that is imported, the total management need falls only slightly from 158,000 te in 2010 to 154,000 te by 2015 and thereafter. Meanwhile Figure 2.7 extends the rather erratic recent 'history' as a series of smoother trends which assume the relative quantities of local arisings, exports and imports do not change after 2015. This approach assumes that the legislative changes designed to reduce use of hazardous materials in products and components will have taken around 10 years to complete their effect.

Figure 2.7 Hazardous waste arisings forecast



How Much Capacity for Managing Hazardous Waste Do We Have?

2.87 There are a number of hazardous waste transfer stations with a combined capacity of 425,000 te annually including tank cleaning and similar wastes and handling clinical/health care wastes. There are also a number of re-processors specialising in hazardous waste with approximately two thirds of the 735,000 te of annual capacity provided by three facilities which recover waste oils & solvents shipped from all over the UK. The only hazardous waste landfill is Ineos Chlor's Randlelsland site, which primarily takes waste from the company owned plants, but is now functioning as a merchant facility. This site has an annual capacity of 220,000 te.

2.88 In addition to the landfill site above, hazardous waste originating in Merseyside and Halton is currently taken to three other regionally/nationally significant facilities:

- Whitemoss Landfill, Skemersdale (West Lancashire);
- Hazardous Waste Incinerator at Ellesmere Port (Cheshire West);
- Minosus deep, long-term storage facility, Winsford (Cheshire West).

Managing Other Controlled Wastes

Agricultural Wastes

2.89 Merseyside EAS estimated the quantity of agricultural wastes at 19,000tonnes, based on results of a sub-regional survey undertaken in early 2007. This estimate is based on a bottom-up survey and there is reason to expect it is reasonably accurate as it is based on responses from farm holdings which represent almost 20% of the agricultural land in Merseyside and Halton.

2.90 The survey shows that less than 10% of wastes are “non-natural”, such as plastics, silage wrap, machinery, waste oils, and pesticides. The rest was straw or organic slurry of some form, all of which is disposed at source, normally by land spreading or a similar activity.

2.91 The quantity of “non-natural” wastes is therefore an extremely small proportion of total controlled wastes created in the sub-region and the examples above show that the materials are diverse and will need to be managed and disposed in a variety of ways. Given the wastes will also be of low value and arisings will be scattered in small quantities across the sub-region, it appears unlikely that developing a special central facility to handle such small quantities of waste would be economically viable.

2.92 The Waste DPD therefore takes the position that some of these wastes, such as oils, could be managed in existing waste management facilities, and that any proposal to develop a centralized facility to handle other materials would come through the planning system on an unallocated site that would be evaluated using appropriate policies in the Waste DPD.

2.93 Consequently the Needs Assessment did not review agricultural waste arisings in further detail or make specific provision for locations to manage such a small quantity of diverse residual waste, as this can be managed with other C&I waste.

Radioactive Wastes



2.94 The quantity of low and very low level radioactive waste has been estimated from radioactive waste arisings data provided by the Environment Agency for 2006. The analysis indicated arisings (actually disposals) of waste totalling 3,260 Becquerels, however it has not been possible to convert this into a corresponding tonnage which needs to be managed.

2.95 Low and very-low level wastes are primarily material from clinical treatment (eg. x-ray plates, etc.) and associated machinery although the records do not allow estimation of the materials involved. Virtually all the material (>99%) is generated by hospitals with the remainder created by industry (0.4%) and academic facilities (0.1%).

2.96 Currently, all of the material is disposed along with other non-hazardous materials, with virtually all the waste (99.7%) being disposed to sewer, with minute quantities sent to a hazardous waste site for incineration or burial.

2.97 As only very small quantities are involved and in the light of the way they are currently regulated and disposed, and it is reasonable to assume that the level of arisings will remain roughly constant throughout the plan period, and there is little reason to suspect legislative changes or economic conditions will cause any significant change to these quantities. Therefore it is not evident that new methods for disposing of these materials will require extra capacity or land for facilities and therefore they are not considered in further detail by the Needs Assessment or the Waste DPD.

2.98 Waste Water Treatment Wastes

2.99 Responsibility for managing water treatment wastes lies with the regional water company, United Utilities (UU), which operates a network of treatment works. The Waste DPD has a supporting role to identify suitable locations for additional infrastructure to enable the company to discharge its responsibilities. However, contact with the company, including its representations to consultations as the Waste DPD was being prepared, have not identified a need for new sites. Therefore the needs assessment and the site allocations do not provide for additional locations.

2.100 However, UU also operate a sewage sludge incinerator at Shell Green, Widnes, which is regionally-significant for the Mersey Belt as it receives waste material from water treatment works in Merseyside and Halton, and by pipeline from Greater Manchester.

2.4 Implications : Sites requirements

Adjusted Site Requirements and Contingencies for Built Facilities

2.101 Figure 2.8 summarises the principal mass balance quantities output forecast for the optimistic scenario, and Figure 2.9 shows the corresponding output for the pessimistic scenario. The figures in black are the capacity gap, not the forecast arisings, any shortfall is shown in red. The figures shown are the result of subtracting the estimated available capacity (from facilities already in service or under development) from the forecasting quantity of arisings that will have to be managed to estimate how much extra capacity will be needed. They also reflect other assumptions about how each waste stream will be managed in the future, including improvements in recycling and re-use, and a reduction in how much is disposed to landfill.

Figure 2.8 Site Requirements - Optimistic Forecast (all data in 000s tonnes)

| Waste managed Stream | Capacity gap forecast | | | | | Facility Facility type | Cap'y (kte) | Facility forecast | | | | | Land | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|--|----------------|-------------------|------|------|------|------|----------|-------|
| | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 | | | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 | Ha./site | Σ Ha. |
| MSW only | -42 | 26 | 18 | 14 | 10 | Waste transfer & sorting: MRF | 100 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 3 |
| | 174 | 185 | 195 | 194 | 193 | Waste transfer & sorting: HWRC | 15 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | 707 | 1006 | 1134 | 1134 | 1134 | Waste transfer & sorting : municipal non-inert WTS | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Pre-treatment (mixed wastes): MBT, etc. | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| | 482 | 411 | 397 | 392 | 387 | Re-processor: dry recyclables | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| Commercial only | 63 | 189 | 117 | 117 | 117 | Pre-treatment (mixed wastes): MBT, etc. | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 3 |
| | 94 | 70 | 48 | 48 | 48 | Pre-treatment (other wastes): specialised facilities | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| MSW & commercial | -37 | -116 | -152 | -154 | -156 | Pre-treatment (food wastes): AD or IVC | 50 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 5 |
| | 0 | 99 | 16 | 8 | 0 | Thermal treatment: MSW | 475 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 7.5 | 0 |
| | 0 | 720 | 828 | 828 | 828 | Thermal treatment: non-municipal waste | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 7.5 | 0 |
| Commercial & industrial | 247 | 220 | 217 | 217 | 217 | Waste transfer & sorting: merchant non-inert WTS | 75 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| | 132 | 139 | 137 | 137 | 137 | Re-processor: specialist materials | 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| Industrial only | 46 | 22 | -1 | -1 | -1 | Pre-treatment (other wastes): specialised facilities | 150 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 3 |
| | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 | Secondary treatment: specialised EFW | 50 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| CD&E | 817 | 670 | 602 | 583 | 574 | Waste transfer & sorting: merchant inert WTS | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| Hazardous | 247 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | Hazardous waste treatment | 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| MSW & commercial | 4 | 14 | 21 | 19 | 18 | Open windrow composting | 25 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2.5 | 0 |





Figure 2.9 Site Requirements - Pessimistic Forecast (all data in 000s tonnes)

| Waste managed | Capacity gap forecast | | | | | Facility | Cap'y (kte) | Facility forecast | | | | | Land Ha./site | Σ Ha. |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|--|-------------|-------------------|------|------|------|------|---------------|-------|
| | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 | | | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 | 2030 | | |
| Stream | 54 | 29 | 16 | 16 | 16 | Waste transfer & sorting: MRF | 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| MSW only | 171 | 187 | 195 | 195 | 195 | Waste transfer & sorting: HWRC | 15 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | 707 | 1006 | 1071 | 1115 | 1134 | Waste transfer & sorting : municipal non-inert WTS | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Pre-treatment (mixed wastes): MBT, etc. | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| | 475 | 420 | 393 | 385 | 385 | Re-processor: dry recyclables | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| Commercial only | 0 | 205 | 179 | 177 | 177 | Pre-treatment (mixed wastes): MBT, etc. | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 3 |
| | 94 | 70 | 60 | 59 | 59 | Pre-treatment (other wastes): specialised facilities | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| MSW & commercial | -37 | -141 | -152 | -153 | -153 | Food waste treatment (IVC, AD, etc.) | 50 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 5 |
| | 0 | 96 | 63 | 19 | 0 | Thermal treatment: municipal | 475 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 7.5 | 0 |
| | 0 | 720 | 878 | 875 | 875 | Thermal: non-municipal | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 7.5 | 0 |
| Commercial & industrial | 243 | 203 | 177 | 166 | 166 | Waste transfer & sorting: merchant non-inert WTS | 75 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| | 128 | 122 | 112 | 108 | 108 | Re-processor: specialist materials | 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| Industrial only | 48 | 19 | 10 | 10 | 10 | Pre-treatment (other wastes): specialised facilities | 150 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 | 11 | Secondary treatment: merchant EFW | 50 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| CD&E | 892 | 745 | 677 | 658 | 649 | Waste transfer & sorting: merchant inert WTS | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 0 |
| Hazardous | 247 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | Hazardous waste treatment | 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | 4 | 13 | -17 | -17 | -17 | Open windrow composting | 25 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 2.5 | 5 |



2.102 The principal divergence between optimistic and pessimistic forecasts occurs in municipal waste, and therefore the forecasts are broadly similar. This is evident in the slight difference in MRF requirements but not for other types of recycling facility where there is existing over-capacity. In other waste streams the differences between the optimistic and pessimistic scenarios occurs after 2015, and therefore occurs after the substantial amount of recently consented capacity is assumed to become operational. This limits the predicted capacity shortfall.

2.103 The only other difference between the two forecasts is the need for food waste composting facilities, with one extra site requirement under the optimistic forecast which assumes a faster roll out of collection services to households.

2.104 Figures 2.8 and 2.9 also indicate the typical capacity assumed for each type of facility and from this an interim estimate of the number and phasing of facilities required can be identified. The site requirement is always based on the largest figure regardless of whether it is from the optimistic or pessimistic scenario. This approach provides flexibility insofar as it ensures the sites brought forward through the Waste DPD process will deliver the capacity regardless of which scenario materialises in the future.

Adjustments to Build Flexibility Into The Site Requirements for Built Facilities

2.105 Before finalising site requirements for built facilities, it is necessary to make a number of adjustments that cannot be easily programmed into the forecast model. Table 2.6 summarises the waste management functions that are affected; the reasons for making the adjustment; and the number of sites that are added.

2.106 Being able to deliver a self sufficient waste plan has been a particularly taxing issue for Merseyside and Halton, and Table 2.6 also includes contingencies to take account of waste movements to and from the sub-region.

Table 2.7 Summary of Flexibility Adjustments to Site Forecast for Built Facilities

| Management Function | Reason for Adjustment | Flexibility Adjustment |
|------------------------|--|---|
| Recycling LACW | MRF capacity will be increased once the Gillmoss facility comes on-stream at the end of 2011 which provides for the extra site. However the top rows in Figures 2.8 and 2.9 show the existing facilities and if recycling performance continues to improve then a capacity gap may develop and it would be prudent to provide flexibility by adding a further site to cover this possible outcome. | Add a further MRF (this could be met by a district-level site) and review need in monitoring the plan. |
| Managing residual LACW | A large quantity of residual LACW may need to be bulked and possibly loaded onto rail or water transport before being sent to the RRC. The requirement for this facility is not certain but if needed it will be part of the infrastructure that MWDA needs to fulfill its waste management obligations and the need for a site should be anticipated. | Add a municipal WTS. The quantity of waste handled means this will be a sub-regional site which will be needed by 2015. |
| Food waste composting | No adjustment, however (as stated) assumed requirements are based on the greater forecast which is from the Optimistic scenario. | 4 small to medium-sized plants but this may be reduced if a larger facility is brought forward. |



| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>Pre-treatment (primary) of residual C&I waste</p> | <p>Figures 2.8 and 2.9 show no extra capacity is needed because recent consents for 300,000 tonnes of treatment capacity at Garston Dock Liverpool and Widnes Waterfront have been taken into account. However these two sites occupy sub-regional site allocations included in the Waste DPD and therefore the requirement for these sites needs to be recognised in the forecast.</p> | <p>Add requirement for 2 pre-treatment facilities to be provided before 2015.</p> |
| <p>Specialised treatment of residual C&I waste</p> | <p>The needs assessment is sufficiently detailed that it assesses the ability of the existing waste management infrastructure to treat the large quantity of C&I waste that is similar in composition to LACW, and the smaller but still substantial quantity of other wastes (metals, chemicals, etc.) that will need to be managed separately. The Optimistic scenario predicts a small shortfall in capacity will occur by 2020 but before that there will only be a small surplus and it is prudent to assume the extra capacity may be required sooner</p> | <p>No additional site but phasing is changed to assume the site may be required earlier (by 2015)</p> |
| <p>Secondary or thermal treatment of C&I waste</p> | <p>The pessimistic forecast identifies a small deficit of this type of capacity relatively late in the plan period, yet there is a significant surplus of capacity taking either heavily or mildly pre-treated waste which persists throughout the plan period. It is not evident that the shortfall reflects a need for special EfW facilities and therefore the forecast addresses this via industry response (and use of a criteria-based policy for such circumstances).</p> | <p>No adjustment of site numbers but base site requirements on the Pessimistic scenario.</p> |
| <p>Hazardous waste treatment or recycling</p> | <p>The extra site forecast by the previous needs assessment was the result of an error in the capacity balance estimates. However, the Waste DPD would lack flexibility if there is no requirement for an additional site given the significant contribution that Merseyside and Halton make to managing these wastes in the UK.</p> | <p>Add one site to be available by 2015 (the site profiles identify those locations in Flood Risk Zone 3 which are unsuitable for this purpose)</p> |
| <p>Non-specific provision to offset waste exported to landfill</p> | <p>The next section presents the forecast landfill requirements which show the sub-region will need to export some residual waste over the whole plan period. In order for the Waste DPD to deliver self-sufficiency net of such movements of waste it is necessary to provide land allocations capable of delivering capacity to recycle, reprocess or manage the same quantity of waste as that which will be exported. This added flexibility supports the plan objective of self-sufficiency and, as the nature of waste use is not defined, it could also enable the deployment of new technologies that might help to reduce sub-regional landfill requirements</p> | <p>Add two facilities of non-specific type (the requirement is likely to be for up to 2 sub-regional facilities under the pessimistic forecast scenario but this capacity could be delivered on three of the larger district-level sites instead). Moreover, Figures 2.8 and 2.9 both forecast surplus capacity in the sub-region's permitted primary and thermal treatment facilities. These sites could also provide the compensatory capacity meaning no additional provision would be needed.</p> |

2.107 Figure 2.10 summarises the total site requirements including the adjustments made in light of the changes in Table 2.6. It highlights only those waste management needs where it is shown that there is a surplus capacity requirement for a particular waste management function. Sites shown as required by 2010 will need to be brought forward as soon as possible in order to replace existing contingencies (such as export to other sub-regions), whereas thereafter, the latest date identifies the year by which the capacity is needed.

Figure 2.10 Adjusted Site Requirements

| Stream | Facility type | 2010 | 2015 | 2020 | 2025 |
|---------------|--|------|------|------|------|
| MSW | MRF | | 1 | | |
| | HWRC | 1 | | | |
| | Bulking prior to delivery to EfW plant | | 1 | | |
| MSW+C&I | Food waste composting | 1 | 2 | 1 | |
| C&I | Primary treatment (mixed waste) | 2 | | | |
| | Treatment (non-mixed waste) | | 1 | | |
| Non-hazardous | Unspecified built facilities | | 2 | | |
| Hazardous | Treatment | | 1 | | |
| | | 4 | 8 | 1 | 0 |

| | |
|---|--|
| Site requirement based on current forecast | |
| Site requirement based on current forecast - adjusted phasing | |
| Site requirement delivered by proposed allocations | |
| Site provided as contingency | |
| Site provided as compensation for landfill exports | |

Landfill Requirements

2.108 A comprehensive survey of active and historic landfill sites within the sub-region was undertaken, looking also at other potentially exploitable brownfield sites identified in the National Land Use Database, as well as current and former mineral working sites. The survey concluded that there are no new sites suitable for non-inert landfill disposal within the sub-region that are deliverable. The survey also identified only a relatively limited number of sites with the potential for development or re-development for the same purpose. The resulting list of sites was evaluated further in terms of land-ownership issues, the willingness of the local planning authority to support the use of each one for landfill disposal, as well as preliminary consideration of the financial and engineering viability of developing and restoring the site.

Capacity Requirements for Non-Inert Landfill

2.109 The sub-region has one operational non-inert, non-hazardous landfill operated by Cory Environmental at Lyme & Wood Pits, Haydock, however the current planning permission for the site expires in June 2012. The operator has submitted details to the Local Planning Authority estimating there will still be a void space of



approximately 760,000m³ when the current permission expires. Any plan for continued operation of the site will have to be reviewed and agreed by the Council, Environment Agency and others. Therefore the availability of capacity after June 2012 cannot be confidently predicted, and is not included in this DPD.

2.110 As a result, the Waste DPD has to adopt a policy position that non-inert, non-municipal residual waste will have to be exported throughout the plan period (ie. to 2027) and possibly beyond. This policy position presents three issues:

- Deliverability [1]: Wastes involved are from non-LACW sources, the details of how and where they are disposed depend on commercial contracts. Waste planning authorities have no control over these contracts and can only influence them by controlling landfill void space through planning permissions. This control can only be used in Merseyside and Halton at the Lyme & Wood Pits site until June 2012.
- Deliverability [2]: Many of the region's landfills are experiencing a decline in deposit rates which means that their permissions will expire before they have been filled. Since Merseyside and Halton is assumed to have no local non-inert landfill capacity after June 2012, the opportunity to export non-inert wastes to landfills elsewhere in the region will be entirely dependent on decisions taken by other sub-regions about whether to extend permits to allow continued exploitation of their residual void space.
- Planning Soundness: In a situation such as this, the Planning Advisory Service and Planning Officer's Society have advised Merseyside EAS that evidence must be provided to substantiate the proposed policy position.

2.111 The Waste DPD cannot provide conclusive evidence that there will be sufficient local void space to meet the forecast because it cannot deliver new non-inert landfill capacity, nor can it guarantee that capacity elsewhere in the region will be available despite seeking specific feedback on this issue from the other waste planning authorities in the North West when consulting on the Preferred Options. However, discussions have been held with the principal landfill operators in the North West, and with other representatives of the regional waste management sector. These discussions have indicated a widespread confirmation that current deposit rates mean that the existing landfills within the region are capable of providing capacity to accommodate the residual waste arising in Merseyside and Halton.

2.112 Non-inert waste going to landfill comprises a range of material including: mixed C&I waste which may be uneconomic to treat or unsuitable for recycling; residues from pre-treatment of C&I waste in local facilities; residues from thermal treatment of wastes (incinerator bottom ash); and CD&E wastes that are defined as chemically or physically non-inert (eg. waste soils). Table 2.7 summarises the forecast of non-inert void space requirements for the optimistic scenario. It includes the void space requirement for non-LACW waste as all LACW is assumed to be managed by WRG at Arpley or another WRG landfill until 2015 under the terms of its contract with MWDA. At present it is not clear how this material will be managed in subsequent years and therefore some LACW material is included in these figures.

Table 2.8 Non-inert Landfill Need Forecast 2010-2027

| [Source: Merseyside EAS] | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Non-inert Landfill Capacity Requirements | Optimistic Forecast (000s tonnes) | Pessimistic Forecast (000s tonnes) |
| LACW to be sent to non-inert landfill | 1879 | 2306 |
| External voidspace for LACW secured by contract | 1427 | 1446 |
| LACW voidspace mass balance | -451 | -857 |
| Total Non-LACW to be sent to non-inert landfill | 2789 | 5175 |
| Local Void Space to accommodate non-LACW | 449 | 449 |



| | | |
|--|-------|-------|
| Total External Void Space needed (plan period) | -2341 | -4726 |
| External void space needed (annually) | -80 | -300 |

Capacity Requirements for Inert Landfill

2.113 There are currently no active inert landfill sites in Merseyside and Halton, however, there are two existing minerals permissions with planning consent to restore using inert waste landfill, and which are expected to become active in 2011 or 2012. Both have existing void space, as they are existing mineral extraction sites. The future rate of landfilling is therefore influenced by the rate extraction of sandstone (Bold Heath Quarry, St Helens) and brickclay (Cronton Claypit, Knowsley) respectively. Both sites are underlain by a major aquifer, and consequently the materials they can accept for restoration by landfill will be strictly controlled by their Environmental Permits and planning conditions.

2.114 As previously mentioned, the construction industry at 2010 was in a slump, and following discussion with the waste industry, growth in arisings is not expected to occur before 2015 as the economy emerges from recession. This does not mean that waste will not be created, but it does indicate that demand for building materials and the need to dispose of unrecycled soils/rubbles will be reduced. This is also reflected in assumptions about rates of extraction from the mineral operations. The pessimistic forecast scenario assumes limited extraction until 2015, rising in the period to 2020, and then falling again. A similar approach is adopted for the infill and restoration rates. Both forecasts are adjusted to assume 10% of the deposited material is over burden or cover. Figures 2.11 and 2.12 show the timelines for utilising inert landfill capacity.



Figure 2.11 Inert Waste Landfill Void Space Requirements - Optimistic Scenario

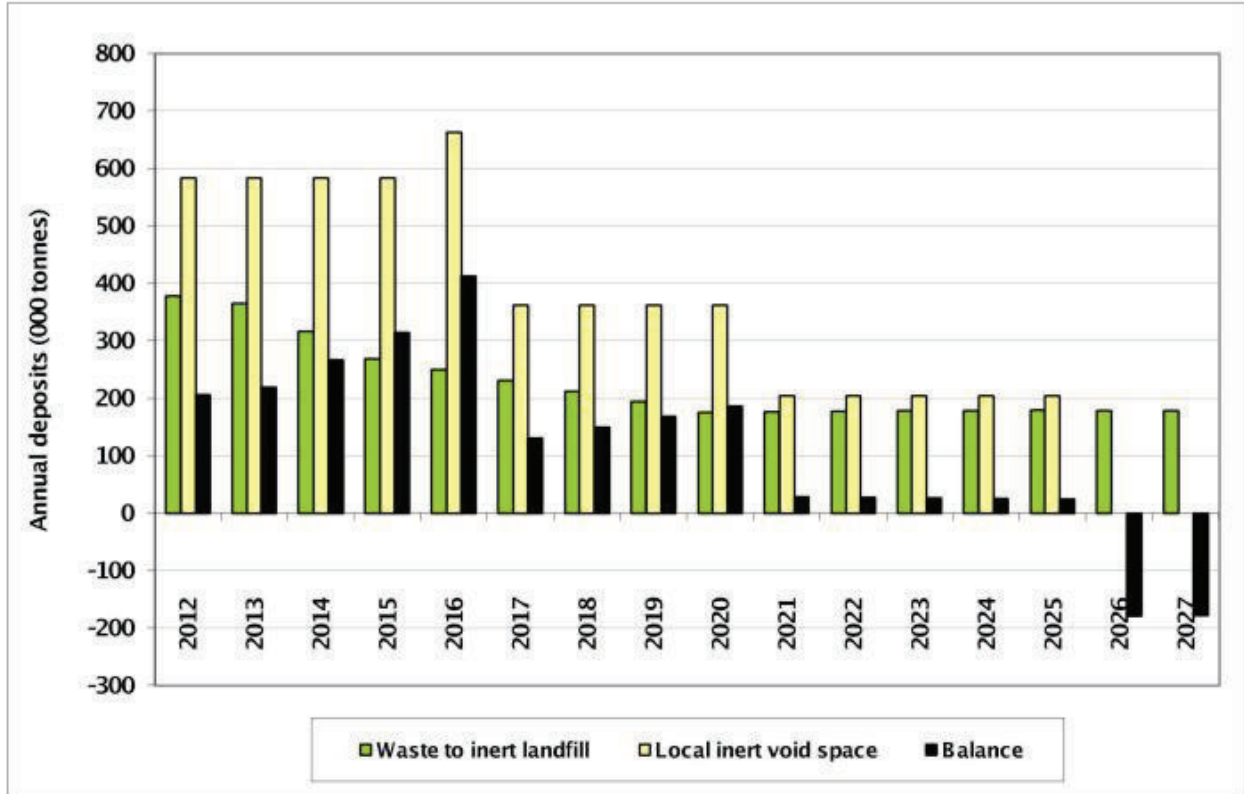
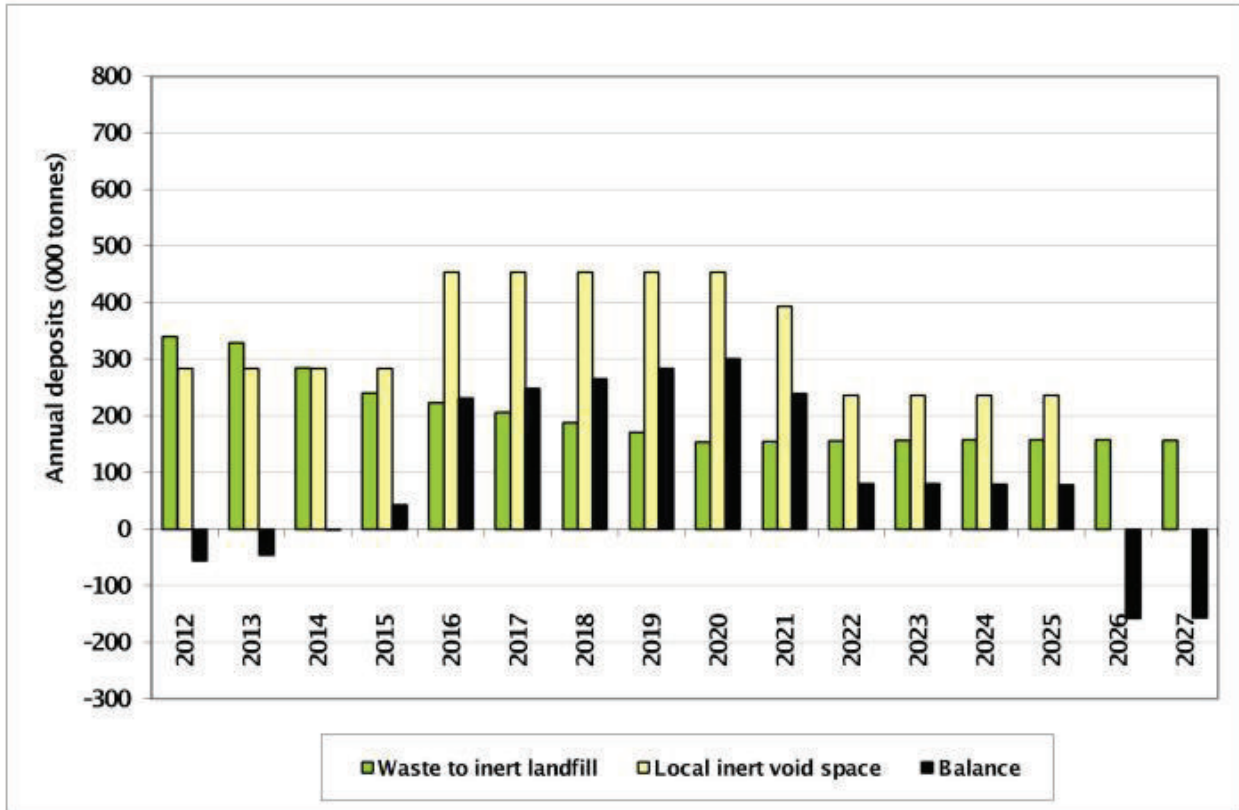


Figure 2.12 Inert Waste Landfill Void Space Requirements - Pessimistic Scenario



2.115 Table 2.8 summarises the total quantities of inert waste arisings over the entire plan period and identifies periods when the total requirement exceeds the supply of void space, although the overall balance over the lifetime of the plan show surplus capacity. The total void space available is just over 3 million m³, but this is increased once density conversion factors^c are applied. The conversions are different at each site according to discussions with site owners/operators and more detail is provided in the Needs Assessment (2011).

Table 2.9 Comparison of Inert Landfill Need Forecasts

| [Source: Merseyside EAS] | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| | Optimistic Forecast | Pessimistic Forecast |
| Total material to inert landfill | 4331 | 3889 |
| Local Void Space Available | 5472 | 4745 |
| Overall Capacity balance | 1141 | 857 |
| Periods of capacity shortage | 2026-2027 | 2012-2014 2026-2027 |



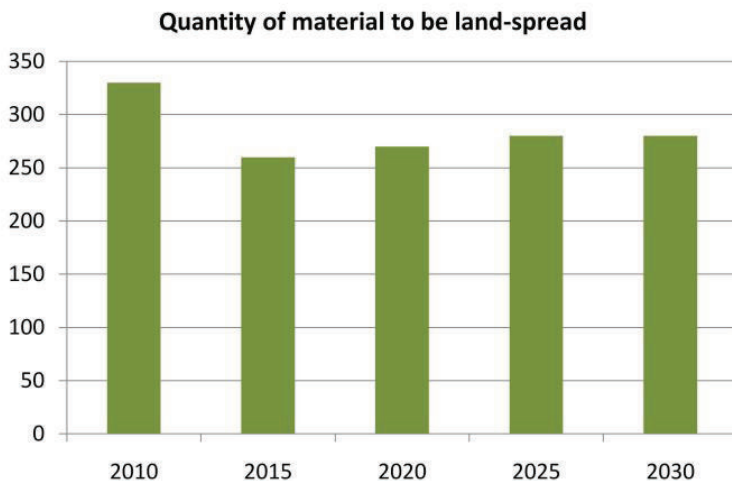
2.116 National planning policy (PPS10) requires that the Waste DPD provides for landfill needs for at least 10 years from the adoption date – in this case: 2012-2022. The pessimistic forecast implies that this cannot be achieved in the first two years of the plan period. However, the inert landfill forecasts have been fully informed by estimates provided by the respective site operators. The early shortfall shown above applies to only one of the two sites and the operator's current plans are very clearly focused on achieving the extraction and backfill rates which are used to derive the optimistic forecast. This shortfall only appears because the Waste DPD has attempted to be flexible and has forecast two scenarios even though the optimistic is more likely to occur and this would satisfy the landfill supply requirement stated in PPS10.

Other Inert Disposal Requirements

2.117 In addition to landfill disposal, the Waste DPD assumes that 10% of CD&E wastes will be spread on land for landscaping or other purposes, usually with an exemption from Environmental Permitting⁶. The forecast assumes that the current, higher rate of land-spreading will fall to this level because the amount of waste that can be deposited under an exemption has been reduced recently, and because this activity will incur landfill taxes from 2012 onwards. Nevertheless the Waste DPD assumes some continuing demand to use inert wastes in this way and that, if necessary, more sites will accept material within, rather than exempt from, the Permitting process.

2.118 The quantity of waste to be spread on land is forecast to be around 240,000te annually. Allowing for compaction and an average spreading depth of 1 metre this represents a requirement for only 16 hectares annually. This is shown in figure 2.11.

Figure 2.13 Land-spreading forecast



2.119 The Waste DPD does not make any allocation for this material as it will be deposited wherever there is a market demand, and this will shift during the plan period. Obvious sources anticipated in Merseyside and Halton are the Liverpool and Wirral Waters developments and embankments for the second Mersey Gateway Project.

Planning for Self Sufficiency in Waste Management

2.120 Merseyside and Halton must strive to be as self sufficient as possible for all waste streams by the end of the plan period, and this position has been supported throughout the development of the Waste DPD by consultees and stakeholders. Neighbouring waste planning authorities are also striving to achieve self sufficiency and there is an

acknowledgement that the majority of waste will be managed within each sub-region. Neighbouring authorities are nonetheless concerned that Merseyside and Halton cannot achieve this because of a continuing requirement for Merseyside and Halton to export residual waste to landfill.

2.121 However, self sufficiency in waste management cannot be fully plan-led because the waste industry operates across administrative boundaries through commercial contracts which use local and regional-scale sites. This is the case for all waste planning authorities and not just Merseyside and Halton. There is currently a lot of waste moving in and out of Merseyside and Halton, therefore, genuine self sufficiency in Merseyside and Halton is unlikely to be achieved, and the Waste DPD has little control over this issue. However, net self sufficiency may be achievable as imports and exports balance themselves out. Whatever the final outcome, a balanced approach is needed to ensure that Merseyside and Halton play their part in meeting their identified waste management needs, and ensuring that adjacent planning authorities are satisfied that the sub-region is not simply exporting waste. Conversely, the Merseyside and Halton districts need to be satisfied that they do not become net importers of waste on a significant scale.



2.122 Availability of regional landfill capacity is very important to Merseyside and Halton because it is difficult to provide additional future capacity for non-inert landfill locally, due to the geological make up, population density and lack of holes in the ground. National planning policy (PPS10) encourages sub-regions, such as Merseyside and Halton, to manage their own waste arisings locally. This policy position is also supported by the Regional Spatial Strategy, as it stands, however, RSS policy EM13 recognises this challenge particularly in the Mersey Belt and considers that areas such as Merseyside and Halton will need to offset any landfill export with additional built facility capacity, and this is the broad thrust of the Waste DPD position on this matter. Although, RSS will be abolished when the Localism Bill is introduced, policy EM13 is based on supporting evidence to RSS which remains relevant.

2.123 Significant quantities of waste are exported from the sub-region to non-inert landfill in neighbouring authorities and regions, and there will be a lessening but continuing requirement for this throughout the lifetime of the plan. Conversely, however, Merseyside and Halton have planning consents for several large scale thermal treatment facilities with a combined capacity of greater than 1,500,000 tonnes. These are likely to be of regional significance and provide potential capacity to offset the non-inert waste sent to landfills in other waste planning authorities.

2.124 There will be continued reliance on existing and new regionally significant or specialised facilities which will have the effect of drawing waste into those areas where these important facilities are located. For example, Greater Manchester's Municipal Waste Contract will be utilising the Ineos Chlor Energy from Waste facility at Runcorn, and the Cheshire Municipal Waste contract will also use this facility, subject to finalisation of contracts. This facility is located in Halton, and therefore assists Merseyside and Halton in balancing its imports and exports.

2.125 Over the last five years the quality and completeness of data about waste arisings, how they are managed, and their fate has improved significantly, largely as a result of the efforts of Defra and the Environment Agency, but with the support of other bodies such as Waste Resources Action Group (WRAP). Unfortunately some problems remain and the most significant are the result of regulatory restrictions on the information that the Environment Agency is authorised to collect through the various permitting systems. For example, material spread on land under exemption from Environmental Permitting is never recorded, while material that has undergone substantial processing into a secondary material may no longer be classified as waste and therefore its fate is not recorded. A similar issue affects recyclables sent to reprocessing facilities which are not obliged to record the source of materials they accept and this prevents certain wastes being tracked throughout their life cycle.

2.126 Notwithstanding these issues, Table 2.9 characterises the current 'balance sheet' of waste imports and exports as a means of estimating the sub-region's current level of self-sufficiency; how much improvement is needed; and where it might be directed. Due to the limitations referred to above, the table should be regarded as indicative rather than definitive.

Table 2.10 : Indicative Estimate of Sub-regional Self Sufficiency in Managing the Principal Waste Streams in Merseyside and Halton Based on 2009 Data [Source: Environment Agency]

| Waste Stream | Waste Movement | Exports | Imports |
|--------------|--|---------------------|-------------|
| | | 000s tonnes | 000s tonnes |
| LACW | Residual waste to landfill | 400 | 15 |
| | Residual waste to treatment | - | 25 |
| | Material to composting sites | 50 | - |
| | Recyclates sent to re-processors | Cannot be estimated | |
| | RDF ^g sent to thermal treatment | - | - |
| C&I | Residual waste to landfill | 195 | 105 |



| Waste Stream | Waste Movement | Exports | Imports |
|---------------|---|---------------------|-------------|
| | | 000s tonnes | 000s tonnes |
| | Residual waste to treatment | 50 | 25 |
| | Recyclates sent to re-processors | Cannot be estimated | |
| CDE | Residual waste to landfill | 10 | 60 |
| | Recycled aggregates generated by mobile plant | Cannot be estimated | |
| Hazardous | Material recycled or treated | 120 | 120 |
| Agricultural | - | All handled locally | |
| Radioactive | - | All handled locally | |
| Other | Water treatment waste incinerated | - | 75 |
| TOTALS | | 825 | 425 |

[Some figures have been rounded slightly. Figures in italics are Merseyside EAS estimates]

2.127 If they are representative, these estimates suggest Merseyside and Halton exports almost twice the amount of waste it imports based on the most recent data. However this position will change early in the plan period once the Ineos Chlor plant begins to receive RDF from Greater Manchester and Cheshire and this will almost balance the exported material. One consequence of this is that the flexibility adjustment to offset landfill exports which is referred to in the final row of Table 2.6 may be smaller than forecast, or possibly not required at all. Moreover, if other spare primary and thermal treatment capacity that is already permitted, but not yet built, comes into operation and handles waste from other authorities then Merseyside and Halton might become a net importer of waste.

2.128 This analysis also illustrates why it is important that the Waste DPD strives for high levels of resource recovery. Table 2.7 shows that exports of residual waste to landfill will not decline significantly if the conditions defined by the Pessimistic scenario persist. In contrast, better diversion rates could cut landfill exports by 80% of current rates.



3 Vision and Spatial Strategy

3.1 Vision

Vision for the Waste DPD

3.1 The vision statement identifies where Merseyside and Halton want to be by 2027 at the end of the plan period in terms of sustainable waste management, and therefore provides a direction of travel for the Waste DPD. It describes the Waste DPD position relative to other relevant national policies and strategies and is consistent with the emerging Core Strategies for each of the districts. The vision will be realised through the strategic objectives.

The Waste DPD Vision:

By 2027, the Waste DPD will have facilitated the development of a network of sustainable and modern waste management facilities which serve the needs of the local communities of Merseyside and Halton, enabling them to be as sustainable and self sufficient as possible in terms of waste management.

The communities of Merseyside and Halton will have taken responsibility for their waste, and through effective resource management, created economic prosperity by transforming waste into a resource and moving waste up the waste hierarchy.

This network of facilities will be designed and sited to avoid negative impact on health and amenity and enhance the natural and built environment, with site allocations being appropriate to the scale and type of waste management facility, and where possible enable waste management in Merseyside and Halton to support mitigation and adaptation to climate change.

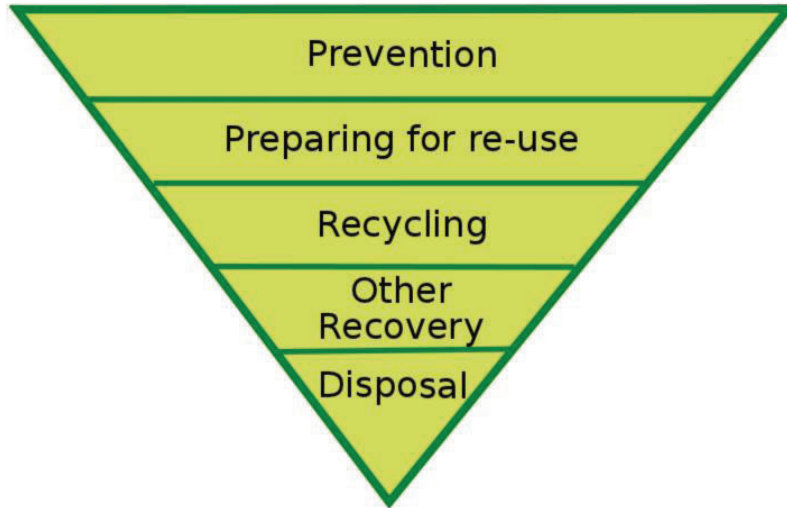
Explanation:

3.2 The vision statement has been informed by:

- Results of the Issues and Options, Spatial Strategy and Sites (SSS) and Preferred Options Consultations and feedback received through stakeholder groups;
- The waste hierarchy and how this applies to the specific waste management issues that Merseyside and Halton face;
- The Climate Change agenda;
- Results of the Sustainability Appraisal, and;
- Specific constraints that Merseyside and Halton face in terms of spatial planning.

3.3 The national waste hierarchy is shown in figure 3.1.

Figure 3.1 The Waste Hierarchy



3.4 The table 3.2 shows how the Waste DPD will be promoting the waste hierarchy, through strategies, policies and provision of sites.

Table 3.1 How the Waste DPD can Help Merseyside and Halton Promote the National Waste Hierarchy

| Stage in Waste Hierarchy | Merseyside and Halton's Waste Management Need | How the Waste DPD will address the need |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| Prevention | <p>Communities need to take responsibility for their own waste, and recognise the need to reduce the amount produced, thus preventing resources entering the waste stream in the first place.</p> <p>Fines will be imposed from Europe if recycling / recovery and landfill diversion targets are not met. Reducing the amount of waste produced is crucial to meeting these targets.</p> | <p>Through waste minimisation and design and layout of new development policies.</p> |
| Preparing for Re-use | <p>Various businesses, including social enterprises operate bulky household goods collection service across many of the districts in Merseyside and Halton. This network could usefully be expanded to cover the whole sub-region and potentially the commercial sector. Awareness raising among the general public and businesses on waste re-use issues would be beneficial.</p> <p>Re-use is easier for some waste streams, such as bulky household goods and construction & demolition waste.</p> | <p>Through waste minimisation policy, including promotion of Site Waste Management Plans for Construction projects.</p> <p>Through provision of sufficient number of appropriate sites which can be developed for recycling facilities for both household and commercial waste.</p> <p>Working with the MWDA on awareness raising initiatives.</p> <p>Promoting greater integration between all waste management sectors in the sub-region.</p> |



| Stage in Waste Hierarchy | Merseyside and Halton's Waste Management Need | How the Waste DPD will address the need |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| | Improvements and additional capacity for Household Waste Reception Centres is needed, along with provision of commercial waste reception centres. | |
| Recycling | <p>Merseyside and Halton started from a very low point in terms of recycling with some of the lowest rates in the country. Rates are improving significantly year on year and in 2010 the overall recycling rate for Merseyside & Halton was 35%.</p> <p>There is a shortfall in the number of facilities currently available to optimise recycling performance.</p> | <p>Through the resource recovery-led strategy.</p> <p>Through waste minimisation policy, including promotion of Site Waste Management Plans for Construction projects. Through two design policies.</p> <p>Through provision of sufficient number of appropriate sites which can be developed for recycling facilities for both household and commercial waste.</p> |
| Other Recovery | <p>The sub-region has limited opportunity for landfill, and therefore will need to maximise recovery of waste in order to minimise the amount of waste that needs final disposal.</p> <p>Large consented capacity of thermal treatment facilities.</p> | <p>Through the resource recovery-led strategy. Through contributing to energy security through use of waste as a renewable energy source, and through the provision of a criteria-based policy for small-scale EfW.</p> |
| Disposal | <p>Merseyside and Halton currently has one landfill which can accept non-hazardous waste, this is not filling at the anticipated rate and will still have void space when it is due to close in 2012. This shows that diversion of waste from landfill is occurring but has the effect that landfill sites are not being fully exploited without extensions to the duration of permissions.</p> <p>A significant quantity of waste is exported to neighbouring areas, this is likely to continue until sufficient new waste management facilities come on line for treating wastes in other ways.</p> | <p>Through resource recovery-led strategy, and therefore reducing reliance on landfill.</p> <p>Contributing to energy security through use of waste as a renewable energy source.</p> <p>Where landfill capacity can be identified in Merseyside and Halton it should be safeguarded for the greatest disposal needs, subject to environmental constraints.</p> <p>Through diversion of inert landfill, including spreading to land and reprocessing of secondary aggregates.</p> |

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, WS2007, NW SCP Framework, SA Scoping Objectives and Report, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

The Strategic Objectives for the Waste DPD

3.5 In order to deliver the vision for the Waste DPD, and in response to public consultation the following objectives have been identified.



Strategic Objectives

SO1 - To plan for sufficient waste management facilities to meet Merseyside and Halton's identified waste management needs.

SO2 - To promote waste minimisation and optimise re-use and recycling of waste materials for both waste specific and non-waste planning applications.

SO3 - To encourage waste management facilities which increase re-use, recycling and value/energy recovery of all waste types, including through the use of new, effective and safe waste management technologies where appropriate, and minimise final disposal, in order to meet national targets and Merseyside and Halton's local waste targets.

SO4 - For Merseyside and Halton, as one of the North West's City Regions, to be a leader in promoting transformation of waste to resource to encourage social, economic, environmental and employment gain from sustainable waste management.

SO5 - To raise awareness in sustainable waste management amongst the people and business communities of Merseyside and Halton to reduce waste arisings and increase recycling rates, in particular given the low starting point for the sub-region in terms of recycling.

SO6 - To minimise the adverse effects of waste management development (including transportation) and enhance positive impacts where possible, on human health, local amenity and the natural and urban environment and heritage of Merseyside and Halton.

SO7 - To promote high quality development for waste management facilities.

SO8 - For all new waste management facilities on Merseyside and Halton to take account of and contribute to reductions in greenhouse gas emissions and mitigate the effects of climate change.

Explanation:

3.6 The strategic objectives are important to secure the delivery of the Waste DPD. For this reason the strategic objectives are linked to the development management policies and included as part of the Implementation and monitoring strategy.

3.7 SO1 has raised most comments, particularly from neighbouring waste planning authorities who are concerned with Merseyside and Halton's continuing need to export non-inert waste to landfill. It is important to note that Merseyside and Halton must strive to be self sufficient otherwise the sub-region would be in conflict with national planning policy (PPS10). However, RSS (para 9.35) acknowledges that some metropolitan areas are unlikely to meet planning and other requirements for landfill provision, and therefore should compensate by providing additional treatment capacity to compensate for residual waste that is exported and to promote movement of waste up the waste hierarchy to minimise the amount of waste that needs to be disposed to landfill. This is the approach that Merseyside and Halton has adopted.

3.8 During the preparation of the Waste DPD, there has been regular liaison with the waste industry including landfill operators in the North West region, and as a consequence Merseyside and Halton is confident that there will be sufficient landfill capacity in the NW region to meet its needs without seriously impinging on the overall regional landfill capacity and the neighbouring sub-regions capacity to meet their needs.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, WS2007, NW SCP Framework, SA Scoping Objectives, Needs Assessment



Overarching strategic approach for the Waste DPD.

3.9 Merseyside and Halton will adopt a Resource Recovery-led Strategy for the Waste DPD which is consistent with national policy. The Waste DPD will therefore determine the number and capacity, location and broad types of facility that are required during the Plan period particularly within the context of continuing to increase landfill diversion rates. However, it should be noted that achieving a resource recovery-led strategy will take time to be realised because it depends on new facilities. Therefore, the resource recovery-led strategy is the long-term strategy for achieving the vision of the Waste DPD by 2027.

3.10 In defining the strategy, it is important to note that through two independent, evidence-based processes, both the current Joint Municipal Waste Management Strategy (JMWMS) 2008 and the Waste DPD have identified complementary strategies which emphasise the need for a resource recovery-led approach.

The Strategy for meeting Merseyside and Halton's Waste Management Needs

The overarching approach for the Waste DPD will be a Resource Recovery-led strategy with the following objectives:

1. To seek to minimise waste arisings.
2. To maximise recycling, resource recovery and re-processing.
3. To ensure that residual waste is minimised and then processed in a way that will:
 - Maximise the economic and environmental benefits to local communities and businesses;
 - Minimise export of residual wastes for landfill disposal;
 - Minimising the need for new landfill/landraise and reserving capacity for the greatest disposal needs; and,
 - Balance any export of landfill tonnages with import of equivalent material for secondary treatment to ensure that Merseyside and Halton are as self sufficient as possible in waste management capacity.

Explanation

3.11 As highlighted in the 'Portrait of Merseyside and Halton', there are significant constraints on the sub-region both in terms of it being highly urbanised and also because of its underlying geology and hydrogeology. Therefore, opportunities for final waste disposal via landfill are very restricted. This was the primary purpose of developing an overall strategy to illustrate how Merseyside and Halton will meet its waste management needs emphasising waste management options further up the waste hierarchy.

3.12 The purpose of the strategic approach is to demonstrate that overall the sub-region is contributing to regional waste management infrastructure and being as self sufficient as possible in the process, minimising the residual quantities of waste that need landfill disposal and reducing the reliance on sites in neighbouring authorities. This is backed up by the evidence base. This approach also sits comfortably with the aims and objectives of the Waste DPD.

3.13 In minimising the amount of waste sent to landfill, Merseyside and Halton will need to plan for a greater number of waste treatment facilities. Any deliverable landfill void must be reserved for the most pressing disposal needs, subject to being appropriate for the site.

3.14 The Waste Planning Authorities in Merseyside and Halton can only implement the Resource Recovery-led Strategy through provision of appropriate sites and enabling waste policies. Financial implementation will be via the private waste industry or through MWDA and Waste Collection Authorities who either have a duty to provide sites as part of their operations, or who can see a business need and opportunity. More details of this are shown in the Implementation and Monitoring Framework.

Policy and Evidence Base References:



PPS10, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Lancashire's Minerals and Waste Core Strategy, Cheshire Waste Local Plan, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

3.2 Spatial Strategy

3.15 The spatial strategy for the Waste DPD for Merseyside and Halton is referred to as the Sub-regional Site Approach. Adopting this strategy, which defines both large (in terms of site area and capacity) Sub-Regional and small (in terms of site area and capacity) District sites across the whole sub-region provides the maximum flexibility to bring forward needed waste management capacity early in the Plan period. The strategy provides the waste industry with maximum available choice to deliver the most optimally located solutions for the identified needs of Merseyside and Halton. This approach is considered to be the most suitable for delivering the vision, strategic objectives and Resource Recovery-led strategy of the Waste DPD.

The Sub-Regional Site Approach

The spatial strategy identifies an appropriate number of large sites suitable for sub-regionally significant facilities of more than 4.5 hectares in area. There is one sub-regional site located in each of the districts, and they are spatially distributed across the plan area taking account of matters such as proximity to waste arisings and infrastructure. These sites are located in the vicinity of existing clusters of waste management facilities where these have been shown to be sustainable. The sites were selected using robust site selection criteria based on constraint and opportunity mapping.

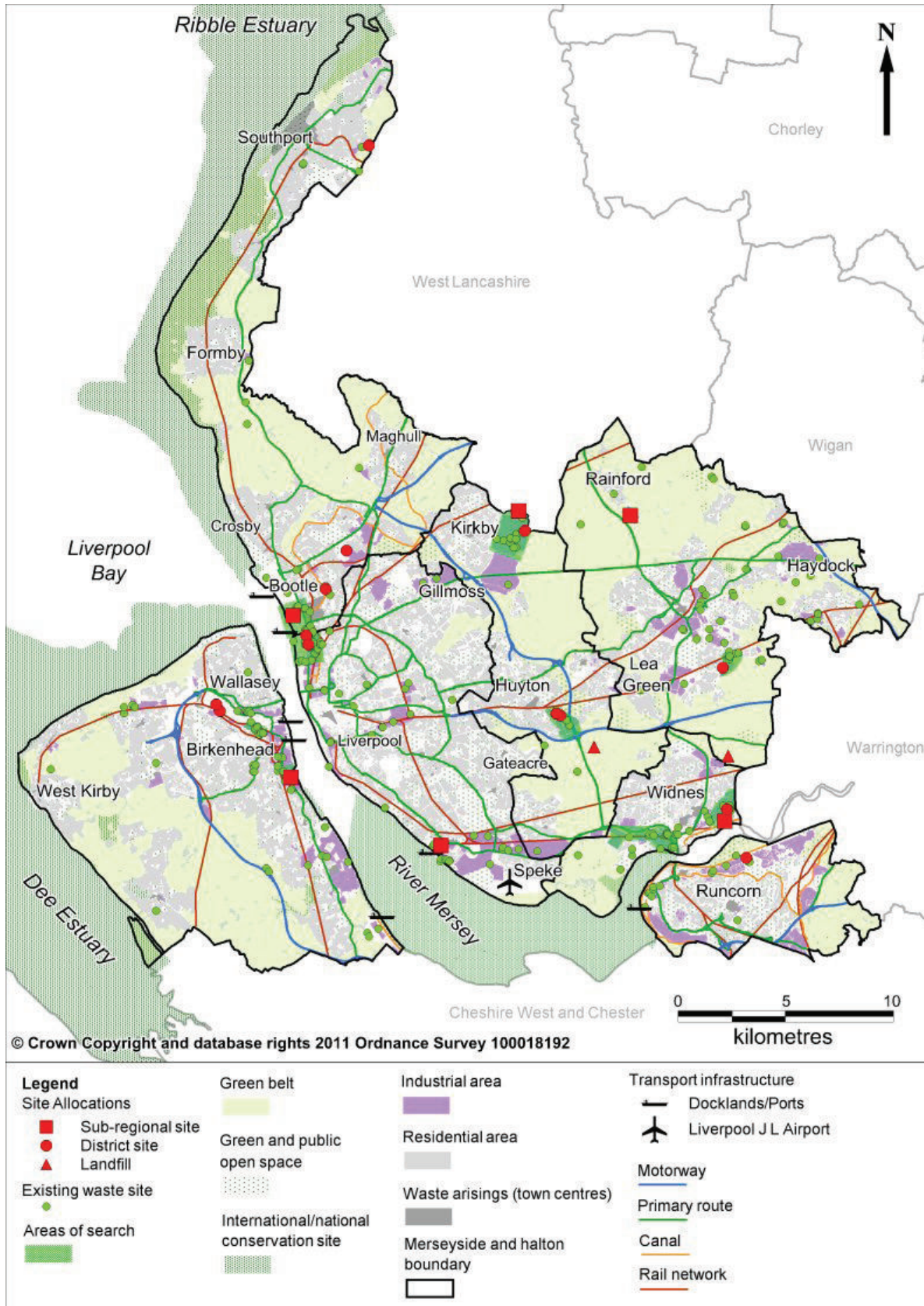
District sites are identified to accommodate smaller-scale local facilities taking into account specific local needs, such as proximity to waste arisings, and to ensure that sufficient small sites are also available to meet the short to medium-term needs of the Waste DPD strategy.

The areas around the existing clusters of waste management facilities have been defined as Areas of Search. Other small sites will be most easily identified within the Areas of Search.

Two inert landfill sites are identified. Due to technical constraints there are limited opportunities for landfill within the sub-region, and the sites allocated are the most sustainable and spatially appropriate for this type of activity.

3.16 The spatial strategy is illustrated in figure 3.2 showing site selection criteria used to identify the most sustainable and deliverable locations. The location of sub-regional sites has also been assessed through the SA process.

Figure 3.2 Sub-Regional Site Approach





Explanation:

3.17 The sub-regional site approach has been adopted on the basis that a combined pattern of diffuse, clustered and centralised sites would be the best spatial option for the Waste DPD. It provides a wide range of site sizes and requirements, takes account of clustering sites, maximising potential benefits that can be gained from co-locating waste management facilities, and the situation on the ground in terms of spatial pattern of employment land uses such as business parks. It also makes it easier to fulfil the requirements of the needs assessment and the JMWMS, as it is based upon:

- Sources of waste arisings;
- Current waste movements;
- Minimising transport impacts;
- Location of existing waste management facilities
- Climate change; and,
- Site Selection methodology.

3.18 The Spatial Strategy also takes specific account of the highly constrained supply of large sites suitable for the location of waste management facilities across all six districts, and also, the greater number of small sites that tend to have a more dispersed distribution across the sub-region.

3.19 This approach is the most sustainable, due to its robustness and flexibility to adapt to the changing waste needs of Merseyside and Halton, the results of the SA, and is also fully compliant with national guidance in the form of PPS10. The SA did raise some concerns with respect to potential combined negative impacts of clustering sites, but recommended that assessment of potential cumulative effects especially with regard to transport and traffic, air quality, noise, odour, landscape and other potential negative effects is required to ensure further expansion/co-location will not lead to adverse effects on the surrounding environment and communities. This has been done as part of the site selection process for allocated sites, in particular when looking at the deliverability^G of the site, but will also be required as part of the evaluation of proposals on unallocated sites, where they come forward for determination, as set out in policies WM1 and WM13. Further and more detailed, site-specific assessment will be required at the planning application stage when conformity with development management policies will be required.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Merseyside LTP3, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitats Regulations Assessment, Needs Assessment, Issues and Options Report, Spatial Strategy and Sites Report, Preferred Options Report



4 Site Allocations to deliver capacity requirements

4.1 The site selection methodology used to derive the lists of proposed allocations for waste management use provided in this chapter is fully described in the supporting document "Methodology for Site Selection for built facilities". In the early stages of site selection, the process was dominated by development of an objective, multi-criterion site assessment tool which allocated scores to sites from a long list according to the distance of the site boundary from various features which were regarded as either constraints (e.g. Proximity to residential development yielding negative scores) or positive features (e.g. strategic road network, yielding positive scores).

4.2 In the later stages, having used the objective methodology to generate a short list of sites, attention shifted to considering deliverability issues for the sites which were on the short list. The allocated sites therefore reflect a balance between an objective methodology based on site characteristics and deliverability judgements.

4.3 Two types of sites have been identified :

- Sites for sub-regional facilities, capable of supporting the larger capacity and more complex facilities (greater than 4.5 ha in area);
- Sites for district-level facilities, suitable for smaller waste management operations (less than 4.5 ha in area).

4.4 Each proposed allocation is supported by a site profile that indicates the waste management uses that each site could potentially support. This is not meant to be technology-specific and in many cases a number of different waste uses are seen as possible for a single site. An outline of potential site characteristics is given in Appendix 1. Technological advances coupled with innovative and space-saving design will inevitably mean that not all waste management solutions brought forward by the waste industry will exactly match the site size or capacity requirements suggested in Appendix 1, therefore the information in table 4.1 should be regarded as indicative only.

Table 4.1 Site Allocations: Suggested Waste Uses

| Suggest Waste Management Use | Facility Type |
|--|--|
| HWRC - Household Waste Recycling Centre | Household Waste Recycling Centre |
| WTS - Waste Transfer Station and Sorting Facilities | Waste Transfer Station (including merchant/municipal/inert/non-inert), Materials Recycling Facility |
| Re-processor | Dry Recyclables Re-processor, Specialist Materials Re-processor |
| Primary Treatment | Mechanical Biological Treatment, Anaerobic Digestion, In-Vessel Composting, Open Windrow Composting, other specialist pre-treatment facilities |
| Thermal Treatment | Energy from Waste (including municipal/non-municipal/merchant), Gasification, Pyrolysis |
| RRP - Resource Recovery Park | Co-located built waste management facilities |
| Landfill | Landfill site (including inert and/or non-inert) |

4.5 The Glossary contains individual definitions of the waste management technologies and more detail is provided in Appendix 1.

Intensification of Use at Existing Waste Management Facilities



4.6 Due to the level of land constraint in Merseyside and Halton, some of the sites which are being put forward as allocations are existing waste management facilities. These existing facilities are included because the current throughput at the site is significantly below what it is licensed or permitted, or because there is more land available on the site for (re)development which would allow the operator to increase capacity by expanding existing operations, adding additional types of waste management operation or working in partnership with other waste management operators. They have already been established as suitable for waste uses, reducing the risk that a waste-related development would be unacceptable in principle and because they have been assessed as having the capacity to accommodate additional facilities. This provides additional flexibility to the site allocations to meet capacity requirements through a range of sites, and because development by existing waste management operators will reduce some of the deliverability risks. Where a proposed allocation is for intensification of use, this will be highlighted within the site tables in policy boxes WM2 and WM3.

Site Prioritisation Hierarchy

4.7 A considerable amount of time and effort has been taken to identify sites for allocation on the basis of spatial fit, sustainability and deliverability, and it is important that these sites are prioritised for waste management development for both built facilities and inert landfill above unallocated sites. Areas of search are also identified for re-processing and small-scale waste management activity, alongside a criteria based policy for determining sites which come forward on unallocated sites, both of which provide additional flexibility to the plan. However, to provide clarity for the waste management industry and developers, a prioritised approach to site development is necessary. This is shown in policy WM1 below:

Policy WM 1

Guide to Site Prioritisation

Developers should develop sites allocated in the Waste DPD in the first instance, and should only consider alternatives to allocated sites if allocated sites have already been developed out, or are not available for the waste use proposed by the industry, or can be demonstrated as not being suitable for the proposed waste management operation. There will be presumption in favour of waste management development on allocated sites, as set out in policies WM2, WM3 and WM4, subject to compliance with other policies within the Waste DPD and other relevant LDF documents. This applies to both allocations for built facilities and inert landfill.

If allocated sites are not available, then the waste industry should seek sites within the areas of search, as set out in policy WM5. These areas are suitable for small-scale waste management activity, such as waste transfer stations, re-processing activity or displacement of existing waste management uses. The applicant should demonstrate why allocated sites are not suitable for the specific proposed use as part of the justification.

Developers must clearly demonstrate that both allocated sites and areas of search are not suitable for the development proposed before unallocated sites will be considered. These will need to be justified as follows:

- That the Waste DPD site assessment method is applied, including site selection scoring criteria shown in Tables 5.1 and 5.2;
- Sustainability Appraisal;
- HRA screening;
- Deliverability Assessment; and,
- Compliance with the criteria based policy and other relevant policies.

Explanation:

4.8 A key requirement of PPS10 is to provide sufficient opportunities for new waste management facilities of the right type, in the right place at the right time. The extensive site search selection process has sought to achieve this by allocating sites which fit the spatial approach and which are most sustainable and deliverable. The areas of search were identified on the basis of sustainability and availability of a number of appropriate sites within a particular area. However, they are only suitable for small-scale waste management facilities, such as waste transfer stations and re-processing activity.



4.9 By setting out the approach to site prioritisation, the Waste DPD is providing certainty to the waste industry and local communities, in terms of where waste management development should be focused and is likely to come forward. It is the responsibility of the developer to comply with the requirements of policy WM1 and to ensure that this information is submitted in full as part of the planning application process. Pre-application discussions are essential. Planning consent will not normally be given unless policy WM1 is complied with in full.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Merseyside LTP3, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Needs Assessment, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitat Regulations Assessment.

4.1 Sub-Regional Sites

4.10 The sub-regional sites are those which are larger in size (4.5 hectares or greater) and waste management capacity, and are capable of supporting facilities which would be of strategic importance to Merseyside and Halton. They may be able to accommodate one large facility or a number of facilities co-located on the same site. Where several facilities are developed on a single site, integration between the operations is desirable to maximise synergies, reduce transport impacts and make best use of infrastructure. These are all criteria that were used for determining the spatial strategy, and therefore, important to ensure that the location of sites fits the spatial strategy for the sub-region.

4.11 Following the site selection and deliverability assessment the sub-regional site allocations for waste management uses are shown in Policy WM2:



Policy WM 2

Sub-regional Site Allocations

The following sites have been allocated to provide waste facilities to meet sub-regional strategic needs.

Table 4.2

| Site ID | District | Site Name and Address | Area (ha) | Suggested Waste Management Uses |
|-----------------|-----------|---|-----------|---|
| H1 | Halton | Site at Widnes Waterfront | 7.8 | Waste Transfer Station, Re-processor, Primary Treatment, Resource Recovery Park |
| K1 | Knowsley | Butlers Farm, Knowsley Industrial Park | 8.0 | Waste Transfer Station, Re-processor, Primary Treatment, Resource Recovery Park |
| L1 | Liverpool | Land off Stalbridge Road, Garston | 5.4 | Waste Transfer Station, Re-processor, Primary Treatment, Resource Recovery Park |
| F1 ^e | Sefton | Alexandra Dock 1, Metal Recycling Site | 9.8 | Re-processor, Primary treatment, Thermal Treatment |
| S1 | St.Helens | Land SW of Sandwash Close, Rainford Industrial Estate | 6.1 | Re-processor, Primary treatment, Resource Recovery Park |
| W1 | Wirral | Car Parking/Storage Area, former Cammell Laird Shipyard, Campbeltown Road | 5.9 | Waste Transfer Station, Re-processor, Primary Treatment |

Planning permission will not normally be granted for any other use of the land that would prejudice its use as a waste management facility subject to para 4.14 below.

^eIntensification of use at existing waste management facility

4.12 The location of the sub-regional sites are shown on figure 4.2, the site profiles can be found in Appendix 2.



4.13 As set out in paragraphs 3.31 to 3.33, the Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority is at an advanced stage of its recovery contract procurement process. The recovery contract bidders are proposing to transport Local Authority collected waste (formerly known as municipal solid waste) outside of the Plan area to EfW facilities and may require waste transfer capacity and potentially primary treatment capacity. The Waste DPD evidence base includes a capacity and site requirement for these Local Authority collected management operations to support MWDA's procurement process in terms of primary treatment and waste transfer capacity but not energy from waste.

4.14 Should planning permission be granted on an unallocated site to treat, bulk or transfer Local Authority collected waste arising within Merseyside and which is specifically part of the MWDA recovery contract procurement process then the site capacity will contribute to the Waste DPD Local Authority collected waste capacity requirements. If the LACW recovery contract site(s) is of sub-regional significance and given that there is to be one sub-regional site allocation per District (policy WM2), the sub-regional site allocation within the District where the unallocated site has come forward would be reviewed. If planning consent is granted for development to implement the Local Authority collected waste recovery contract within an unallocated site e.g. for the transfer of waste outside of Merseyside, then planning permission may not need to be granted for waste uses within the allocated sub-regional site within that District. In these circumstances, the sub-regional site allocation on the Proposals Map for the district concerned will also be reviewed accordingly at the next opportunity.

Explanation

4.15 Sites allocated within the port and dock estates, specifically in Sefton and Wirral, are proposed subject to the waste management operations being port-related. The types of suggested waste uses for each site are shown in the site profiles in Appendix 2.

4.16 National planning policy (PPS10) indicates that it is necessary to safeguard sites allocated for waste management uses in the Waste DPD, that are considered essential for meeting the landfill diversion targets, and ensuring that the right types of treatment capacity come on line early on in the plan process. Although sub-regional site allocations benefit from an implied safeguarding by virtue of the allocation, and will be prioritised for waste management uses in preference to unallocated sites, many of these sites will also be suitable for other types of development, such as employment and may be within areas also allocated for employment purposes. Therefore, the allocation alone cannot be assumed to provide a means of safeguarding them from being developed in another way.

4.17 When determining applications for non-waste development on a sub-regional site specifically identified for waste management, or within a distance that could affect the potential for waste use on a site specifically identified for waste management, consideration will be given to any potential adverse impact the proposed development might have on the future of the site as a location for waste management and therefore, on the Waste DPDs aim and objectives.

4.18 If a development is likely to have an unacceptable impact on the future of the sub-regional site as a location for waste management the applicant will need to demonstrate that there is no longer a need for the allocated site for waste management use, that there is an overriding need for the non-waste development in that location, and/or that the waste management capacity provided by the allocation has been met elsewhere.

4.19 On adoption of the Waste DPD, proposals maps in district LDF documents will need to be amended to reflect site allocations in policy WM2.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Needs Assessment, Broad Site Search Report 2005, Built Facilities Site Selection Methodology, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Merseyside LTP3, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitat Regulations Assessment.



4.2 District-level Sites

4.20 Refining the number of sites required at a district-level has been achieved using the same site selection process as for sub-regional sites, including taking account of the spatial strategy and deliverability of sites. The Needs Assessment (2011) has also been used to identify capacity requirements and therefore sites needed. The district level site allocations for waste management uses are shown in policy WM3:



Policy WM 3

Allocations for District level Sites

The following sites have been allocated to provide waste facilities to meet district needs.

Table 4.3

| Site ID | District | Site Name and Address | Area (ha) | Suggested Waste Management Uses |
|-----------------|-----------|--|-----------|--|
| H2 ^e | Halton | Eco-cycle Waste Ltd, 3 Johnson's Lane, Widnes | 2.0 | WTS, Primary treatment |
| H3 | Halton | Runcorn WWTW | 1.2 | HWRC, WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| K2 | Knowsley | Image Business Park, Acornfield Road, Knowsley Industrial Park | 2.8 | WTS, Primary treatment |
| K3 ^e | Knowsley | Mainsway Ltd, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park | 2.3 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| K4 | Knowsley | Former Pilkington Glass Works, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park | 1.3 | WTS, Primary treatment |
| L2 | Liverpool | Site off Regent Road / Bankfield Street | 1.4 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| L3 ^e | Liverpool | Waste Treatment Plant, Lower Bank View | 0.7 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| F2 ^e | Sefton | 55 Crowland Street, Southport | 3.6 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| F3 | Sefton | Site North of Farriers Way, Atlantic Business Park | 1.7 | Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| F4 ^e | Sefton | 1-2 Acorn Way, Bootle | 0.8 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| S2 | St Helens | Land North of T.A.C., Abbotsfield Industrial Estate | 1.3 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| W2 ^e | Wirral | Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 3.7 | HWRC, WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |
| W3 ^e | Wirral | Former Goods Yard, Adjacent Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 2.8 | WTS, Re-processor, Primary treatment |

Planning permission will not normally be granted for any other use of the land that would prejudice its use as a waste management facility.

^eIntensification of use at existing waste management facility



4.21 The locations of the district sites are shown in figure 4.2, with more detailed site location plans shown in Appendix 2, including suggested waste management uses.

Explanation

4.22 Guidance in PPS10 indicates that it is necessary to safeguard sites allocated for waste management uses in the Waste DPD, that are considered essential for meeting the landfill diversion targets, and ensuring that the right types of treatment capacity come on line early on in the plan process. Although district site allocations benefit from an implied safeguarding by virtue of the allocation, and will be prioritised for waste management uses in preference to unallocated sites, many of these sites will also be suitable for other types of development, such as employment and may be within areas also allocated for employment purposes. Therefore, the allocation alone cannot be assumed to provide a means of safeguarding them from being developed in another way.

4.23 When determining applications for non-waste development on a district site specifically identified for waste management, or within a distance that could affect the potential for waste use on a site specifically identified for waste management, consideration will be given to any potential adverse impact the proposed development might have on the future of the site as a location for waste management and therefore, on the Waste DPDs aim and objectives.

4.24 If a development is likely to have an unacceptable impact on the future of the district site as a location for waste management the applicant will need to demonstrate that there is no longer a need for the allocated site for waste management use, that there is an overriding need for the non-waste development in that location, and/or that the waste management capacity provided by the allocation has been met elsewhere.

4.25 On adoption of the Waste DPD, proposals maps in district LDF documents will need to be amended to reflect site allocations in policy WM3.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Needs Assessment, Broad Site Search Report 2005, Built Facilities Site Selection Methodology, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Merseyside LTP3, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

4.3 Landfill Sites

4.26 Although the Waste DPD has adopted a Resource Recovery-led Strategy, there is a continuing requirement for some residual landfill for both inert and non-inert waste. The Needs Assessment has clearly identified that Merseyside and Halton will need access to substantial new landfill capacity early in the Plan period (to 2015) until the new treatment facilities needed to deliver the Resource Recovery-led Strategy are built and become operational. This requirement is additional to the capacity for LACW disposal via the current MWDA contract at Arpley, just outside of the sub-region.

4.27 The only operational, open gate⁶ site still accepting non-inert waste in Merseyside and Halton is Lyme and Wood Pits landfill in St. Helens. The site began operating as a landfill in June 2003, and will be restored to a Country Park. The site is currently permitted to accept 550,000 tonnes of waste per year including commercial, industrial and inert waste, and is owned and operated by Cory Environmental Ltd. The site is due to close in June 2012, although there remains a void space. The operators intend to submit a planning application to extend the timescale for operations but the Waste DPD cannot speculate on the outcome of this, and therefore, it has been assumed that the site will close in June 2012.

4.28 A search for sites with any potential for use as landfill has been undertaken, and full details of the site search methodology and results can be found in the supporting report 'Survey for Landfill in Merseyside and Halton'. As discussed in the evidence base section, the opportunities for new landfill across Merseyside and Halton are very limited because of a combination of planning and environmental constraints including:

- The underlying geology and hydrogeology is extremely sensitive to pollution risks, especially those arising from landfill of waste to groundwater⁶ resources including water abstractions and source protection zones⁶.
- Most former quarries and minerals workings have already been used, reclaimed, developed or restored.



- There are very few operational minerals sites in Merseyside & Halton, and limited opportunities for new minerals workings in the sub-region, which would be suitable for landfill in the future.
- Much of Merseyside and Halton is densely developed for housing, commerce and industry.
- The extensive Green Belt.
- Much of Merseyside and Halton's Green Belt is constrained by other environmental designations
- Access and land use in the vicinity of some sites has changed in recent years adding additional constraints.

Inert Landfill

4.29 The constraints identified above, mean that the identification of new landfill opportunities for the sub-region has been severely limited. Two sites for inert landfill have been identified for allocation and these are shown in policy WM 4:

Policy WM 4

Allocations for Inert Landfill

The following sites have been allocated for provision of inert waste landfill.

Table 4.4

| Site ID | Site Name | Permitted Void Space (Million m ³) | Capacity (Million tonnes) |
|---------|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| K5 | Cronton Claypit, Knowsley | 0.75-1 | 1.5-2 |
| S3 | Bold Heath Quarry, St.Helens | 2.43 | 3.65 |

4.30 This means that the sub-region would be self sufficient for disposal of inert waste, although the availability of void space for both Cronton Claypit and Bold Heath Quarry is dependent on the extraction of minerals and the proportion of the void space to be infilled with overburden from the existing quarry operation. Both sites benefit from planning permission. Locations of the landfill sites are shown on Figure 4.2, and profiles for the two sites can be found in Appendix 2.

4.31 On adoption of the Waste DPD, proposals maps in district LDF documents will need to be amended to reflect site allocations in policy WM 4.

Non-Inert Landfill

4.32 The landfill site survey did not identify any future opportunities for non-inert landfill, which leaves a deficit in capacity for non-inert waste, even when the contracted LACW capacity at Arpley Landfill, Warrington is taken into account. Therefore, Merseyside and Halton will need to continue to rely on neighbouring authorities for landfill provision of non-inert waste.

4.33 As discussed in the evidence base section, Merseyside and Halton has liaised with neighbouring waste planning authorities regarding availability of non-inert landfill capacity. Unfortunately, each of the neighbouring WPAs have only accounted for their own needs when determining landfill capacity requirements, and are not in favour of making provision for Merseyside and Halton.

4.34 However, the waste management industry operates commercial contracts across local authority boundaries, and discussion with landfill operators across the region has been more positive with strong indications that the capacity requirements of Merseyside and Halton can be easily met within the region, although some of these sites will also be subject to planning applications extending timescales for landfill operations. The response from industry is backed up by the report, Nationally, Regionally and Sub-Regionally Significant Waste Management Facilities (October 2008), produced for the former Regional Assembly to support RSS, which indicates that landfill sites across the NW region should be considered as regionally significant facilities.

4.35 In addition to this reassurance from industry, the Waste DPD includes a criteria based policy WM15 enabling unallocated sites to be assessed for suitability as future landfill. Finally, the Waste DPD has also built in flexibility within its built capacity requirements to accommodate for waste that may be imported for treatment from outside the sub-region to compensate for residual waste which is exported to landfill, as illustrated in figure 2.8.

4.4 Additional Sites

Approach to Selecting Sites for Small-scale Waste Management Operations

4.36 Although the sites allocated in the previous sections are sufficient to provide for the waste management needs that have been identified for Merseyside and Halton, there remains the possibility that other development pressures and deliverability problems, which could not be reasonably foreseen during plan preparation, could reduce the capacity or number of sites available for waste management facilities during the plan period and therefore, alternative sites may need to be found. There is also a need to make further provision for waste-related development such as re-processing plants. Consultation responses supported the inclusion of areas of search where additional sites may be beneficially located, and this is consistent with PPS10.

Figure 4.1 Plastic Bottles to be Re-processed



4.37 A description of the spatial area in which additional sites may be located is set out in policy WM5 and the broad locations are illustrated on Figure 4.2.



Policy WM 5

Areas of Search for Additional Small-scale Waste Management Operations and Re-processing sites.

Additional sites that are required for waste-related re-processing activities and other small scale waste management facilities over and above those allocated for specific waste management uses will be considered favourably in the vicinity of the following areas of search:

- Halton : Industrial areas of Ditton / Widnes;
- Knowsley : Knowsley Industrial Park and Huyton Business Park;
- Liverpool : Industrial areas of the Liverpool North Docks;
- Sefton : Industrial areas of Bootle and the southern part of the Sefton Dock Estate;
- St.Helens : Abbotsfield Industrial Estate and industrial areas in the immediate vicinity;
- Wirral : Industrial areas associated with Cammell Laird Shipyard, Tranmere and the north bank of the West Float Docks.

There will be a presumption in favour of planning applications for waste re-processing and other small-scale waste management activities in these areas subject to satisfactory assessment of cumulative effects on local amenity and the continued viability of existing employment areas for a full range of appropriate uses and the tests identified in policy WM1 and other Waste DPD and LDF policies.

Explanation:

4.38 Since there are many planning constraints in a highly urbanised area such as Merseyside and Halton, additional Areas of Search provide guidance to planners and the waste management industry as to where constraints are likely to be fewer and further suitable development opportunities may be found for waste re-processing and other small-scale waste management activities. More details on re-processing activities can be found in appendix 1.

4.39 The purpose of Areas of Search is to provide a strategic steer for:

- Locating areas which are likely to be suitable for small-scale waste re-processing activities;
- Identifying areas which are likely to be suitable for the re-location of existing, small-scale waste management facilities that are required to move as a consequence of wider land use change and regeneration activities;
- Providing an opportunity for clustering of waste management activities where there are benefits in terms of economies of scale or synergistic waste management activities.
- Provide additional flexibility to the Plan.

4.40 The areas of search have been selected to fit with the spatial strategy, and are focused in industrial areas where there are existing clusters of waste management activity. In most districts these coincide with specific site allocations, as these areas were shown to be most sustainable during the site selection process, however, in other districts, a more focused area was identified to fit with their emerging Core Strategies and regeneration plans.

4.41 There are both positive and negative effects in co-locating sites, it can provide opportunities for synergies but intensification of use in those areas could also lead to negative cumulative effects for example with regard to traffic, and emissions like dust, noise and litter. The SA recommends that planning applications for additional sites should be accompanied by an analysis of potential cumulative effects, and will be addressed through the application of criteria based policies. This policy also provides the flexibility necessary to promote further growth in the waste sector and the creation of local employment opportunities.

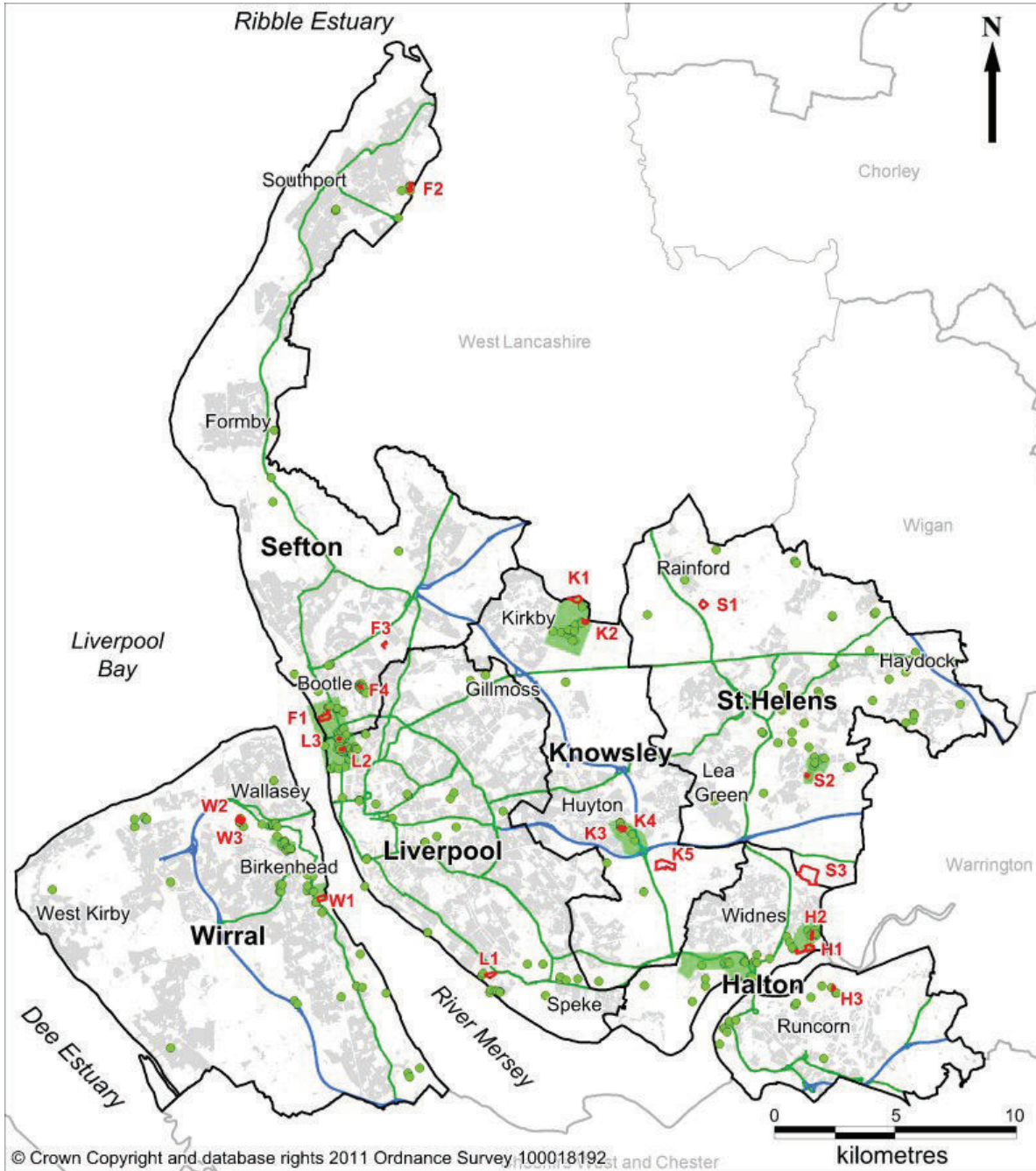
4.42 Several major regeneration schemes are currently being developed across the sub-region e.g. Wirral and Liverpool Waters, Mersey Gateway which could result in substantial changes to the pattern and nature of existing land uses. Should existing waste uses need to be relocated as a consequence of future regeneration priorities, areas of search can also provide the basis for identifying suitable site locations in the first instance, to ensure that



the waste treatment capacity delivered by existing operations is maintained. This policy approach also provide some additional flexibility in the Waste DPD to respond to the waste management needs of major regeneration schemes in the sub-region.

4.43 The broad Areas of Search and Waste DPD allocations are shown on Figure 4.2.

Figure 4.2 Waste DPD Site Allocations and Areas of Search



© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey, 100018192, Merseyside and Chester

| Site Allocations | District Sites | Landfill Sites |
|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Site Allocation | H2 - Eco-cycle Waste Ltd | K5 - Cronton Claypit |
| Built Facilities | H3 - Runcorn WWTW | S3 - Bold Heath Quarry |
| Sub Regional Sites | K2 - Image Business Park | Areas of search |
| H1 - Widnes Waterfront Site | K3 - Mainsway Ltd, Brickfields | Existing waste site |
| K1 - Butlers Farm | K4 - Former Pilkington Glass Works | Motorway |
| L1 - Land off Stalbridge Road | L2 - Site off Regent Road | Primary route |
| F1 - Alexandra Dock 1 | L3 - Lower Bank View | Residential area |
| S1 - Land to SW of Sandwash Close | F2 - 55 Crowland Street | Merseyside and halton boundary |
| W1 - Car parking/Storage Area, former Cammell Laird Shipyard | F3 - Land North of Farriers Way | |
| | F4 - 1-2 Acorn Way | |
| | S2 - Land North of TAC | |
| | W2 - Bidston MRF/HWRC | |
| | W3 - Former Goods Yard | |

4 Site Allocations to deliver capacity requirements



Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Needs Assessment, SA Scoping Objectives & Reports, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

Areas of Search for Household Waste Recycling Centres

4.44 The Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA) is responsible for provision of Household Waste Recycling Centres (HWRCs) on behalf of the districts, and it operates a network of 14 HWRCs across Merseyside. In addition, to this there are a further two sites operated in Halton by Halton Council. Most districts have a well distributed network of HWRCs, although a number of the sites need upgrading or re-locating to maximise the role they play in re-use, recycling and recovery of waste, and to achieve recycling and composting targets set in the JMWMS.

4.45 Replacement sites have been identified for both Huyton and Kirkby HWRCs, and these have both received planning consent from Knowsley Council. Halton Council has indicated that the district site allocation in Runcorn may be used as a site to replace the existing HWRC. MWDA has not indicated a specific requirement for any other replacement HWRCs across the sub-region.

4.46 The Liverpool City Council area is currently served by only one operational HWRC site at Otterspool in South Liverpool, although many Liverpool residents make use of HWRCs in neighbouring authorities, such as South Sefton Recycling Centre, Huyton and Kirkby. MWDA generally aim to ensure that residents should only have to travel a reasonable distance (approximately 3km) to a HWRC. Therefore, there is a demonstrable need and identified requirement for one or more new HWRC sites within the City of Liverpool.

4.47 MWDA has not identified specific sites for any new HWRCs within Liverpool. Any required HWRC site would not be large (generally < 1 ha depending on local conditions and the need for on-site vehicle circulation areas), and could potentially be co-located with other waste management activities on larger sites.

4.48 To assist in the identification of new HWRC sites within the City of Liverpool, the Waste DPD has identified an area of search for this waste use.

Policy WM 6

Additional HWRC Requirements

New or replacement HWRCs within the boundary of the City of Liverpool should not be in close proximity to the existing HWRC at Otterspool or to existing HWRCs in other districts which are located close to the city boundary, and will be informed by the following criteria:

- population density;
- travel time from an existing HWRC; and,
- travel distance to an existing HWRC.

Proposals for new HWRCs will be expected to also comply with other policies within the Waste DPD.

Explanation

4.49 Identification of sites for HWRCs requires close working with MWDA, as they have specific locational requirements for HWRCs, and also some quite specific requirements in terms of site size, for example capacity to accommodate queueing traffic. There is a particular shortfall in Liverpool which has the highest population, but fewest number of HWRCs. MWDA has not indicated the number of new HWRCs required in Liverpool or identified any specific sites, therefore, having a policy which defines the needs for an additional HWRC was agreed to be helpful.



4.50 MWDA has indicated that a distance of approximately 3km is the general rationale for locating an even distribution of HWRCs, however other criteria are also considered. Importantly, population density is a factor since HWRCs can rationally be located close to the communities where there is a need for the facility. This also serves to minimise travel distances and reduce travel times to any facility, and enables communities to take responsibility for their own waste, subject to land availability.

Policy and Evidence Base References

PPS10, WS2007, JMWMS, Needs Assessment, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports



5 Development Management Policies

5.1 All planning applications for waste management facilities, including HWRCs must comply with the relevant policies of this DPD, and other relevant policies in the districts LDFs, in addition to national policy.

5.1 Protection of Existing Waste Management Capacity

5.2 PPS10 requires that planning facilitates the delivery of sustainable waste management by providing sufficient opportunities for new waste management facilities of the right type, in the right place at the right time. It also requires that planning authorities consider the likely impact of proposed non-waste development on existing waste management facilities and on sites and areas allocated for waste management. Where proposals would prejudice implementation of the Waste DPD then the proposals should be amended to make them acceptable or planning permission should be refused.

5.3 Alongside the specific site allocations, existing waste management facilities already form the majority of the waste management infrastructure and capacity in the sub-region. It is acknowledged that there will always be an element of flux in the waste management industry, however, there is a requirement for a certain level of waste management provision to meet the needs of Merseyside and Halton. The current operational waste management capacity and the site allocations are essential to meeting those needs. Without protection or safeguarding of existing facilities or site allocations then the waste management capacity would be vulnerable to non-waste development thus reducing the certainty of the Waste DPD meeting sub-regional waste management needs.

Policy WM 7

Protecting Existing Waste Management Capacity

Existing operational and consented waste management sites will be expected to remain in waste management use in order to maintain essential waste management capacity. Any change of use from waste management will only be allowed in exceptional circumstances, and will need to be justified by the developer by demonstrating that the waste use is:

- located in an inappropriate area;
- causing significant loss of amenity;
- that the lost capacity has been made up for elsewhere, or can be provided through existing site allocations.

Explanation

5.4 It is important that adequate waste management capacity is retained throughout the plan period. Therefore, it is proposed that a change of use from an operational permitted or consented waste management use would need to be justified by local circumstances by the applicant, and will be monitored through the Implementation and Monitoring strategy.

5.5 The vast majority of existing waste management facilities are located on industrial estates, or areas where their impact on local amenity is low. However, it is acknowledged that in the past some waste management infrastructure has developed in unsuitable locations. A change of use may only be acceptable on sites which are found to be in an unsuitable location as a result of new sensitive uses being developed around them, or because of a new regeneration scheme or a major scheme displaces them which will be deemed suitable for a change of use. It is noted that cessation of waste management activity at a specific site cannot be controlled through planning permission.

Policy and Evidence Base References

PPS10, Needs Assessment, SA Scoping Objectives and Reports, Habitats Regulations Assessment.



5.2 Waste Prevention and Resource Management

5.6 Waste prevention lies at the top of the waste hierarchy with the principal objective being to minimise the amount of waste produced in the first place, before considering how the waste is managed. Waste reduction and the control of waste growth is one of the biggest challenges in Merseyside and Halton. It is also the area of greatest importance in terms of effort, reducing cost of treatment and reducing the requirement for new sites and facilities.

5.7 Despite the importance of waste prevention in reducing the amount of waste that needs to be managed within the sub-region, there are limited opportunities for the planning system through the Waste DPD to influence it. One of the key ways it can assist is through the requirement for planning applications to consider waste management at the planning, design and construction phases. This principally influences the amount of construction, demolition and excavation waste produced and the way it is managed. Policy WM8 for Waste Prevention and Resource Management is shown below.

Policy WM 8

Waste Prevention and Resource Management

Any development involving demolition and/or construction must implement measures to achieve the efficient use of resources, taking particular account of:

- Construction and demolition methods that minimise waste production and encourage re-use and recycling materials, as far as practicable on-site;
- Designing out waste by using design principles and construction methods that prevent and minimise the use of resources and make provision for the use of high-quality building materials made from recycled and secondary sources;
- Use of waste audits or site waste management plans (SWMP), where applicable, to monitor waste minimisation, recycling, management and disposal.

Evidence demonstrating how this will be achieved must be submitted with development proposals of this type.

Explanation:

5.8 The Government wants sustainable waste management to go beyond the traditional remit of land use planning for waste management and address waste prevention in a more integrated way. The development management process is a key mechanism for delivering waste prevention and resource management practices on development sites. This can be achieved through binding legal agreements and the adoption of SWMPs.

5.9 Although there are limited opportunities for planning to influence waste prevention and resource management, it is considered important for the Waste DPD to act as a signpost for waste prevention issues including:

- Raising general awareness and understanding of waste issues;
- Raising the profile of waste prevention and the need to reduce the amount of waste produced across all activities and not just land use planning;
- Making the link between waste prevention and business resource efficiency.

5.10 Further benefits of the Waste Prevention and Resource Management policy include:

- Highlighting the statutory requirement for SWMPs for developments valued at greater than £300,000;
- Improving the rate at which we divert material away from landfill (which is particularly important for the sub-region);
- Promoting waste prevention and resource management to the widest possible audience, and not just those developers who are covered by the SWMP Regulations.



5.11 The adoption of more sustainable waste management practices is becoming an increasingly important consideration in terms of improving business performance and efficiency. It is fast becoming financially essential for competitive businesses to make better use of resources and spend less money on waste disposal. Examples include reducing the consumption of raw materials, manufacturing aggregates from waste materials and lowering transport and waste collection costs.

5.12 Evidence of how proposals are going to deliver the requirements of policy WM8 need to be submitted with any planning application. There are several mechanisms for doing this such as the Design and Access Statement, the SWMP (where applicable) or in a separate report.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Waste Strategy 2007, Site Waste Management Plan Regulations 2008, Needs Assessment, Issues & Options Report, Preferred Options Report, Sustainability Appraisal Scoping Objectives and Report.

5.3 Design and Layout for New Development

Sustainable Design of New Developments

5.13 National and regional guidance identifies that waste management must be considered in any new development alongside other planning issues, and therefore policy areas in the Waste DPD must be integrated with all the Districts' LDF documents. With respect to good design of new development, PPS10 requires the Waste DPD to consider two distinctly different elements:

- Detailed consideration of waste management in design and layout of all new development;
- Design and construction of high quality waste management facilities that not only manage waste in a safe and responsible manner but also carefully consider their impact on, amongst others, amenity, townscape, landscape and transport.

Integrating Sustainable Waste Management in the Design and Layout of New Development

In terms of influencing the design and layout of new development from a waste perspective this policy should help to move waste up the waste hierarchy in a local context by applying a best fit solution for each individual development, and by making it easier to recycle without having a negative effect on the street scene.

5.14 Policy WM9 for Sustainable Waste Management Design and Layout for New Development is shown below:

Policy WM 9

Sustainable Waste Management Design and Layout for New Development

The design and layout of new built developments and uses must, where relevant, provide measures as part of their design strategy to address the following:

- Facilitation of collection and storage of waste, including separated recyclable materials;
- Provide sufficient access to enable waste and recyclable materials to be easily collected and transported for treatment;
- Accommodation of home composting in dwellings with individual gardens;
- Facilitate small scale, low carbon combined heat and power in major new employment and residential schemes, where appropriate.

Explanation:

5.15 A significant proportion of Merseyside and Halton's population live in flats and terrace houses, or properties which were not constructed with multi-bin LACW collections in mind. Further to this, the size of the average household is decreasing, with the number of single person households set to rise. The 2001 National Census



figures indicated that approximately 33% of Merseyside households were single occupancy. This change in occupancy level is being reflected in the types and designs of new houses, with smaller properties and more apartments being built. This creates an ongoing challenge for sustainable urban design and modern sustainable waste management practices, particularly in terms of storage and collection of waste.

5.16 However, it is not just design and layout of new residential development which needs to consider these issues. It is equally important for new commercial and industrial developments and other employment ventures to consider opportunities for incorporating sustainable waste management principles into their proposals. This is particularly important as the larger the development, the greater the opportunities for incorporating and maximising sustainable waste management practices.

5.17 It is important to note that the type of recyclables collected and the method of collection is different in each district. Some districts have already expanded to cover kitchen food waste collections, and this may be rolled out more extensively as the targets to divert more waste from landfill increase. Therefore, reference should be made by the developer to the relevant Waste Collection Authority at the planning application stage, to ensure that proper consideration is given to the number and types of receptacle for waste collection.

5.18 The inclusion of space for home composting will not be appropriate in all developments, for example communal apartments/flats due to insufficient space or management implications. However, where possible home composting should be encouraged, as this is another means by which the Waste DPD can influence the amount of waste entering the waste stream.

5.19 It is important that measures incorporated to meet the requirements of this policy are practical and capable of implementation in order to maximise the benefits that can be achieved by non-waste development in delivering sustainable waste management.

Policy and Evidence Base References

5.20 PPS10, Waste Strategy 2007, District UDPs, Emerging District Core Strategies, Issues & Options Report, Preferred Options Report, Sustainability Appraisal Scoping Objectives and Reports.

5.4 Design and Operation of New Waste Management Facilities

5.21 The general negative, public perception of waste management facilities stem, in part, from the fact that in the past they were constructed with pure function in mind, and they were seen as poor quality, low technology development with little integration within their local setting, leading to a prevailing view that waste management uses are bad neighbours. This is understandable as significant impacts and amenity issues have arisen in the past and the negative perceptions continue to create issues and concerns.

5.22 It is therefore, considered important to the communities, businesses and local authorities of Merseyside and Halton that the Waste DPD specifically addresses the design and operational issues associated with waste management infrastructure.

5.23 Design is more than just the way something looks or whether it works, and there is no prescriptive approach to follow. Good design needs to be forward-looking and flexible to respond to future policy and legislative requirements, as well as advances in technology. This is particularly important for waste management facilities as technologies are rapidly changing and because of market forces for re-usable and recyclable resources. Merseyside and Halton also needs to maximise the employment and economic opportunities that waste management facilities offer within the context of a highly restricted supply of land for employment uses.

5.24 Policy WM10 covers the High Quality Design and Operation of New Waste Management Facilities.



Policy WM 10

High Quality Design and Operation of Waste Management Facilities:

All proposals for waste management facilities should ensure that the proposed design and environmental performance does not adversely impact on the locality and achieves the best performance possible. Proposals must demonstrate that:

- Environmental performance and sustainable design has been incorporated from the design stage, with the aim of achieving a minimum BREEAM rating of "very good" or equivalent standard for industrial buildings up to 2016. From 2016 to 2027, it is expected that all new waste management facilities should be achieving an "excellent" BREEAM rating or equivalent standard for industrial buildings;
- The design and appearance of the building takes account of its proposed location and its likely visual impact on its setting within the townscape or landscape;
- Unacceptable impacts on amenity are avoided.

Explanation

5.25 Whilst design policies would reasonably be expected to be addressed in District LDFs, feedback from consultations has indicated a preference for a Waste DPD policy covering design and operation of new waste management facilities. This view reflects the poor perception of waste management sites and their operations in the past. Therefore, to ensure that new waste management facilities and the modernisation or intensification of existing facilities address this issue in a pro-active manner, this policy has been included within the Waste DPD.

5.26 Sustainable waste management sites are allocated in existing industrial areas, where they will be neighbours with other business uses, such as B2 and B8 use classes. They must be designed and operated to a high quality standard to avoid any negative effects on amenity, public or investor confidence. Whilst modern waste management facilities are tightly regulated with high standards of environmental control, this tends to cover only the management and operations. The Waste DPD has a role to play in setting higher standards of design and limiting environmental impact of the building itself in order to avoid negative effects, including carbon future proofing.

5.27 With the exception of Household Waste Reception Centres (HWRCs), all other built waste management facilities that are to be located in industrial and business areas are processes that should take place within enclosed buildings. Uses include bulking, transfer, materials recovery facility (MRF), mechanical biological treatment (MBT) and thermal technologies. Waste management activities carried out in a purpose-built enclosed building substantially reduces potential issues associated with the activity, such as the impact of noise, dust, odour, visual intrusion, air and water pollution, vibration and litter. Many of the mitigation measures can form part of good design, although they are often required through planning and permitting conditions. However, to be most effective, it is important that developers consider environmental impacts, amenity issues and design requirements from the outset.

5.28 The Building Research Establishment Environmental Assessment Method (BREEAM) for Industrial Uses is a national recognised certification scheme which can be used for assessing the environmental performance of industrial buildings from the design through to the completed building stage. There are BREEAM assessments available (www.breeam.org) for a range of different construction types from new construction, through extensions, major refurbishments and fit-out of existing buildings. Therefore, use of this approach or an equivalent standard should be applicable to most types of waste management development.

5.29 Given the contentious nature of waste activities, and the generally negative perception of waste management facilities, it is considered that the Waste DPD should strive to achieve the best design and environmental outcome for all new waste management facilities. Therefore, initially it is proposed that all new waste management design facilities should achieve a BREEAM rating of "very good" up until 2016, and thereafter new facilities should be striving to achieve a BREEAM rating of "excellent". The BREEAM rating can be substituted with an alternative equivalent standard. This will assist the sub-region in achieving high quality development, and reduce the impacts waste management may have on inward investment and regeneration, which is important given the restricted land availability. The Defra/CABE document 'Designing Waste Facilities - a guide to modern design in waste' provides useful guidance on all aspects of waste management design.



5.30 Although, there are no agreed standards across the waste planning authorities of the sub-region for industrial development, for housing development there is agreement that the Code for Sustainable Homes standard should be set at very good up to 2016, and thereafter excellent, and so a similar approach has been applied for waste management facilities. Whilst it could be argued that other types of non-residential development are not being required to meet a particular BREEAM standard, there are few developments which are as contentious or rouse public opposition as waste management facilities. Consequently, it is reasonable that the waste management industry pays particular attention to this issue.

5.31 With regard to the visual appearance of new waste management facilities, the design requirements will depend on the location and type of waste management facility proposed and any local policies that are in place. Consideration also needs to be given to wider design issues such as, how the facility will harmonise with its setting and take account of its contextual setting and strengthens the identity of the neighbourhood, landscape and historic environment. There may be essential elements of the facility which could form an architectural feature, or it may be more appropriate for the new facility to blend with its proposed new location; in the case of an industrial estate, this may mean ensuring that sympathetic materials are used to those of surrounding industrial units.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Sustainability Appraisal Objectives and Reports, Issues & Options and Preferred Options Reports, BREEAM Documents, Defra/CABE document 'Designing Waste Facilities - a guide to modern design in waste'.

5.5 Sustainable Waste Transport

5.32 The Waste DPD cannot create a modal shift in how waste is transported, but can encourage alternatives to road transport via considered location of waste management facilities. Therefore, the impacts of waste transport have been an explicit consideration throughout the development of the Waste DPD. To begin with proximity to alternative modes of transport informed the overall spatial strategy. It was also one of the many criteria that has been used to positively select proposed new sites for waste management facilities, including proximity to rail heads, dock and canal systems. Approximately 40% of the proposed allocations have the potential to use alternative modes of transport through proximity to railways, dock, river or canal systems, or where the site is large enough for co-location and there is potential for waste to move around the site using pipes or conveyors. Although, in some cases, this may require considerable infrastructure investment on the part of the developer which may affect deliverability and/or feasibility. The site selection methodology has also positively selected access to public transport in terms of getting potential employees to and from new waste facilities.

5.33 In addition, a policy WM5 on Areas of Search for small-scale waste sites has been developed which directs this type of development towards clusters of other waste uses within industrial locations, thereby creating potential synergies between waste sites and re-processors, which should lead to fewer and shorter vehicle movements between sites. Transport issues are also incorporated into the development management policies. All of the above has been informed by the SA which includes transport-related objectives as part of the assessment process.

5.34 Nevertheless, within Merseyside and Halton there are very few operational and/or permitted waste management facilities capable of accepting waste by alternative modes of transport other than by road. Consequently, there is a heavy reliance on road transport for waste collection, even if waste is then moved on by rail or water for part of the treatment and/or disposal. Waste transported by road can potentially have a significant impact in terms of congestion, nuisance, highway safety and maintenance, and emissions to air, particularly where heavy goods vehicles use minor roads. Therefore, diverting waste movements away from the existing road network and onto more sustainable, alternative modes of transport needs to be encouraged wherever technically possible, and economically viable to do so. Air Quality is also a consideration as several of the proposed site allocations are within or close to Air Quality Management Areas (AQMAs), or in areas close to air quality thresholds.

5.35 Merseyside and Halton benefits from extensive dock facilities, railheads and potential for barge movement of waste by water by using the Mersey Estuary and the Manchester Ship Canal. Therefore, there are opportunities to take advantage of alternative modes of transport, whilst acknowledging other economic and feasibility limitations. It is also important for the Waste DPD to ensure that that the amenity and carbon impacts of waste transport by all modes should be minimised and mitigated for as far as possible.



Policy WM 11

Sustainable Waste Transport

All proposals for new waste management facilities (or extensions to an existing waste management facility) will be expected to meet the following criteria:

- Make use of alternatives to road transport for movement of wastes (such as water and rail transport and, where appropriate, use of pipelines and conveyors to neighbouring sites), wherever possible.
- Ensure there are sustainable choices of travel for its employees and visitors (such as, walking, cycling, public transport).
- Provide mitigation for the effects of road transport on local amenity including use of screening, sound insulation and time tabling traffic movements.
- Ensure safe access to and from the public highway and adequate capacity of local highway infrastructure.
- Reduce the impact of transport on climate change and carbon emissions.

Where development proposals cannot fulfil any of the requirements of the policy, then the planning proposal must provide justification.

Explanation

5.36 The purpose of the policy is to encourage alternative modes of transport for as many facilities as possible, although it is acknowledged that depending on where the waste resource is going larger, strategic facilities will offer greater potential due to scale, tonnages and economics. Nevertheless, development of new wharfs and railheads at larger, sub-regional sites which are likely to manage large quantities of waste, may justify for development of new transport infrastructure and could also act as a catalyst for other smaller facilities to cluster and locate in the near vicinity. This would increase the potential for treatment facilities to be accessible by alternative modes of transport. Sustainable transport issues should be considered for all waste management development, on both allocated and unallocated sites, including areas of search.

5.37 The requirements of this policy will be assessed using a number of criteria. Applicants will be required to carry out a site-specific evaluation of the potential for transporting waste or waste related products by means other than road transport, taking account of:

- site location;
- type and volume of materials being transported;
- availability of existing non-road infrastructure;
- integration with other sites;
- financial viability;
- appropriate routing & access to the site.

5.38 This can be reported in a Design and Access Statement or Transport Assessment, whichever is most appropriate. Applicants may also be required to prepare and implement a staff travel plan, and a vehicle movement management plan in accordance with relevant district LDFs and the LTPs.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Merseyside Local Transport Plan 3, Halton LTP, District UDPs and emerging Core Strategies, Sustainability Appraisal Objectives and Reports, Ensuring Choice of Travel SPD.



5.6 Criteria for Waste Management Development

5.39 Compliance with policy WM12 Criteria for Waste Management Development will maximise opportunities for ensuring that waste planning applications are submitted with appropriate information to enable the impacts of the proposal to be adequately assessed, therefore improving the efficiency and certainty of the planning process.

Policy WM 12

Criteria for Waste Management Development

All proposals for new waste management development (including landfill) and alterations/amendments to existing facilities will be expected to submit a report covering the general details of the proposed development and a written assessment and mitigation of the short, medium, long-term and cumulative impacts on its neighbours and the surrounding environment in terms of the:

- Social, economic and environmental Impacts on the area;
- Amenity Impacts;
- Traffic (& transport) Impacts;
- Heritage & Nature Conservation Impacts;
- Overall Sustainability of the proposals (including carbon and energy management performance);
- Hydrogeological/Hydrological/Geological Impacts (for landfill and open windrow composting only).

Applications should refer to Box 1 which lists the general information that must be submitted with all waste applications and criteria which should be included in the assessment of impacts.

Explanation

5.40 Policy WM12 requires that all key issues are addressed at the outset, therefore providing greater confidence to local planning authorities and communities, that the proposals would be high quality operations, and that any likely impacts will be appropriately controlled. For any waste management development, the developer should undertake pre-application discussions with the local planning authority and local community prior to submission of a formal planning application. This will help to ensure that all the necessary information is submitted with the planning application for the purposes of consultation, and make sure that the planning process is in conformity with the district's Statement of Community Involvement.

5.41 Waste management facilities have the potential to impact both positively and negatively on the area in which they are located. They vary greatly in the types and volumes of waste that they manage, the hours that they operate, access and storage on site, for example. Landfill also has specific long term issues which need to be managed.

5.42 Therefore, the criteria in WM12 that will need to be addressed for any planning application for a waste management facility whether it is a new development or alteration or amendment of an existing waste management facility. This will also include the requirement for an assessment of the potential short, medium and long term and cumulative impacts of the proposal on the site and its surroundings.

5.43 Some of the criteria listed may be considered to be quite general and applicable to many types of non-waste application, and the Waste DPD has tried to avoid duplicating criteria that will be listed either in Core Strategy DPDs, or other district DPDs. Planning applications for waste uses typically raise particular concerns with their neighbours and communities in which they sit, related to traffic, noise, odour, dust and litter and other disturbances. Consequently, although the impacts covered in the policy, and the criteria listed in box 1, include some general criteria, this is to demonstrate that the development of the Waste DPD has been alive to the concerns of communities and stakeholders, and that impacts which are particularly controversial for waste applications are dealt with by the Waste DPD.



5.44 Many of these issues will typically need to be assessed by the Environment Agency (EA) as part of the Environmental Permitting process too. However, there should not be significant duplication of effort or cost for the applicant in providing this information at the planning application stage if it is within the remit of Environmental Permitting. This type of information is often referred to as the Working Plan for the site. The criteria will not necessarily be controlled by planning, but through other legislative controls, however, many of them are important in determining acceptability of a proposal from a planning perspective.

5.45 Certain types and scale of waste management facility will be required to produce a statutory Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) under the Town and Country Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) (England and Wales) Regulations 1999. Requirements for individual EIA are assessed on a site specific basis across the six districts of the sub-region. For those applications which require Statutory EIAs, there would be a requirement to cover all the potential impacts included in this policy along with any other site specific impacts which may need to be addressed under EC Directives. This will provide consistency with the requirements being made on applications for waste management facilities that do not require statutory EIA.

5.46 This policy will ensure that waste management planning applications are dealt with consistently through an agreed sub-regional policy framework, and therefore it is advisable for all waste proposals to request a screening opinion in line with the EIA Regulations, and at the earliest opportunity.

Applications for Open Windrow Composting Facilities

5.47 Open windrow composting does not sit comfortably with either built facilities or landfill facilities. Although they are open air and therefore have a stronger relationship with landfilling activities, and tend to be located on the urban fringe or in the countryside. Composting activities can be similar to other rural industries but commercial scale waste composting is likely to be classed as inappropriate development in the Green Belt. In such cases, very special circumstances need to be demonstrated to justify that such facilities do not damage visual amenity by virtue of its siting, layout and design.

5.48 Open air windrow composting schemes have a minimal requirement for new or existing buildings, typically only for a site office and compound areas. Because composting activities are similar to other rural industries the siting of such facilities in the Green Belt may be considered acceptable, since they preserve the openness of the Green Belt in line with paragraph 3.4 of PPG2. Activities may also be acceptable on operational landfill sites where the composting forms part of the restoration process, but would not be allowed to continue beyond the restoration phase.

5.49 There are some particular issues associated with open windrow composting, such as creation of bioaerosols⁶ which require a buffer zone to be maintained between the facility and any sensitive receptors including houses, hospitals, schools etc., in line with Environment Agency guidance. They also produce a leachate⁶ which needs managing and require a large area of land to enable turning of the compost which keeps air flowing through the compost and speeds up the process.

5.50 Although a separate policy is not considered necessary for assessing open windrow composting sites, planning applications or change of use to open windrow composting will only be considered acceptable if the site selection process includes consideration of the existing and surrounding uses of the site, and compliance with this policy (WM12) and policy WM13.



Box 1

Information to be Submitted in Support of a Waste Planning Application for Policy

General Information

1. A Statement of pre-application discussion regarding the proposal with the Local Planning Authority and details of community engagement.
2. The nature, volume and tonnages of each waste material to be accepted at the facility having reference to the European Waste Codes.
3. The duration of operations and hours of working.
4. Details of off-street space for all deliveries, collections and storage of materials together with associated parking.
5. Details of residual waste arising from the process.
6. Design details.
7. Proposals for dealing with:
 - Noise, odour, dust;
 - Birds & vermin;
 - Litter.

Environmental and Amenity Impacts

1. Impacts on Air quality.
2. Impacts to controlled waters.
3. Ground stability (where applicable).
4. Impacts on Agricultural land (where applicable).
5. Soil quality (where applicable).
6. Flood Risk and drainage issues (particularly associated with hazardous waste facilities).
7. Impacts on existing and proposed neighbouring land uses.
8. Aerodrome safeguarding (for landfill and Energy from Waste facilities or any waste use that has tall buildings or processes that may attract birds, or employ technologies which may affect navigation systems).
9. An assessment of cumulative impacts associated with nearby waste management activity or industrial processes.
10. Potential effects on human health.

Traffic & Transport Impacts

1. Broadly where the waste is coming from (and where it will go to if it is an intermediary facility) and how it will be transported (locally, regionally, nationally).
2. Number of traffic movements generated daily and tonnages of waste per vehicle movement.
3. Types of vehicles to be used and proposed routes for accessing the site.

Heritage and Nature Conservation Impacts

1. Measures to safeguard and enhance existing and potential archaeological, heritage and conservation interests
2. Measures to safeguard and enhance ecological, geological, geomorphological and landscape features of interest at the site.
3. With respect to nature conservation, project-level HRA screening will be required for any site within 1km of an internationally designated site and the applicant will be required to provide sufficient evidence to enable HRA screening to be undertaken.

Sustainability Impacts



1. Carbon performance of the proposed development and operations (including transport), especially for thermal treatment.
2. Contribution the proposal will make to adapting to and reducing the impacts of climate change.
3. A Statement of how the proposed facility will contribute to the waste management self sufficiency of Merseyside and Halton.
4. An economic assessment of the proposed facility (e.g. creation of jobs (including number during construction and operation and skills levels), impacts on local economy).
5. An energy statement.

Landfill and Open Windrow Composting Specific Impacts

1. Consideration of requirements for ancillary development in future stages of the development e.g. Landfill gas flaring (landfill only).
2. Details of restoration of the site and suitable provisions for aftercare and monitoring, including, where appropriate, the long-term management of leachate and gas emissions.
3. Hydrogeological, hydrological and soil permeability characteristics.
4. Provide evidence that the development will not increase NOx levels in the vicinity (applies to non-inert landfill sites within 1km of an internationally designated site only)
5. Propose bird-scaring measures appropriate to the individual site (applies to non-inert landfill sites within 5km of an internationally designated site only)

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Issues and Options Report, Preferred Options Report, Sustainability Appraisal Objectives and Report, District UDPs and Core Strategies, Habitat Regulations Assessment.

5.7 Waste Management Applications on Unallocated Sites

5.51 It is inevitable that availability of sites will change over time. For example, some of those we have identified may become unavailable because they will be used for other purposes. In other instances, landowners and developers may propose new locations for waste management facilities that do not appear on the Site Allocations Map which accompanies this Waste DPD or take advantage of possible windfall sites that may come forward during the plan period, and these will also be considered in line with policy WM1.

5.52 Some waste management planning applications are submitted as a change of use to an existing industrial activity, under the terms of the Town and Country Planning (Use Classes) Order 1987. This is most likely to occur if the existing use of the site is classed as B1/B2 or B8 industrial use. Although B1 activities are restricted in terms of impact on residential areas, several waste management activities have been deemed to be classed as B2 general industrial use. Impacts on neighbouring uses are a particular issue arising from change of use to waste management use.

5.53 There may also be instances where the needs assessment or spatial need changes and a particular type of waste management operation which was not previously considered necessary may be supported. Bearing all these points in mind, this policy WM14 deals with Planning Applications for New Waste Management Facilities on unallocated sites to provide the Waste DPD with sufficient flexibility to take account of these changes.



Policy WM 13

Planning Applications for New Waste Management Facilities on Unallocated Sites

Planning permission will only be granted for additional waste management facilities on unallocated sites where the applicant has provided written evidence to demonstrate:

- That a suitable allocated site is not available or suitable for their proposed use;
- That the proposed site can be justified against the criteria for built facilities used in the site selection process for allocated sites shown in table 5.1;
- The site will be sustainable in terms of its social, economic and environmental impacts and this has been demonstrated through Sustainability Appraisal and Habitats Regulations Assessment Screening at the project-level;
- The proposal complies with the vision and spatial strategy for the Waste DPD and satisfies criteria in policy WM1 and WM12.

Full details of the criteria and scores used as part of the site assessment process for allocated sites is shown in Table 5.1. Reference should be made to this to ensure that the correct criteria are being applied consistently. For this reason, it is important that early pre-application discussions are held with the local planning authority, and that the method used and results of the assessment should be submitted with the application.

Explanation

5.54 A detailed site assessment process has informed the site allocations for built facilities. A high degree of agreement has been achieved on the criteria and site assessment process through public and stakeholder consultation. Full details of the site assessment process is available as a supporting document - The Built Facilities Methodology Report. It is essential that the evaluation of any additional sites is consistent with the approach used for identifying the allocated sites, in order that the assessment is objective and transparent.

5.55 Table 5.1 shows the criteria and relevant scores that have been used to assess the allocated sites, however, the scoring process has only been part of the site selection process as a deliverability assessments, Habitats Regulation Assessment and Sustainability Appraisal has also been carried out for each site. The deliverability assessment should cover land ownership issues, availability of utilities on site and any council planning aspirations for the site/area.

5.56 The HRA indicates that there should be a buffer zone of at least 200m between the nearest boundary of the site and any internationally designated site to limit any increases in nitrogen deposition. Closer separation should only be permitted if it can be demonstrated that the impact of the facility on the designated site will be inconsequential.

5.57 It should be noted that the Waste DPD site selection process has assessed whether the site will have an impact on each of the criteria individually. By adopting a consistent approach to the assessment of proposed new sites with that of allocated sites, it will enable all waste management sites to be assessed on an equitable basis. This approach is supported by the SA.



Table 5.1 Table : Site Selection Criteria for Built Facilities

| Criteria | Zone 1 | Score | Zone 2 | Score | Zone 3 | Score | Zone 4 | Score | Zone 5 | Score | Zone 6 | Score |
|--|--------------|-------|--------------|--------|-------------|-------|----------|-------|----------|-------|---------|-------|
| Listed buildings; Parks and gardens; SAMs | within | -50 | 0-100m | -10 | 100-250m | -5 | >250m | 0 | | | | |
| SACs SPAs & Ramsar; NNRs & SSSIs; WHS; Residential areas; Schools; Hospitals; Food processing plants | within | -50 | 0-100m | -25 | 100-250m | -20 | 250-500m | -10 | 500m-1km | -5 | >1km | 0 |
| Nitrate Vulnerable Zones | within | -2 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Prime Agricultural Land | within | -15 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Controlled surface waters; Green Belt | within | -15 | 0-100m | -5 | >100m | 0 | | | | | | |
| Indicative Floodplain | Flood Zone 3 | -15 | Flood Zone 2 | -10 | outside | 0 | | | | | | |
| Groundwater source protection zones | Risk zone 1 | -15 | Risk zone 2 | -10 | Risk zone 1 | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | |
| Ancient Woodlands; LNRs; Local biological & geological sites; Conservation areas; AQMAs; Green & open public space | within | -15 | 0-100m | -10 | 100-250m | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | |
| Unsuitable land allocation (B1 allocations); Public rights of way; Notifiable hazard zone (COMAH sites) | within | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Aerodrome safeguarding zone | within -15 | 0-5km | -2 | 5-13km | -1 | >13km | 0 | | | | | |
| Major road junction | within 1km | +15 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Previously developed land | within | +15 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large energy customer zone | within 500m | +10 | 500m-2km | +5 | outside | 0 | | | | | | |
| Current landfill; Industrial areas; Proximity to railway sidings; Proximity to canals; Proximity to docks; Access to public transport (bus); Access to public transport (rail) | within | +15 | 0-100m | +10 | 100-250m | +5 | >250m | 0 | | | | |
| Proximity to unemployment areas; Proximity to strategic routes | within | +15 | 0-100m | +12 | 100-250m | +10 | 250-500m | +5 | 500m-1km | +2 | outside | 0 |
| Other operating waste site | co-located | +20 | 0-100m | +15 | 100-250m | +10 | 250-500m | +5 | >500m | 0 | | |
| Proximity to waste arisings (town centres) | within | +20 | 0-100m | +15 | 100-250m | +12 | 250-500m | +10 | 500m-1km | +5 | >1km | 0 |



Policy and Evidence Base References

PPS10, Issues & Options Report, Preferred Options Report, Sustainability Appraisal Reports and Scoping Objectives, District UDPs and emerging District Core Strategy DPDs, Built Facilities Site Search Methodology, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

5.8 Energy from Waste

Energy from Waste Provision

5.58 Merseyside and Halton is in the unusual position of having a significant amount of consented and available EfW capacity within the sub-region which exceeds the identified EfW management need by over 450,000 tonnes of refuse-derived fuel (RDF). Whilst there is no guarantee that all the consented capacity for EfW will either be built or be available to Merseyside and Halton, there is sufficient capacity to meet the identified needs.

5.59 Since the Preferred Options Consultation, MWDA has also narrowed its Resource Recovery procurement process down to the final two bidders, both of whom are proposing to use consented facilities outside the sub-region. Therefore, the requirement to allocate sites for EfW specifically for LACW is removed. Policy WM14 on Energy from Waste Provision is shown below:

Policy WM 14

Energy from Waste

No new sites for large scale Energy from Waste for Local Authority Collected Waste or Commercial and Industrial Waste are allocated. Reliance will be placed on existing consents and operational facilities within Merseyside and Halton, the outcome of the MWDA procurement process and the capacity in the wider Northern region of England to meet the identified needs.

Small Scale Energy from Waste Facilities

Applications for small scale EfW facilities, up to a maximum of 80,000 tpa treatment capacity or up to a maximum of 10MW heat and power output, which can be demonstrated to serve an identified local need, such as providing an existing business with significant energy requirements, or a district heating scheme to provide affordable warmth, will be considered subject to compliance with policies WM12 and WM13.

Explanation

5.60 Within Merseyside and Halton the existing regionally significant facility at Ineos Chlor has over 250,000 tonnes of permitted capacity available to treat Solid Recovered Fuel / Refuse Derived Fuel (SRF/RDF) processed from approximately 500,000 tonnes of residual waste. There are also several other consented facilities with a lesser capacity. Throughout the development of the Waste DPD there has been regular liaison with the owners of these facilities and there is reasonable assurance that these sites will be developed.

5.61 The policy is responding to the evidence base which clearly demonstrates that Merseyside and Halton has sufficient EfW capacity to meet its LACW and Commercial and Industrial Waste (C&I) needs, and that it also has some capacity to contribute to regional capacity needs. This takes account of the fact that the final bidders for the MWDA PFI contract intend to utilise facilities outside the sub-region, but that the corresponding amount of EfW capacity in Merseyside and Halton will be available for other sub-regions either to manage LACW or C&I wastes, as is the case with the Ineos Chlor facility.

5.62 A significant proportion of this consented EfW capacity is currently targeted at C&I waste via merchant facilities, and the Needs Assessment indicates that there is no justification for allocating further sites within the Waste DPD for this purpose. The industry can use a combination of operational capacity and current planning consents to meet the identified need through, for instance, commercial contracts.



5.63 Allocation of sites for further EfW capacity, if they were built, would inevitably lead to the import of substantial amounts of waste and RDF into Merseyside & Halton over and above existing imports and those which will take place if consented capacity is delivered. Whilst it is acknowledged that Merseyside and Halton will need to continue exporting some waste to landfill, and that the MWDA PFI contract will result in waste being exported, this has been balanced by residual waste being imported from neighbouring planning authorities, allocating additional sites for treatment, and the existing consented EfW capacity. Furthermore, the needs assessment also indicates that Merseyside and Halton is much closer to achieving self sufficiency than it was several years ago.

5.64 Some concerns were also raised at Preferred Options stage with respect to health implications associated with EfW Facilities. Health concerns have not been upheld at recent Public Inquiries into proposed EfW facilities where the Health Protection Agency have indicated that there is no proven health risk associated with EfW. This is also shown in the Evidence Base through the study 'Health Effects of Waste Management' (Richard Smith Consulting Ltd).

5.65 Should applications for small scale EfW facilities (up to a maximum of 80,000 tpa treatment capacity or up to a maximum of 10MW heat and power output) come forward in the form of combined heat and power to serve a local need such as an existing business with significant energy requirements or a District heating scheme then criteria based policy will be used to judge such applications on their merits. In this event then policy WM12 and WM13 will apply.

5.66 These figures (80,000 tpa treatment capacity and 10MW heat and power output) have been derived from experience of planning applications, the economic viability of operations and typical heat and power outputs that would enable a EfW to contribute a reasonable proportion of renewable energy for business energy requirements or district heating schemes.

5.67 Applications for Energy from Waste facilities should demonstrate the facility will not have an adverse air quality effect on internationally designated sites within a 10km radius. This should be accomplished through a project-level HRA screening and will need full appropriate assessment in the event that significant impacts are identified.

5.68 The intention is that small scale EfW facilities would serve a local need, both in terms of using local waste as fuel, and to provide heat and power to local businesses enabling them to operate efficiently in Merseyside and Halton. Alternatively, so that waste can be used to provide heat for district heating schemes, thus providing affordable warmth and energy security to residents, and allowing the negatively perceived waste industry to make a positive contribution back to local communities.

5.69 Enabling provision of small scale EfW facilities (within strict policy parameters) within Merseyside and Halton adds flexibility to the Waste DPD, by providing scope for the sub-region to become more self sufficient in waste management, and promoting a low carbon economy.

5.70 This approach is supported by the SA, which judges these policies to be in line with sustainability principles and has potential to lead to a more sustainable approach to the management of waste.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, MWDA Resource Recovery Procurement Contract, Sustainability Appraisal Objectives and Report, Needs Assessment, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

5.9 Development Management Policy for Landfill

Assessing Planning Applications for Landfill

5.71 The 'Survey for Landfill in Merseyside and Halton' Report (see supporting documents) has shown that there is some opportunity for inert waste landfill. The opportunity for future landfill of non-hazardous, non-inert waste in the sub-region is very constrained, therefore, there will be continued reliance on neighbouring sub-regions for this purpose. In order for the assessment of proposed new landfill sites to be transparent, it is important that a policy approach is established. Therefore, policy WM15 deals with landfill applications on unallocated sites.



Policy WM 15

Landfill on Unallocated Sites

Planning permission will only be granted for additional landfill on unallocated sites where it is demonstrated that:

- The proposal can be justified against the criteria used for the Waste DPD site selection process for landfill sites shown in table 5.2;
- That the proposal complies with vision and spatial strategy for the Waste DPD and satisfies the criteria set out in policy WM12;
- Sustainability Appraisal and Habitats Regulation Assessment have been undertaken at the project level and any negative effects can be satisfactorily mitigated for, and;
- That it contributes to the identified need for residual landfill capacity.

Full details of the criteria used as part of the site assessment process for allocated landfill sites can be found in Table 5.2. Reference should be made to this to ensure that the correct criteria are being applied consistently. For this reason, it is important that early pre-application discussions are held with the local planning authority, and that the method used and results of the assessment should be submitted with the application.

Explanation

5.72 Although Merseyside and Halton can demonstrate that they are contributing to the regional waste infrastructure needs for built facilities, due to the urban nature of the sub-region, the relatively restricted minerals and aggregate industry and its underlying geology/hydrogeology, it is difficult to identify sites which may be appropriate for landfill, particularly non-inert landfill. Currently, Merseyside and Halton are exporting considerable amounts of non-inert waste to neighbouring authorities, and obviously this is a concern for those affected.

5.73 The volumes of waste requiring landfill disposal are already decreasing as a consequence of higher rates of diversion from landfill, principally through recycling, and as new built, treatment facilities come on line. Decreasing rates of landfill are raising concerns for existing landfill operators, as landfill sites are not filling quickly enough to allow them to complete and restored within their permitted time frames. This is likely to result in applications for time extensions for many of the North West's landfills, although there is no guarantee that time extensions will be granted, if time extensions are consented there may not be a regional requirement for significant new landfill capacity. Nevertheless, it is important that Merseyside and Halton has a robust policy to assess new landfill opportunities on unallocated sites.

5.74 This approach is applicable to both inert and non-inert landfill, and was supported at the Preferred Options consultation and by the Sustainability Appraisal. The HRA indicates that there should be a buffer zone of at least 200m between the nearest boundary of the site and any internationally designated site to limit any increases in nitrogen deposition. Closer separation should only be permitted if it can be demonstrated that the impact of the facility on the designated site will be inconsequential.

5.75 Table 5.2 shows the criteria and relevant scores that have been used to assess the allocated landfill sites, however, the scoring process has only been part of the site selection process as a deliverability assessments, Habitats Regulations Assessment and Sustainability Appraisal has also been carried out for each site.



Table 5.2 Table : Site Selection Criteria for Landfill Facilities

| Criteria | Zone 1 | Score | Zone 2 | Score | Zone 3 | Score | Zone 4 | Score | Zone 5 | Score | Zone 6 | Score |
|--|--------------|-------|--------------|-------|-------------|-------|----------|-------|----------|-------|--------|-------|
| Listed buildings; Parks and gardens; SAMs | within | -50 | 0-100m | -10 | 100-250m | -5 | >250m | 0 | | | | |
| SACs SPAs & Ramsar; NNRs & SSSIs; WHS; Residential areas; Schools; Hospitals; Food processing plants | within | -50 | 0-100m | -25 | 100-250m | -20 | 250-500m | -10 | 500m-1km | -5 | >1km | 0 |
| Nitrate Vulnerable Zones | within | -2 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Prime Agricultural Land | within | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Controlled surface waters | within | -15 | 0-100m | -5 | >100m | 0 | | | | | | |
| Indicative Floodplain | Flood Zone 3 | -15 | Flood Zone 2 | -10 | outside | 0 | | | | | | |
| Groundwater source protection zones | Risk zone 1 | -50 | Risk zone 2 | -10 | Risk zone 1 | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | |
| Ancient Woodlands; LNRs; Local biological & geological sites; Conservation areas; AQMAs; Green & open public space | within | -15 | 0-100m | -10 | 100-250m | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | |
| Unsuitable land allocation (B1 allocations); Public rights of way; Notifiable hazard zone (COMAH sites) | within | -5 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Aerodrome safeguarding zone | within | -15 | 0-5km | -2 | 5-13km | -1 | >13km | 0 | | | | |
| Major road junction | within 1km | +15 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Previously developed land | within | +10 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large energy customer zone | within 500m | +10 | 500m-2km | +5 | outside | 0 | | | | | | |
| Former landfill; Former mineral extraction site; Current mineral extraction site | within | +15 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Current landfill | within | +20 | outside | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Other operating waste site; Proximity to railway sidings; Proximity to canals; proximity to docks | co-located | +15 | 0-100m | +10 | 100-250m | +5 | outside | 0 | | | | |
| Proximity to strategic routes | Co-located | +15 | 0-100m | +12 | 100-250m | +10 | 250-500m | +5 | 500m-1km | +2 | >1km | 0 |
| Proximity to waste arisings (town centres) | within | +20 | 0-100m | +15 | 100-250m | +12 | 250-500m | +10 | 500m-1km | +5 | >1km | 0 |



Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Needs Assessment, Survey for Landfill in Merseyside and Halton Report, Preferred Options consultation, PINS Frontloading Visit Report, Habitats Regulations Assessment.

5.10 Restoration and Aftercare

5.76 The development of waste management facilities can potentially have significant landscape and visual impacts. In order to reduce the scope and scale of any impact, and to ensure the sustainable use of land, it is necessary to ensure that sites can be satisfactorily reclaimed, and that such reclamation is not unduly delayed. For built waste management facilities, these activities will be controlled by the Environmental Permitting process. For landfill operations, it is important for the Waste Planning Authority to be involved and agree an after-use and restoration plan.

5.77 It is therefore important for landfill operators to understand what will be expected with respect to restoration and aftercare proposals. This information is laid out in policy WM16.

Policy WM 16

Restoration and Aftercare of Landfill Facilities

The Local Planning Authority will require applicants to submit a plan for the restoration and aftercare of land affected by proposals for landfill before planning permission is granted. The plan must include the following information:

- Details of the proposed after-use and landscaping of the site;
- Demonstration that pre-application consultation has taken place with the community in which the site is located;
- Details of the type of material to be used for filling and that the degree of compaction is compatible with the proposed after-use;
- Scaled drawings of existing and finished contours including pre and post settlement contours;
- How the landfilling scheme contributes to the landform and landscape quality on completion in accordance with any adopted landscape character assessment;
- Timescales for both operational and restoration phases of landfill and details of phased restoration;
- Suitable provision for aftercare and monitoring including, where appropriate, long term management of leachate and gas emissions;
- Energy recovery proposals (where technically feasible);
- Protocols outlining how damage to restoration caused by subsidence or access to gas and other infrastructure can be addressed, such as interim restoration;
- Details of long term funding mechanism for realising the aftercare and restoration proposals including legal agreements (or through financial provision agreement with the Environment Agency);
- Long term environmental management and ecology plan.

Explanation:

5.78 Land taken for landfill activities must be restored and completed at the earliest practicable opportunity and within the timescale permitted by the planning consent, as long term continued landfill of sites can have a serious detrimental impacts upon the amenities of adjacent communities. The restored landfill site must be made capable of supporting an acceptable after-use. Wherever possible the after-use should benefit the community in which it sits, although the after-use for a site may well vary according to its location, and the context of its setting. In all cases the identification of an appropriate after-use and aftercare conditions is needed at the outset, and progressive restoration will be required where possible.



5.79 Restored landfill can make a valuable contribution to green infrastructure and typical after-uses could include:

- Improving public access to the countryside, including public access for disabled people and recreation;
- Use for management of water resources and/or flooding management;
- The improvement of biodiversity and long term ecological management;
- Use as back-up grazing;
- Opportunities for energy production (e.g. wind, solar or biomass production);
- Return to agriculture, forestry or other 'open' use recreational facilities.
- Provision of ecosystem services⁶.

5.80 Restoration and aftercare proposals must be discussed at the pre-application stage to ensure that appropriate local consultation is undertaken prior to submitting the planning application, in accordance with district Statements of Community Involvement, and to allow local communities to influence the restoration proposals. Planning applications will not be validated without consideration of these issues or without public consultation. Detailed proposals must be proposed at an early stage and will be secured through legal agreements or conditions.

5.81 It is essential that sites are restored to the highest standards. Restoration proposals and methodologies will be assessed at the planning applications stage to ensure that operations are both technically and financially feasible and respect the character of the landscape in which the development is proposed and, where appropriate, improve the provision of facilities for the benefit of the local and wider community. Any restoration proposals must therefore address progressive/phased restoration, long term environmental management and funding mechanisms. Restoration proposals should be compatible with other policies of the Waste DPD and other relevant LDF documents for the district in which the site is located.

Policy and Evidence Base References:

PPS10, Issues & Options Report, Preferred Options Report, Sustainability Appraisal Objectives and Report.



6 Implementation and Monitoring

6.1 Delivery Framework

Implementation

6.1 Implementation of the Waste DPD will fall to several parties including waste planning authorities, waste collection authorities, Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA), the Environment Agency and the private waste industry. The primary responsibility for implementation of policies will, however, lie with the local planning authorities through the planning process, whilst delivering the site infrastructure will fall to the waste industry. MWDA has a clearly defined role which is being implemented through its three contracts; recycling, resource recovery and disposal. The Waste DPD is a sub-regional plan, and it is particularly difficult to identify specific sources of public sector funding or specific people/companies who will have responsibility for taking forward individual sites. For example, this will predominantly be market driven by the waste industry for C&I wastes.

6.2 Once adopted the Waste DPD policies and allocations will become part of District Local Development Frameworks. Planning decisions on waste management facilities and development likely to have an impact on Waste DPD allocations must be fully integrated with the Core Strategies and other DPDs.

6.3 The Waste Collection Authorities, MWDA and the waste industry in general will need to optimise waste collection and recycling systems, promote waste minimisation and develop new waste management infrastructure to meet the needs of the sub-region.

6.4 The Environment Agency has a two-fold role in terms of promoting waste minimisation and also in regulating and monitoring how each facility is operated and managed via the Environmental Permitting System.

6.5 Principally, implementation of the policies within the Waste DPD should ensure that the vision and objectives of the Waste DPD are being met. Therefore, the implementation and monitoring plans are based around meeting the objectives.



Table 6.1 Implementation Plan

| Policy | How it will be implemented | Who will Implement it | Related Strategic Objective |
|---|---|---|-----------------------------|
| Protecting Existing Waste Management Capacity (WM2, WM3, WM4 & WM7) | Through the planning process ensure sites that are currently in waste management use are not allowed to be developed for another purpose unless there is a justified overriding need, or that the capacity has been made up for elsewhere. | Local Planning Authority | SO1, SO3, SO4, SO6, SO8 |
| Areas of Search for Small-Scale Waste Management Facilities (WM5) | Ensure Guide to Site Prioritisation (policy WM1) fully met. Assessment of planning applications to ensure that small-scale waste-related development is directed towards Areas of Search | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO1 |
| Waste Prevention & Resource Management (WM8) | Through planning process encourage adoption of design principles and construction methods that prevent and minimise the use of resources and encourage the use of high-quality building materials made from recycled and secondary sources; | Local Planning Authority Land Owners Site Operators | SO2, SO4, SO5 |
| | Produce Site Waste Management Plans | Land Owners Site Operators | |
| Design & Layout for New Development (WM9) | Building designs (both individual dwelling design and overall design of development) should facilitate separation & collection of waste including recyclable materials and incorporation of home composting where possible. | Developers/Architects / Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO4, SO5, SO6 |
| | Development design (including road layouts) to improve access for transport & collection of waste and recyclable materials. | Architects / Land Owners / Site Operators | |



| Policy | How it will be implemented | Who will Implement it | Related Strategic Objective |
|---|--|--|-------------------------------|
| | | Local Planning Authority | |
| | Designs for major new employment and residential development to allow incorporation of low carbon combined heat and power to deliver energy security and long term economic benefits. | Architects / Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | |
| High Quality Design & Operation of New Waste Management Facilities (WM10) | BREEAM Assessments to be submitted with planning applications | Architects / Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO3, SO4, SO6, SO7, SO8 |
| | Early liaison with the Environment Agency re: permitting issues | Site Operators / Land Owners Local Planning Authority Environment Agency | |
| Sustainable Waste Transport (WM11) | Through planning application process and demonstration that new waste management development has assessed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alternatives to road transport for movement of wastes • Sustainable travel for its employees • Mitigation of the effects of road transport on the local amenity. • Safe & adequate access to and from the highway. • Reduction of impact on climate change. | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO6, SO7, SO8 |



| Policy | How it will be implemented | Who will Implement it | Related Strategic Objective |
|---|--|---|-------------------------------|
| Criteria for Waste Management Development (WM12) | Through the planning process ensure that all the relevant criteria in Box 1 are assessed and satisfactorily mitigated for. To ensure that policy WM1 is fully met. | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority Environment Agency | SO3, SO4, SO6, SO8 |
| Waste Management Facilities on Unallocated Sites (WM13) | Ensure Guide to Site Prioritisation (policy WM1) fully met. Through assessment of planning applications to ensure that use of unallocated site is fully justified, and all relevant criteria met. | Land Owners / Site Operators (prepare and provide) Local Planning Authority (review) | SO1, SO3, SO4, SO6, SO8 |
| Energy from Waste(WM14) | Quantification of : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MWatts Electricity Generated • MWatts Heat recovered • CO₂ emissions data. • Location of Heat Customers <p>will be included in proposals and operational schemes</p> | Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority Site Operators Local Planning Authority Energy Customers | SO3, SO8 |
| Landfill on Unallocated Sites (WM15) | To ensure proposals for landfill on unallocated sites can be satisfactorily assessed. | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO1, SO3, SO8 |
| Restoration & Aftercare (WM16) | Through the planning process ensure that restoration plans are agreed and that aftercare of the site is appropriate and implemented. | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority | SO3, SO6, SO8 |
| | Early liaison with Environment Agency regarding restoration and aftercare plans | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority Environment Agency | |



| Policy | How it will be implemented | Who will Implement it | Related Strategic Objective |
|--------|--|--|-----------------------------|
| | Secure long term funding mechanism for realising the aftercare and restoration proposals (through S.106 agreements or through financial provision agreement with the Environment Agency) | Land Owners / Site Operators Local Planning Authority Environment Agency | |

Table 6.2 Site-specific implementation - phasing and delivery

| Site Reference/Name | Site Size (ha) | Required by: | Implemented/Developed by: | Funded by: |
|--|----------------|--------------|--|---|
| Sub-regional Sites | | | | |
| H1 Site at Widnes Waterfront | 7.8 | 2015 | Private landlord/New Earth Solutions (Private waste industry) | New Earth Solutions/ Private finance |
| K1 Butlers Farm, Knowsley Industrial Park | 8.0 | 2015 | Public sector landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| L1 Land off Stalbridge Road, Garston | 5.4 | 2015 | Private landlord/Jack Allen Holdings Ltd(Private waste industry) | Jack Allen Holdings Ltd/Private Finance |
| F1 Alexandra Dock No1, Metal Recycling Site | 9.8 | 2015 | EMR or private waste industry | EMR/private finance |
| S1 Land SW of Sandwash Close, Rainford Industrial Estate | 6.1 | 2015 | Private landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |



| Site Reference/Name | Site Size (ha) | Required by: | Implemented/Developed by: | Funded by: |
|--|-------------------|--------------|---|---|
| W1 Car Parking / Storage area, former Cammell Laird Shipyard, Birkenhead, Wirral | 5.9 | 2015 | Private landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| District Sites | | | | |
| H2 Eco-cycle Waste Ltd, Johnson's Lane, Widnes | 2.0 | 2010 | Eco-cycle or private waste industry | Eco-cycle/private finance |
| H3 Runcorn WWTW | 1.2 | 2015 | Halton Council HWRC | District/Contractor/ Private finance |
| K2 Image Business Park, Acornfield Road, Knowsley Industrial Park | 2.8 | 2027 | Public sector landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| K3 Mainsway Ltd, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park | 2.3 | 2027 | Mainsway Ltd or private waste industry | Mainsway/private finance |
| K4 Former Pilkington Glass Works, Huyton Business Park | 1.3 | 2027 | Private landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| L2 Site off Regent Road / Bankfield Street, Liverpool | 1.4 | 2027 | Private landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| L3 Waste Treatment Plant, Lower Bank View | 0.7 | 2027 | Veolia/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| F2 55 Crowland Street, Southport | 3.6 | 2027 | Southport Skip Hire or private waste industry | Southport Skip Hire/ private finance |
| F3 Site North of Farriers Way, Atlantic Business Park | 1.7 | 2015 | Private landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |

| Site Reference/Name | Site Size (ha) | Required by: | Implemented/Developed by: | Funded by: |
|---|-------------------|--------------|---|---------------------------------|
| F4 1-2 Acorn Way, Bootle | 0.8 | 2015 | Private landlord/Spotmix (Private waste industry) | Spotmix/Private finance |
| S2 Land North of T.A.C., Abbotsfield Industrial Estate | 1.3 | 2027 | Public sector landlord/Private waste industry | Private finance |
| W2 Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 3.7 | 2027 | MWDA | MWDA/public sector |
| W1 Former Goods Yard, Adjacent Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road | 2.8 | 2027 | Major Skip Hire or private waste industry | Major Skip Hire/private finance |
| Landfill Sites | | | | |
| K5 Cronton Claypit, Knowsley | 22.3 | 2015 | Ibstocks Brickworks and private waste industry | Private Waste Sector |
| S3 Bold Heath Quarry, St Helens | 40.2 | 2015 | Dennis Morgan plc | Dennis Morgan plc |





6.2 Monitoring Framework

Monitoring

6.6 In order to implement the Waste DPD it is important to ensure that:

- The performance of the plan is monitored.
- The evidence base is monitored and that systems are in place to update it.
- Uptake of land allocations is monitored to assist in the phased release and/or safeguarding of land.

6.7 Responsibility for monitoring lies with the waste planning authorities, and agreement has been reached for Merseyside EAS to support the monitoring of the Plan through specific actions listed in the monitoring plan.

6.8 The Waste DPD has been developed with the best information available at the time, and the evidence base has been updated through each stage of its development. The Waste DPD is flexible and able to respond to changing needs and circumstances, through its site allocation and policies. Monitoring the performance of the policies and the uptake of the allocated sites will allow the effectiveness of the Waste DPD in delivering its Spatial Vision and Strategic objectives to be measured.

6.9 There may not eventually be development of all of the proposed allocations in this Plan for waste uses. This will be needs led, and also based on economic factors. Some sites may be able to support more than one facility, and others may operate to a high capacity, both eventualities could lead to fewer sites being required. If there is a requirement for additional sites, this will be addressed through development management policies. This will be monitored by assessing the number of sites which are taken up at regular monitoring periods during the Plan period, and the capacity of those facilities to handle various types of waste. This will be checked against the Needs Assessment for the sub-region.

6.10 The monitoring of the Waste DPD will need to be fed into the Annual Monitoring Reports (AMRs) of each district, where it will be reported alongside performance of the Core Strategies and other DPDs. The AMR will report on the effectiveness of policies and identify any changes needed if a policy is not working or the targets are not being met. Specifically AMRs will need to monitor uptake of sites, treatment capacity and need for treatment. It is likely that the Waste DPD will be reviewed every five years or sooner if this is justified. The first review will take place within 2 years of its adoption, as this is when most of the treatment facilities consented prior to adoption of the Waste DPD, are due to become operational, and it is critical that this is monitored to review the take-up of land allocations, taking into account delivery of capacity and any over or under provision.

6.11 The role of Merseyside EAS will be to review the uptake of allocations and compare against the assessment of need, and also review the use of the waste policies. It will periodically review the needs assessment according to the timeline in paragraph 6.11 above. Finally, Merseyside EAS will also annually monitor the mass balance of imports and exports to the sub-region, to ensure that Merseyside and Halton are moving towards self sufficiency. This information will then be passed to the districts for inclusion in their individual AMRs.

6.12 Indicators have been chosen which provide a consistent basis for monitoring the performance of the Waste DPD against its vision and strategic objectives, and key policies. The indicators will reflect the recommendations of the Sustainability Appraisal and also include some former National Indicators (NI) where these are still referred to, and indicators from the single data list which were developed by the Department for Communities and Local Government in 2010, and Core Output Indicators (COI) recommended for local authorities in monitoring the performance of their own local development frameworks and their performance against RSS targets. Sustainable Development principles are incorporated into the vision and strategic objectives. In a small number of cases additional local indicators have been developed which help monitor performance of policies which are specific to the Merseyside Joint Waste DPD. All the indicators will provide the basis for identifying where the Waste DPD needs to be strengthened, maintained or changed.

Monitoring Plan

Table 6.3 Monitoring Plan

| Indicator Reference | What will be measured? | Resources /Infrastructure Required | Where will it be Implemented? | Target | Related Strategic Objectives |
|---------------------------------|--|---|--|--|------------------------------|
| Single data list 082-01 | Method of collection & tonnage of waste e.g. kerbside, civic amenity, flytipped | District Officer Time MWDA Officer Time (PFI funding for alternative facility) EA officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | - | SO2, SO3, SO4, SO5 |
| Single data list 082-02 | Tonnage of waste sent for recycling, composting, re-use split by material type | District Officer Time MWDA Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Progressive increase year on year but 50% by 2020 | SO2, SO3, SO4, SO5, SO8 |
| Single data list 082-03 | Method of disposal & tonnage of waste (e.g. Landfill, incineration) | District Officer Time MWDA Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Achieve a maximum of 10% to landfill by 2020 with remaining residual waste (40%) to treatment | SO1, SO3, SO4, SO8 |
| Single data list 067-01 | Contribution made by LACW management to CO ₂ reduction from local authority own estate & operations | District Officer Time MWDA Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Initial target of year on year reduction. Requirement to review and set formal target if appropriate | SO6, SO7, SO8 |
| Former National Indicator NI186 | Contribution made by sustainable waste management to per capita reduction in CO ₂ emissions in local authority area | District Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Initial target of year-on-year reduction. Requirement to review and set formal target if appropriate | SO6, SO7, SO8 |
| Single data list 024-15 AMR W-1 | Capacity of new waste management facilities by waste planning authority | Merseyside EAS | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Requirements in line with Needs Assessment | SO1 |
| Single data list 024-16 AMR W-2 | Amount of municipal waste arisings managed by waste management type and by waste planning authority | District Officer Time MWDA officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | Annual figures should be available via MWDA/ Waste collection authorities | SO1, SO3 |



| Indicator Reference | What will be measured? | Resources /Infrastructure Required | Where will it be Implemented? | Target | Related Strategic Objectives |
|---------------------------------|--|---|--|--|------------------------------|
| Single data list 024-12 AMR E-3 | To show the contribution the waste sector will make to the amount of renewable energy generation by installed capacity (reported in MW to include both heat and electrical energy recovered) | District Officer Time Merseyside EAS | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | No target set as it will vary year on year depending on the type of facilities being developed and the amount of waste recovered that qualifies for Renewables Obligation Certificates | SO3, SO8 |
| Local Indicator WDPD1 | Number of sub-regional sites which are taken up for waste management use. | District Officer Time Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting & review of evidence base | Requirements in line with Needs Assessment | SO1 |
| Local Indicator WDPD 2 | Number of district allocated sites which are taken up for waste management uses. | Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting & review of evidence base | Requirements in line with Needs Assessment | SO1 |
| Local Indicator WDPD 3 | Number of waste management facilities that are developed on unallocated sites | Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting & review of evidence base | <10% of requirement stated for targets WDPD 1 and 2 | SO1 |
| Local Indicator WDPD 4 | No. of planning applications for new waste management facility buildings which achieve a 'Very Good' or 'Excellent' BREEAM rating or equivalent standard | District Officer Time Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | 100% | SO2, SO4, SO5, SO6, SO7, SO8 |
| Local Indicator WDPD 5 | No. of new waste management facilities which utilise an element of sustainable transport as part of their operation | District Officer Time Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | 25%-30% | SO6, SO8 |



| Indicator Reference | What will be measured? | Resources /Infrastructure Required | Where will it be Implemented? | Target | Related Strategic Objectives |
|------------------------|--|---|--|---|------------------------------|
| Local Indicator WDPD 6 | Recycle and recover value from commercial and industrial wastes in line with regional/national targets | District Officer Time Merseyside EAS Officer Time | Across Merseyside and Halton through AMR Reporting | 65% recycled by 2020; recover value from 90% by 2020 (includes recycling) | SO2, SO3, SO4, SO5, SO8 |





7 Glossary

Glossary of Terms

| Term | Definition |
|---|--|
| Anaerobic Digestion (AD) | <p>AD is a natural process in which microorganisms break down organic matter, in the absence of oxygen, which produces a renewable compost-like material (digestate) together with a biogas, which can be used directly in engines (CHP), burned for heat or cleaned and used in the same way as a natural gas (fed back into the grid) or as a renewable vehicle fuel-source. Typically there are two types of AD plant, farm-based plants, and centralised plants which tend to be larger scale (e.g. 50,000tpa).AD is already extensively used in the wastewater treatment industry.</p> <p>A centralised AD plant is an enclosed waste use and typically includes treatment tanks ±6m tall and a waste reception hall similar to a warehouse unit. A plant of this scale could employ ±5 direct workers.</p> |
| Allocations Development Plan Document (DPD) | <p>An Allocations DPD allocates a wide range of land uses to support the spatial vision and strategic objectives set out in the Core Strategy. The Allocations DPD includes land allocated for: housing, employment, waste management, environmental conservation, transport infrastructure etc.</p> |
| Autoclaving | <p>A newly emerging technology in the UK, Autoclaving is regarded as a generic waste treatment option, it uses a pressurised steam treatment process to breakdown waste into a 'flock' like material. This process allows recyclables to be partially cleaned and extracted for re-processing. The remaining material may be sorted and the highly calorific fraction used as an RDF for thermal treatment plants.</p> <p>An Autoclaving plant is an enclosed waste management use and typically resembles a large warehouse unit. A facility of this scale could employ ±40 direct workers.</p> |
| Bioaerosols | <p>Bioaerosols are complex mixtures of airborne micro-organisms and their products, and are ubiquitous, particularly in rural environments. In waste management, bioaerosols are typically associated with facilities which deal with biodegradable waste e.g. kitchen and garden waste.</p> |
| Biodegradable Waste | <p>Any waste that is capable of undergoing natural decomposition, such as food and garden waste, paper and cardboard.</p> |
| Brownfield Land | <p>Land that is or was occupied by a permanent structure (excluding agricultural or forestry) and associated fixed surface infrastructure. It can occur in both built up or rural setting and includes defence buildings and land used for mineral extraction and waste disposal where there is no requirement for restoration through planning control. It does not include such land as parks, recreation grounds and allotments and land that cannot be regarded as requiring development, such as where it has been put to an amenity use or is valuable for its contribution to nature conservation.</p> |
| Capacity | <p>In this document "capacity" refers to waste management capacity, which is the amount of waste throughput handled at a built waste management facility (e.g. 50,000tpa) or, in the case of a landfill site, the amount of voidspace expressed in cubic metres.</p> <p>At certain points within this document, capacity is referred to collectively i.e. Merseyside and Halton or on a site by site basis. Waste management capacity can be existing, consented or forecast need, depending on the context to which it is referred.</p> |



| Term | Definition |
|--|--|
| Combined Heat & Power (CHP) | Thermal process which produces steam which can be used for heat and power which can be used for electricity generation. |
| Commercial & Industrial Waste | Waste from offices/retail & other commercial premises or from a factory or industrial process. |
| Construction, Demolition & Excavation Waste (CD&E) | Controlled waste arising from the construction, repair, maintenance and demolition of buildings and structures. |
| Contaminated Land | Land where the actual or suspected presence of substances, in, on or under the land may cause risk to people, property, human activities or the environment regardless of whether or not the land meets the definition of contaminated land in Part IIA of the Environmental Protection Act 1990. |
| Core Strategy | The Core Strategy is at the centre of Local Development Frameworks (LDFs). It sets out the long term vision for a Local Authorities area and the strategic objectives for future development in the area. The Core Strategy should reflect the vision in the Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS), and includes a proposals map showing site allocations. |
| Deliverability | In this document the term "deliverability" refers to how readily available and suitable a site or area is for the purpose of waste management use. For example, ownership constraint, sustainability and flexibility of a site or area, are key considerations in determining deliverability. |
| Density Conversion Factors | <p>A factor used to estimate the tonnage of waste that can occupy a cubic metre of landfill voidspace. The factor varies depending on whether the waste is non-inert or inert, and in the latter case on the density of the material being deposited.</p> <p>The factor used for non-inert waste is not based on any published standard but is accepted by the waste industry as an acceptable estimate. The factors for inert waste are based on statements from the operators of the inert landfills allocated in this document.</p> |
| Development Plan Document (DPD) | A term brought in by the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004. These documents set out spatial planning policies and proposals for an area or topic. They replace the former Local Plan and include the core strategy, detailed development control policies, site specific allocations of land, area action plans (where needed) and a proposals map (which indicates the planning context for site proposals). |
| Energy from Waste (EfW) | <p>The burning of waste under controlled conditions where the heat released is used to generate electricity and/ or thermal energy for use in the locality e.g. as a community heating scheme or for commercial uses.</p> <p>EfW plants are enclosed waste management uses and typically resemble a large warehouse unit including a stack. A large scale EfW facility could employ ±50 direct workers, whereas a smaller scale facility could employ ±20 direct workers.</p> |
| Energy Recovery | The generation of heat and power from burning waste, the production of fuels from other forms of treatment, and the combustion of landfill gas and gas from anaerobic digestion to create electricity. |



| Term | Definition |
|---|--|
| Environment Agency | Environmental Regulatory Authority formed in 1996, combining the functions of the former National Rivers Authority, Waste Regulation Authorities and Her Majesty's Inspectorate of Pollution. |
| European Sites (Natura 2000) | Natura 2000 is the European Union-wide network of nature conservation sites established under the Council Directive on the conservation of natural habitats and of wild fauna and flora (92/43/EEC) - The EC Habitats Directive |
| Evidence Base | The information and data gathered by local authorities to justify the "soundness" of the policy approach set out in Local Development Documents, including physical, economic and social characteristics of an area. |
| Gasification | High temperature combustion (greater than 700 degrees Celcius) in starved air conditions. Produces a syngas and a solid residue that can be recycled or landfilled and a liquid oil which can be used as fuel. Gasification plants are enclosed waste management uses and typically resemble large warehouse units including a stack. A large scale Gasification plant (400,000tpa) could employ ±50 direct workers. |
| Green Belt | A designated area around a city where development is severely restricted with the purpose of keeping land permanently open to protect the city's character and to prevent urban sprawl and the coalescence of settlements. |
| Green Waste | Organic waste from parks, gardens, wooded and landscape areas, such as tree pruning, grass clippings, leaves etc. |
| Groundwater | Refers to all sub-surface water as distinct from surface water. Generally groundwater is considered to be that water which is below the surface of saturation and contained within porous soil or rock stratum (aquifer). |
| Hazardous Waste | Waste materials that have properties that can pose a threat to human health or the environment and require management at specialised facilities. Defined under the Hazardous Waste (England and Wales) Regulations 2005 and List of Wastes (England) Regulations 2005. |
| Household Waste Recycling Centre (HWRC) | Site where the general public can take large bulky household items and garden waste and other materials for recycling, treatment and/or disposal. In Merseyside and Halton, these civic amenity sites are provided by Merseyside Waste Disposal Authority (MWDA). Typically these sites may be split level for ease of access to skips, and some include areas for Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) and white goods such as old televisions and refrigerators. HWRCs are generally open-air rather than enclosed facilities and can be co-located with other waste management facilities. A HWRC could employ ±10 direct workers. |
| Inert | A material that will not react chemically to others. In the context of waste, it is materials such as hardcore, sand and clay. |
| Incinerator Bottom Ash (IBA) | IBA refers to the solid residual material (coarse ash) which remains on the incinerator grate following the combustion of solid municipal/commercial waste in an Energy from Waste (EfW) facility. |



| Term | Definition |
|---|--|
| In-Vessel Composting (IVC) | <p>IVC treats biodegradable municipal solid wastes (BMSW) such as catering and/or garden waste. This biodegradable feedstock is shredded and treated within an 'in-vessel' composting system (e.g. a controlled enclosed environment such as a silo, container or enclosed hall). This system speeds up the traditional composting process, IVC typically takes up to 3 weeks, whereas open windrow composting can take up to 16 weeks.</p> <p>An IVC facility is an enclosed waste management use similar to a warehouse unit in appearance and could employ ±10 direct workers.</p> |
| Joint Municipal Waste Management Strategy (JMWMS) | The JMWMS for Merseyside sets out the guiding principles for the delivery of municipal waste management in the region between 2008 and 2020. The Strategy represents the direction taken by the Merseyside and Halton Waste Partnership (MHWP). |
| Landfill | Site for the disposal of waste into or onto land, as defined by the Landfill (England and Wales) Regulations 2002 (as amended). |
| Listed Buildings | Buildings protected under the Planning (Listed Building and Conservation Areas) Act 1990. |
| Local Authority Collected Waste (LACW) | Also referred to as Municipal Solid Waste (MSW) and Municipal Waste. Household waste and any other waste collected by a Waste Collection Authority such as municipal parks and gardens waste, beach cleansing waste and waste resulting from the clearance of fly-tipped materials. |
| Local Development Framework (LDF) | The LDF is the name given to the new planning system of Development Plans introduced by the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004. The LDF, which comprises a portfolio of Development Plan Documents, will replace Unitary Development Plans (UDP). |
| Local Strategic Partnerships (LSPs) | An LSP is a non-statutory body that brings together the different parts of the public, private, voluntary and community sectors, working at a local level. |
| Materials Recycling Facility (MRF) | <p>A waste sorting facility, where recyclable waste materials are separated and screened out using mechanical and manual processes. These recyclable waste materials are then bulked up and sent onto re-processors. Typically there are two types of MRF: clean and dirty MRFs. Clean MRFs process waste dry recyclables which has been source separated or co-mingled, whilst dirty MRFs process non-separated residual waste including putrescible materials. The residual waste, which cannot be recycled, is then transferred to other facilities for treatment or disposal.</p> <p>MRFs typically resemble large warehouse units with shutter doors and waste collection bays inside. They are enclosed facilities and typically employ ±125 direct workers.</p> |
| Mechanical Biological Treatment (MBT) | <p>MBT plants treat mixed waste both mechanically and biologically to separate out recyclable materials for re-processing and turn biodegradable materials into other products, such as refuse derived fuel (RDF), solid recovered fuel (SRF) or a compost-like material. RDF and SRF are used as feedstock to fuel thermal treatment facilities.</p> <p>An MBT plant is an enclosed facility similar to a distribution depot in appearance and could employ greater than 10 direct workers.</p> |



| Term | Definition |
|--|---|
| Merseyside | Administratively, the five Districts of Knowsley, Liverpool, Sefton, St.Helens and Wirral. In this document we cover the District of Halton as well and the study area is referred to either as "Merseyside & Halton" or "the sub-region". |
| Municipal Solid Waste (MSW) | See Local Authority Collected Waste (LACW) |
| Non-Hazardous (non-inert) Waste | All those wastes that do not fall under the definition of hazardous waste and do not meet the waste definition of an inert waste. |
| Open / enclosed windrow composting | <p>Open / enclosed windrow composting treats BMSW (e.g. Garden waste) using more traditional composting methods. This process involves initial shredding and then piling of the green waste into elongated rows (windrows) which are periodically turned to force air through the windrows, facilitating the maturation process.</p> <p>Open windrow composting is an open-air waste management use, although it can take place within enclosed buildings which have a low profile similar to farm structures. A facility of this type could employ ±5 direct workers depending on scale.</p> |
| Private Finance Initiative (PFI) | PFI is a method of funding long term public sector contracts. In terms of waste management, PFI exists in the most part to finance the building of new municipal waste management facilities and waste contracts. |
| Primary Treatment | Initial treatment of waste to remove as many recyclables as possible, with production of residual waste which could be in the form of refuse-derived fuels (RDF), including mechanical heat treatment (MHT) or mechanical biological treatment (MBT) or waste transfer stations (WTS) |
| Protected Species | Plants and species afforded protection under certain Acts of Law and Regulations. |
| Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act ('the Act') | <p>The Act updates elements of the 1990 Town & Country Planning Act. The Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004 introduces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - a statutory system for regional planning; - a new system for local planning; reforms to the development control, and - compulsory purchase and compensation systems; and - removes crown immunity from planning controls. |
| Planning Policy Statement 10 (PPS10) | PPS10 sets out the Governments national planning policy on Sustainable Waste Management. |
| Principal Aquifer | These are layers of rock or drift deposits that have high inter-granular and/or fracture permeability - meaning they usually provide a high level of water storage. They may support water supply and/or river base flow on a strategic scale. In most cases, principal aquifers are aquifers previously designated as major aquifer. |
| Pyrolysis | Thermal degradation in the absence of oxygen between 400-800 degrees Celcius. Produces a combustible vapour (syngas), condensable liquid or oil and carbon rich solid residue. Can be used to burn RDF, single or mixed waste streams. |



| Term | Definition |
|---|--|
| Ramsar Sites | Sites of international importance for waterfowl protected under the RAMSAR Convention of the Conservation of Wetlands of International Importance, ratified by the UK Government in 1976. |
| Recovery | Value can be recovered from waste by recovering materials through recycling, composting or recovery of energy |
| Recycling | The reprocessing of waste either into the same product or a different one. |
| Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) | Documents produced at the regional level; forming part of the statutory plan. |
| Re-processing | <p>Re-processing of a recycled waste material (recyclate) to produce a new usable product, such as re-processing of mixed plastic waste to produce garden furniture.</p> <p>For example, in glass re-processing, the re-processor will be the glass container manufacturer, re-processing recycled glass and producing molten glass or, where not used for glass container manufacture, a business processing cullet for beneficial end-use; including glass use in roadstone fibre and shot blasting.</p> <p>A specialist materials re-processor would typically re-process industrial waste separate of LACW and commercial waste streams. Types of waste may include non-hazardous waste chemicals resulting from industrial processes (e.g. from the manufacture of chemical products).</p> <p>Re-processors are enclosed waste uses and typically resemble large warehouse units with unloading bays.</p> |
| Residual Waste | The elements of waste streams that remain following recovery, recycling or composting operations. |
| Resource Recovery Park (RRP) | Large site where a number of complementary waste management facilities are co-located on a single site, so that the output from one facility is the feedstock for another type of facility (e.g. a co-located MRF and re-processor). |
| Secondary Treatment | The use of the by-product of primary treatment, such as RDF, for the production of Energy from Waste (EfW), this could be in the form of combined heat and power (CHP) to generate steam and electricity, or pyrolysis, gasification. These processes all have an end product of residual waste which will need management or disposal. |
| Self Sufficiency | Ability of an area to manage the waste produced within its boundaries. |
| Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) | Sites that are notified and identified under the Wildlife and Countryside and Rights of Way Act 1981 on account of their flora, fauna, geological and physiographical features. |
| Source Protection Zone (SPZ) | Zones defined by the Environment Agency to safeguard groundwater sources such as wells, boreholes and springs used for public drinking water supply. Four zones are identified to show the risk of contamination from any activities that might cause pollution to an area. The closer the activity, the greater the risk. |
| Spatial Strategy and Sites (SSS) | The SSS report was the second formal consultation stage of the Waste DPD. This document consulted on proposed spatial strategy and policy options as well as a short-list of proposed sites for built facilities within Merseyside and Halton. |



| Term | Definition |
|--|--|
| Special Area of Conservation (SAC) | A SAC considered to be of international importance designated under the EC Directive on the conservation of Natural Habitats and of Wild Flora and Fauna. |
| Special Protection Area (SPA) | A SPA considered to be of international importance designated under the EC Directive on the Conservation of Wild Birds. |
| Statement of Community Involvement (SCI) | Sets out an LPAs intended consultation strategy for the different elements of the planning process. This is a requirement brought in by the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004. |
| Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) | An evaluation process for assessing the environmental impacts of plans and programmes. SEA is a statutory requirement. |
| Strategic Facilities | Large facilities that are located to serve a large geographical area (e.g. county or sub-region) as opposed to smaller, local (i.e. community-based) facilities which serve locally derived waste arisings. |
| Sub-region | In the Merseyside context, usually this refers to the area covered by the Districts of Knowsley, Liverpool, Sefton, St.Helens and Wirral. However, in this report the District of Halton is included. |
| Sustainable Community Strategy | The local strategic partnership (LSP) creates a long-term vision for an area to tackle local needs, this is set out in a document referred to as the "sustainable community strategy (SCS). The SCS sits above all the other plans and should be based on evidence and consultation. The SCS is not subject to any external validation but is subject to a sustainability appraisal. The LDF, particularly the core strategy, needs to demonstrate how it is delivering the SCS. |
| Thermal Treatment | Thermal treatment refers to processes, which use heat to treat either raw waste or pre-treated waste (i.e. waste that has been through a primary treatment stage) to extract energy from the materials being processed. This could include SRF/RDF fed EfW facilities. Primary and thermal treatment facilities are often co-located on one large site. |
| Treatment | Physical, thermal, chemical or biological processes (including sorting) that change the characteristics of waste in order to reduce its volume or hazardous nature; facilitate its handling or enhance recovery. |
| Waste | Waste is any material or object that is no longer wanted and which requires management. If a material or object is reusable, it is still classed as waste if it has first been discarded. |
| Waste Arising | The amount of waste generated over a period of time for example by a geographical area or industry sector. |
| Waste Disposal Authority (WDA) | The authority that is legally responsible for the safe disposal of household waste collected by the Waste Collection Authorities and the provision of HWRCs. |
| Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) | The WEEE Directive was introduced into UK law in 2007 by the the Waste Electronic and Electrical Equipment Regulations 2006. WEEE includes: household appliances, IT and telecommunications equipment, lighting and electronic tools, TVs, videos and hi-fis. WEEE is collected at some HWRCs for sorting and recycling. |



| Term | Definition |
|------------------------------|---|
| Waste Transfer Station (WTS) | <p>Facility where waste is received in small quantities and bulked up for onward transport to landfill or another management facility via road, rail or sea. This is the current situation in MWDA run WTSs. Commercial WTSs sort and recycle a significant amount of this waste. WTSs deal with all waste streams including hazardous waste.</p> <p>Non-inert and hazardous WTSs are enclosed facilities, and can be similar to distribution depots. Whereas inert WTS tend to store soils, construction, demolition and/or excavation waste in the open-air and within buildings. These types of facility typically employ ±8 direct workers depending on the amount of waste throughput.</p> |
| Voidspace | <p>Voidspace refers to the volume of "air-space" below ground levels available for landfill. This means that landfills are typically located in former quarries or mineral workings. Voidspace is measured in cubic metres.</p> |



8 Appendices

8.1 Appendix 1 : Waste Uses

Table A1 Built Facilities - Suggested Waste Management Uses (Indicative Information)

| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| HWRC | Household Waste Recycling Centre (HWRC) | 15,000 | ±10 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area potentially <1ha; • needs to be able to accommodate queuing traffic and be large enough to segregate public and Heavy Goods Vehicles (HGV) traffic; • Locate near to centres of population or on the edge of urban areas to maximise accessibility and ensure usage without causing adverse amenity impact; • Typically sited in industrial and employment areas, contaminated or derelict land; • Access via A and/or B class roads; • Sites close to existing waste management facilities could provide additional synergy; • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| WTS (including sorting facilities) | Materials Recycling Facility (MRF) | 100,000 | ±125 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area typically ±3ha (size of site is dependent on the level of throughput); • Good access to the primary road network; • Proximity to waste arisings is important to reduce distance of waste transfer; • Buildings need to be tall enough (±12m) to accommodate HGV movements; • Typically sited in industrial areas close to existing waste management facilities; • B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer); |





| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| | | | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where amenity issues (i.e. noise and litter) can be minimised a facility could be located within 100m of sensitive receptors; Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | Municipal non-inert WTS | 100,000 | ±8 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Site area typically >0.5ha (size of site is dependent on the level of throughput); Good access to the primary road network is vital; Proximity to waste arisings is important to reduce distance of waste transfer; Buildings need to be tall enough (±12m) to accommodate HGV movements; Typically sited in industrial areas close to existing waste management facilities; B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer) Where possible, sites closer than 250m from residential, commercial or recreational areas should be avoided; Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | Merchant non-inert WTS | 75,000 | | |
| | Merchant inert WTS | 200,000 | | |
| Re-processor | Dry recyclables Re-processor | 200,000 | ±10 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Site area typically ±1.5ha; Located near to source of waste feedstock (i.e. WTS or a MRF); Good access to the primary road network; Typically sited in industrial areas, close to existing waste management facilities; |
| | Specialist Materials Re-processor | 100,000 | | |



| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| | | | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer); • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints; • Where possible, sites closer than 250m from residential, commercial or recreational areas should be avoided |
| Primary Treatment | Mechanical Biological Treatment (MBT) | 150,000 | ±10 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area typically ±3ha (size of site is dependent on the level of throughput); • Good access to the primary road network; • Proximity to waste arisings is important to reduce distance of waste transfer; • Buildings need to be tall enough (10-20m) to accommodate HGV movements; • Typically sited in industrial areas and/or contaminated derelict land close to existing waste management facilities; • B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer); • Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors; • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | Anaerobic Digestion (AD) | 50,000 | ±5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area typically ±1ha; • Good access to the primary road network; • Proximity to waste arisings is important to reduce distance of waste transfer; |



| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| | | | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Buildings need to be ±7m tall to accommodate on site HGV movements; • Typically sited in industrial and employment areas, contaminated or derelict land; • Compatible with B1/B2 activities; • Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors; • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | In-Vessel Composting (IVC) | 50,000 | ±10 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area typically ±1ha; • Good access to the primary road network; • Building height typically 4-5m; • Typically sited in industrial and business areas, and/or contaminated derelict land; • Existing waste management facilities should be considered for co-location; • Compatible with B1/B2 activities; • Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors. Site specific risk assessment needs to be a condition if IVC is to be located within 250m of any working or dwelling place; • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |



| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| | Open / enclosed Windrow Composting | 25,000 | ±5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Site area typically ±2.5ha; Good access to the primary road network; Typically sited in rural locations away from urban centres (Green Belt and urban fringe sites); Urban areas and business parks would be unsuitable; Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors to reduce amenity issues (e.g. smells); Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | Other specialised pretreatment facilities (e.g. Autoclaving) | 150,000 | ±40 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Site area typically ±3ha (size of site is dependent on the level of throughput); Good access to the primary road network; Proximity to waste arisings is important to reduce distance of waste transfer; Buildings need to be tall enough (10-20m) to accommodate HGV movements; Typically sited in industrial areas and/or contaminated derelict land close to existing waste management facilities; B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer); Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors; Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |



| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Thermal Treatment | Municipal EfW facility | 475,000 | ±50 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area ±2-7.5ha (size of the site is generally dependent on the level of waste throughput); • Good access to the primary road network; • Building height typically 15-30m, stack height 40-80m (dependent on the level of throughput); • B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer) • Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors to reduce amenity issues (e.g. air emissions). However, smaller scale facilities, coupled with improved environmental standards should in certain cases enable facilities to be located closer to sensitive receptors - particularly when related to a CHP/district heating scheme • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |
| | Non-municipal EfW facility | 200,000 | | |
| | Merchant EfW facility | 50,000 | | |
| | Gasification and Pyrolysis | - | ±50 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area 2-6ha (size of site is generally dependent on the level of throughput); • Building height typically 15-25m, stack height 30-70m (dependent on the level of throughput); • B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable in close proximity to existing waste management facilities; • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer) • Where possible, sites should be located at least 250m from sensitive receptors to reduce amenity issues (e.g. air emissions). However, smaller scale facilities, coupled with improved environmental standards should in certain cases enable facilities to be located closer to sensitive receptors - particularly when related to a CHP/district heating scheme • Access routes should be free from HGV constraints |



| Suggested Waste Management Use | Facility Type | Waste DPD Site Capacity (tpa) | No. Direct Jobs Created** | Desirable Site Characteristics |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| RRP - Resource Recovery Park | Resource Recovery Park (RRP) | - | - | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site area typically greater than 4.5ha (dependent on type and scale of waste uses); • Typically sited in industrial areas and/or contaminated derelict land close to existing waste management facilities; • Good access to the primary road network; • B2 and B8 use class designations may be suitable; • Consideration of alternative modes of transport (e.g. rail or barge transfer) |
| <p>¹Waste DPD Site capacity is derived from the Evidence Base section and Revised Needs Assessment (Publication Stage) supporting document</p> <p>^{**}Number of jobs is dependent on the waste throughput and scale of the facility</p> <p>¹Enviros Consulting (2004) <i>Planning for Waste Management Facilities: A Research Study</i> ODPM</p> <p>²DEFRA (2004) <i>New Technologies for Landfill Diversion</i></p> <p>³Enviros Consulting (2008) <i>Designing Waste Facilities: A Guide to Modern Design in Waste</i> DEFRA & CABE</p> | | | | |



Box 2

Definition of Re-processors

A re-processor is a business that in the ordinary course of conduct of a trade, occupation or profession, carries out the activities of recovery or recycling.

Guidance has been provided by the Environment Agency as to what is considered to be recycling for the purposes of the Packaging Regulations. The guidance notes the businesses that are the recyclers for the various materials used for packaging, as follows –

for **glass**, the re-processor will be the glass container manufacturer, that is the producer of molten glass or, where not used for glass container manufacture, the business processing glass cullet⁶ for beneficial end-use; including glass being used as roadstone, fibre and shot blasting.

for **metals** (aluminium and steel), the re-processor will be the business producing the ingots, sheets or coils of aluminium or steel from packaging waste; this can include the de-tinner for tin-plated waste packaging products;

for **plastics**, the re-processor will normally be the business melt process in the waste plastic packaging to produce new products or materials - but not the business which just carries out size reduction or washing where the material goes through a subsequent melt process;

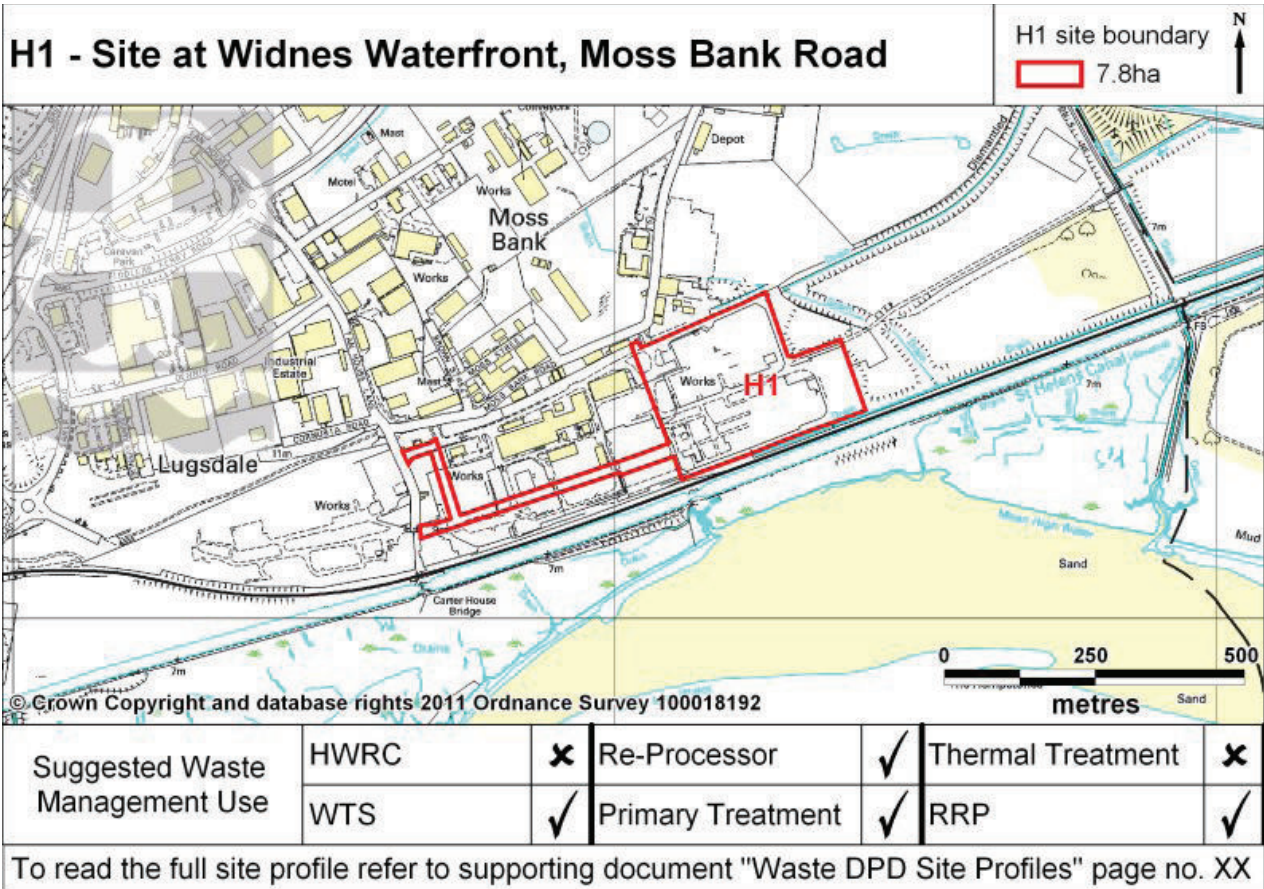
for **paper/fibreboard**, the re-processor will be the mill manufacturing paper, or other business utilising packaging waste to make products such as loft insulation, animal bedding etc. waste paper merchants are not re-processors.

For **wood**, the re-processor will be the business manufacturing goods (eg. chipboard) out of chipped wood packaging waste.

There are also re-processors undertaking **organic recycling** through aerobic (composting) or anaerobic (biomethanisation) treatment of biodegradable packaging waste.

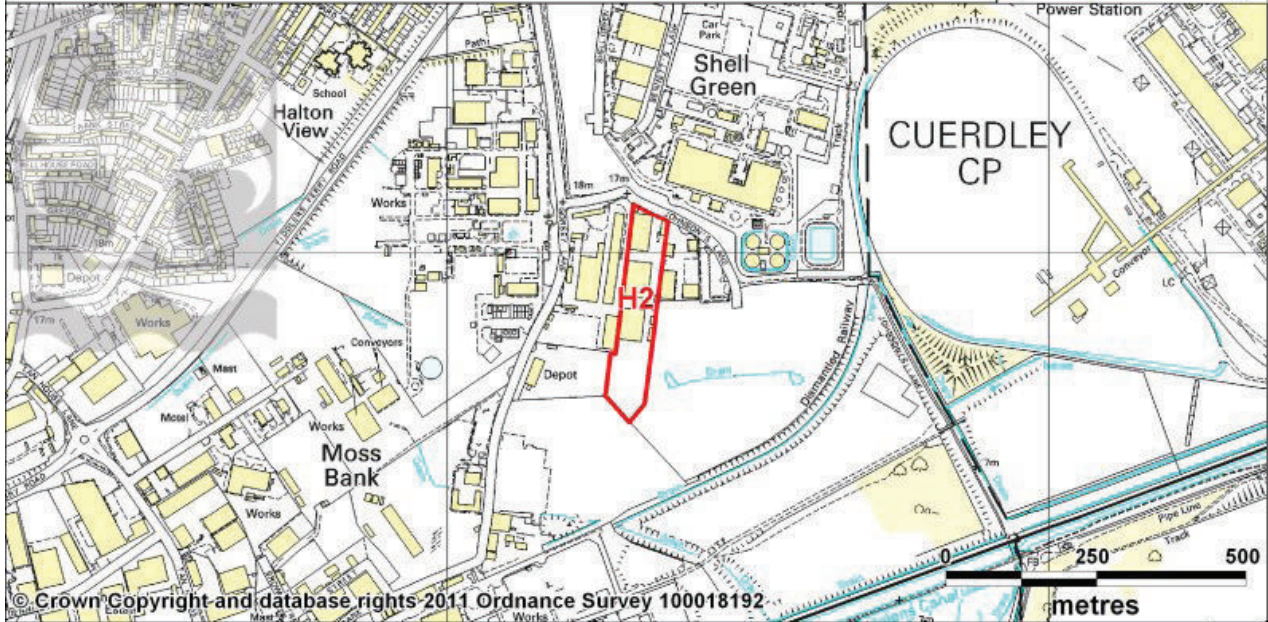
8.2 Appendix 2 : Site Profiles

8.1 The site profile maps below show the red line boundaries of the Waste DPD site allocations at 1:10,000 scale. These maps illustrate the additions or changes which need to be made to each District's adopted UDP proposals map and emerging Core Strategies and Allocations DPDs.



H2 - Eco-cycle Waste Ltd, 3 Johnson's Lane, Widnes

H2 site boundary
 2.0ha

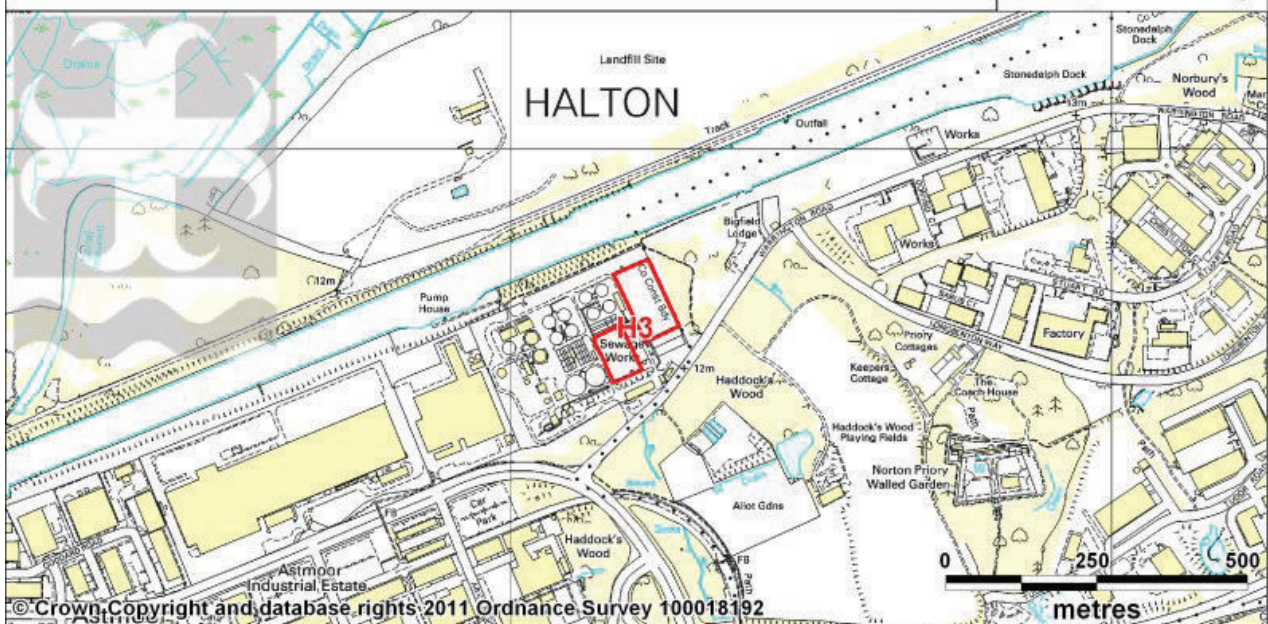


| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✗ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

H3 - Runcorn WWTW

H3 site boundary
 1.2ha



| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✓ | Re-Processor | ✗ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✗ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

K1 - Butlers Farm, Knowsley Industrial Estate

K1 site boundary 8.0ha

© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✓ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

K2 - Image Business Park, Acornfield Road, Knowsley Industrial Estate

K2 site boundary 2.8ha

© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

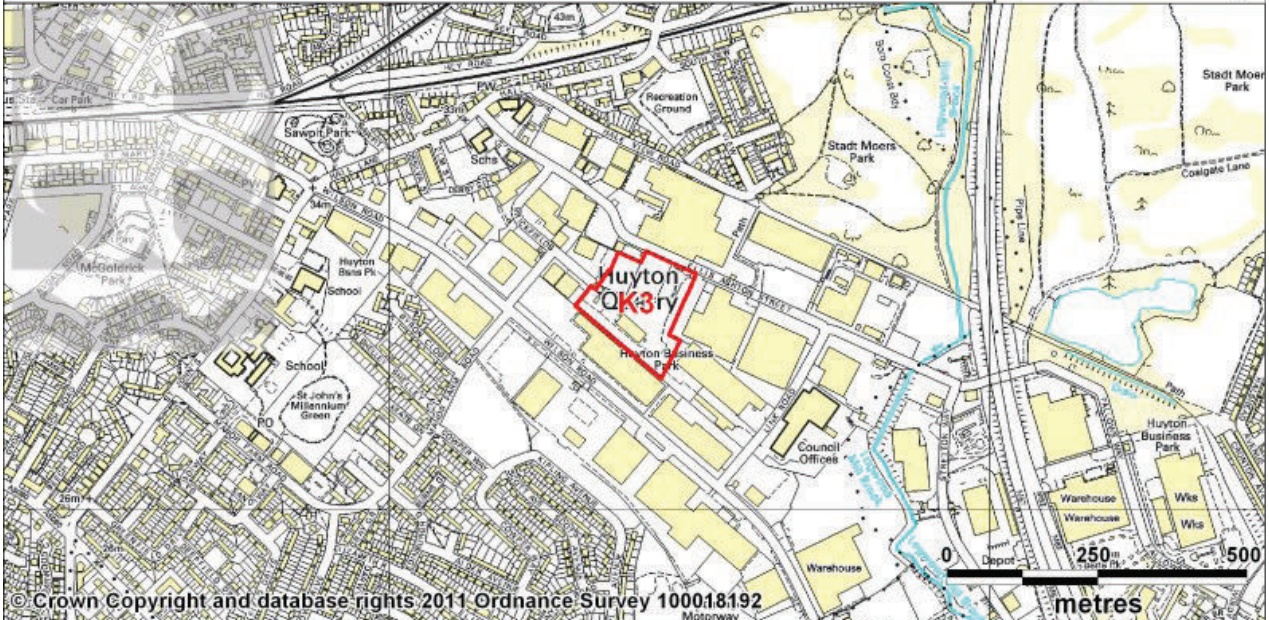
| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✗ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

K3 - Mainsway Ltd, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park

K3 site boundary

2.3ha



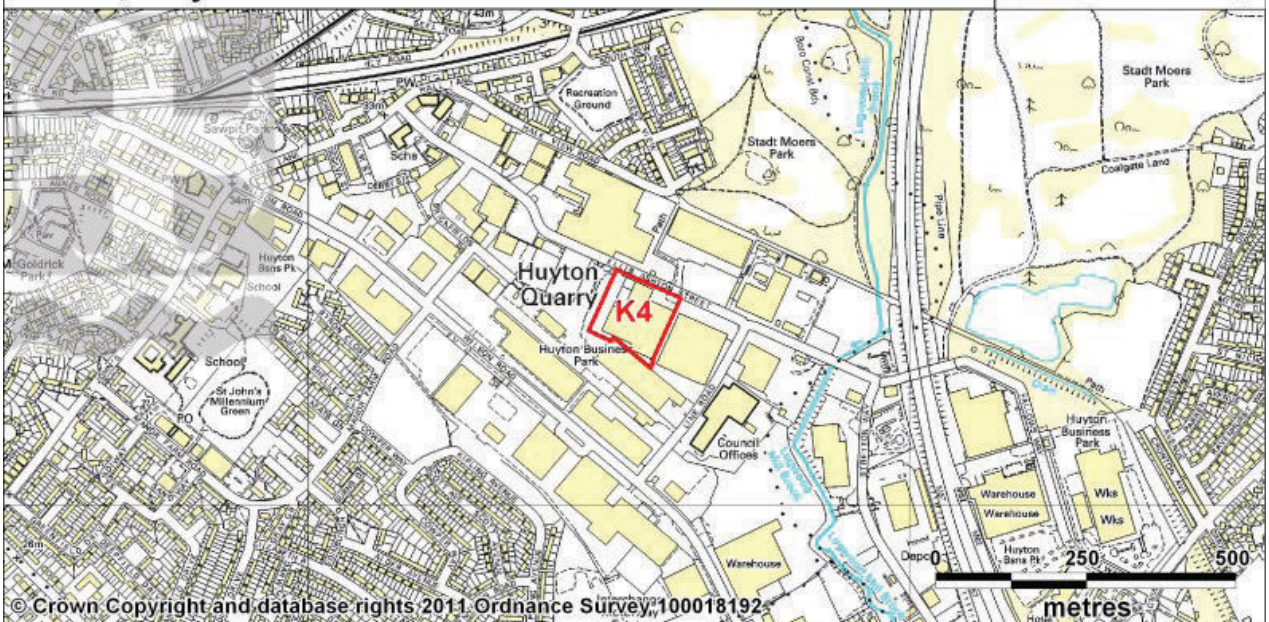
| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

K4 - Former Pilkington Glass Works, Ellis Ashton Street, Huyton Business Park

K4 site boundary

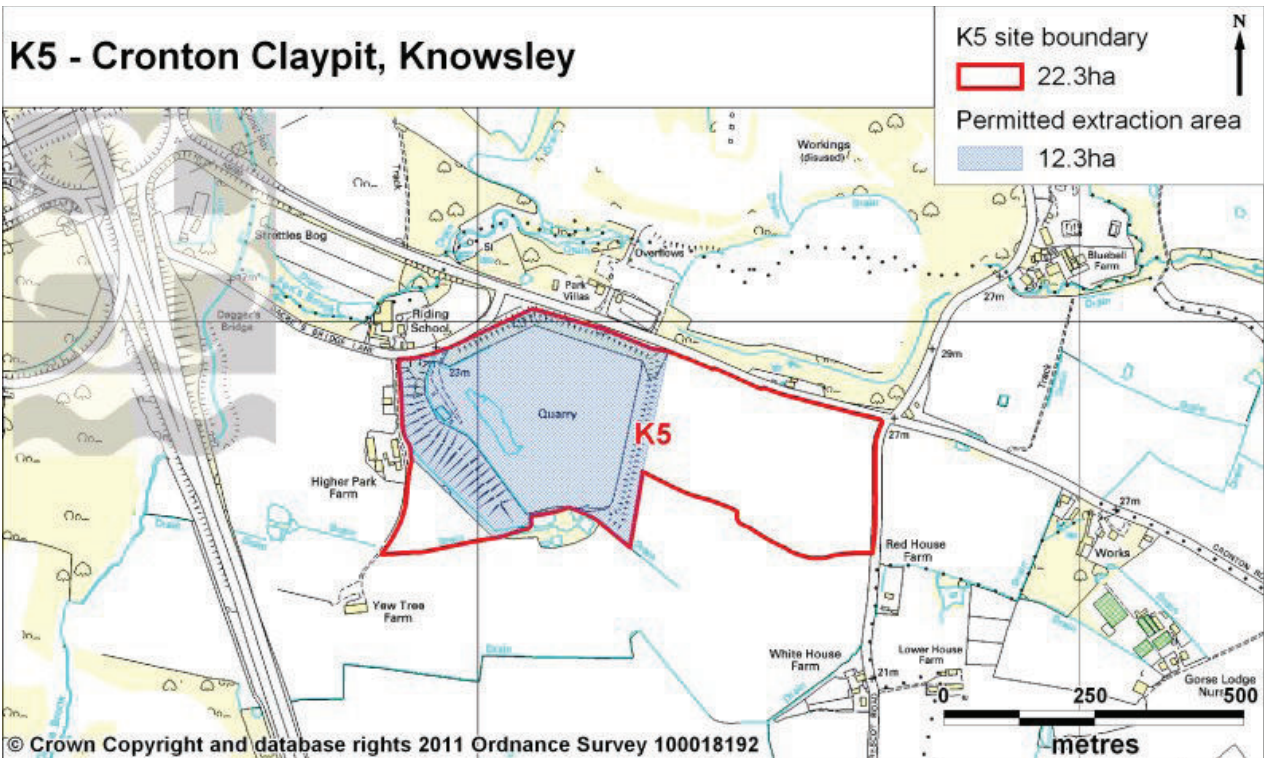
1.3ha



| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✗ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

K5 - Cronton Claypit, Knowsley



K5 site boundary
 22.3ha
 Permitted extraction area
 12.3ha

© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

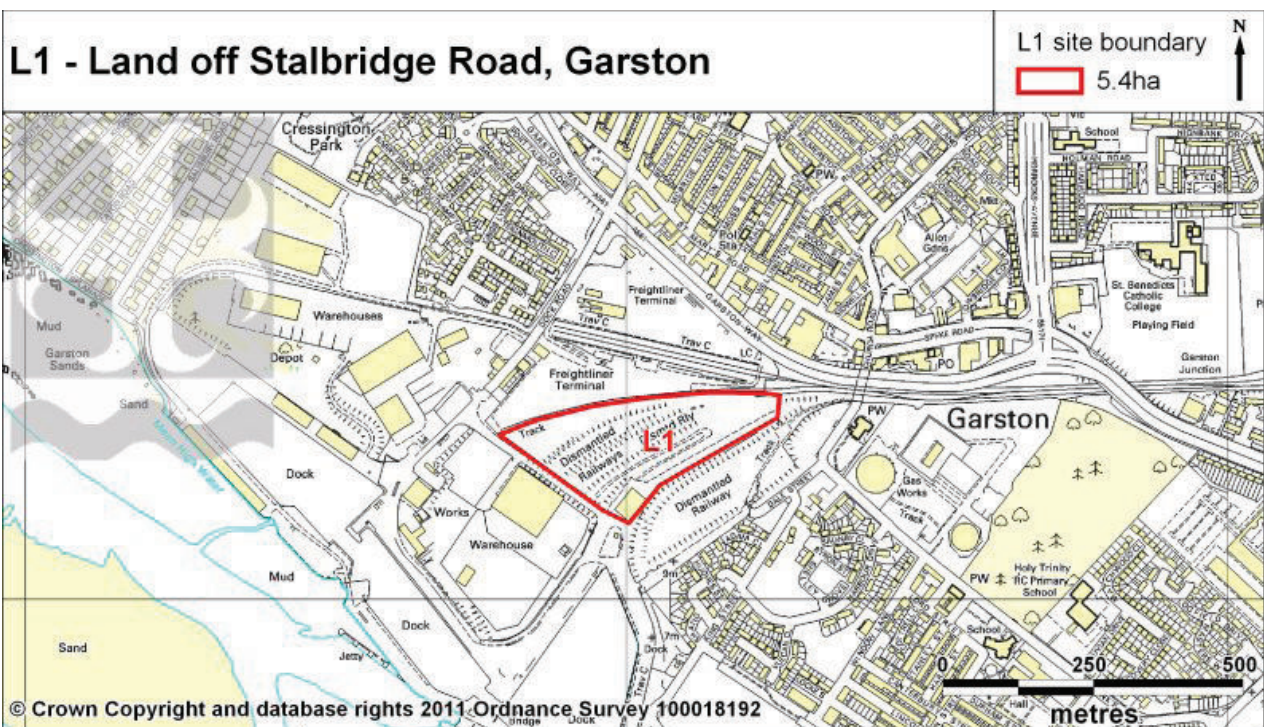
Suggested Waste Management Use

Inert Landfill



To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

L1 - Land off Stalbridge Road, Garston



L1 site boundary
 5.4ha

© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

Suggested Waste Management Use

HWRC



Re-Processor



Thermal Treatment



WTS



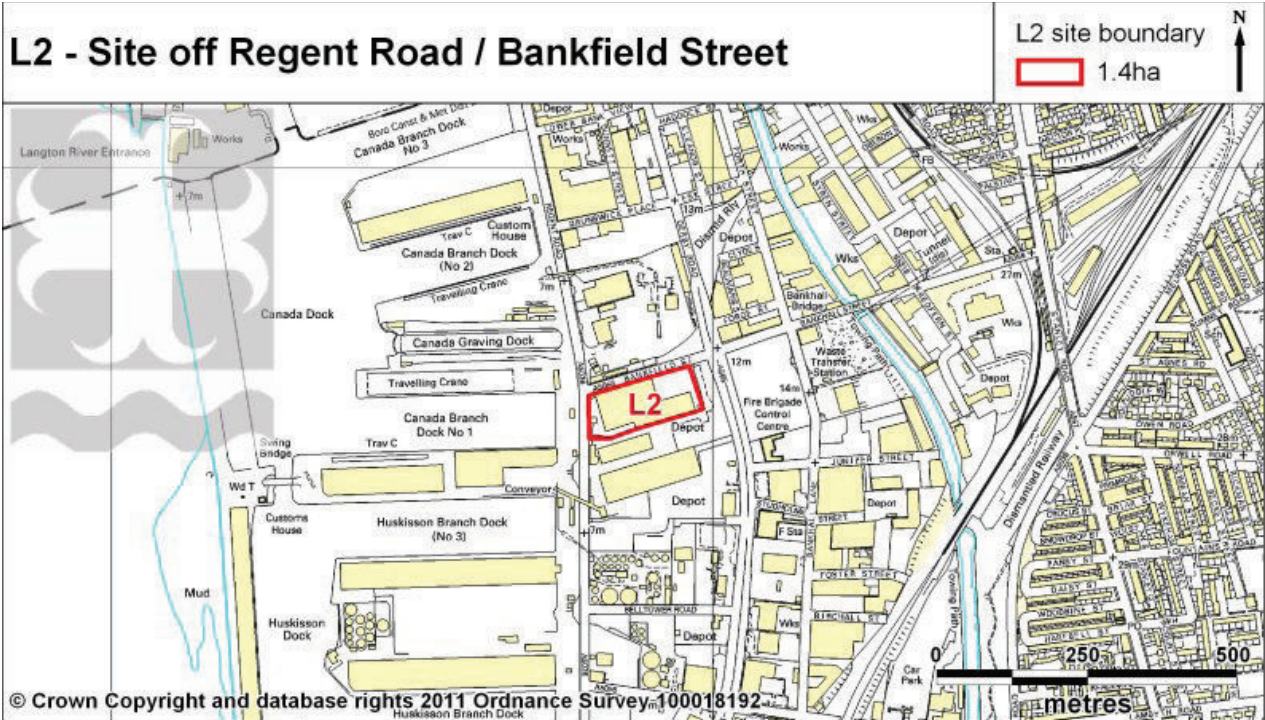
Primary Treatment



RRP

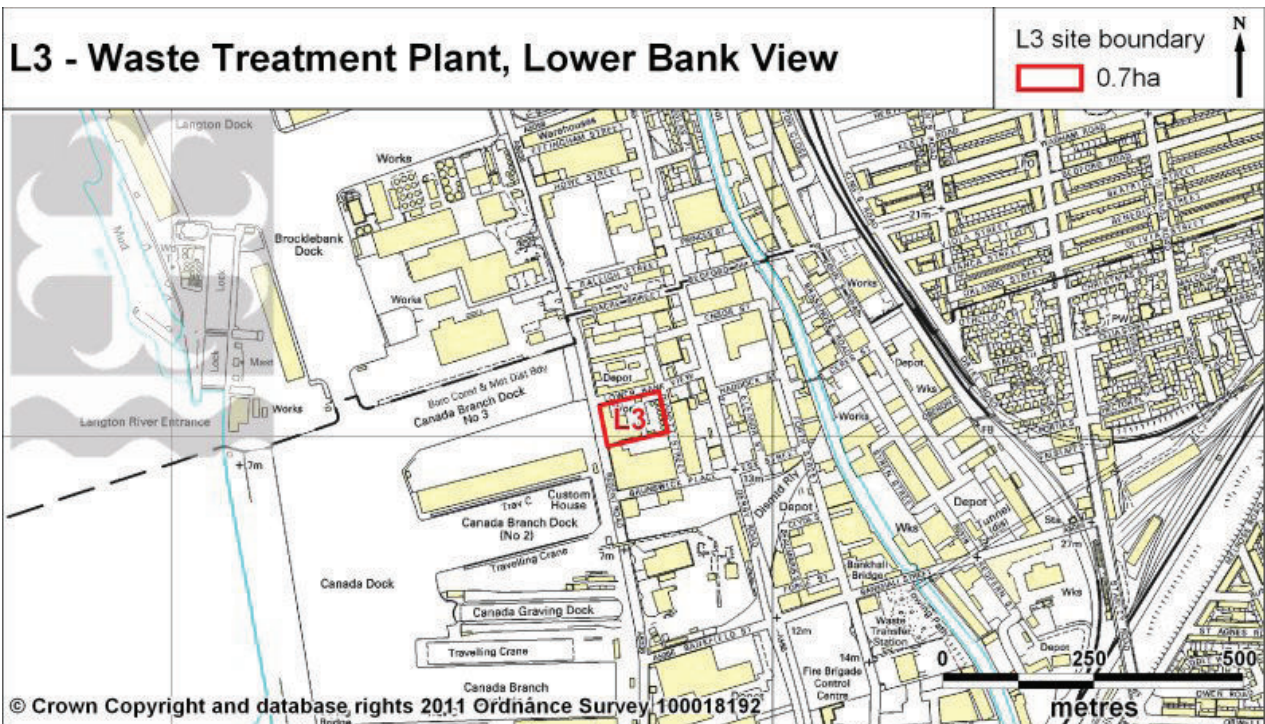


To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX



| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

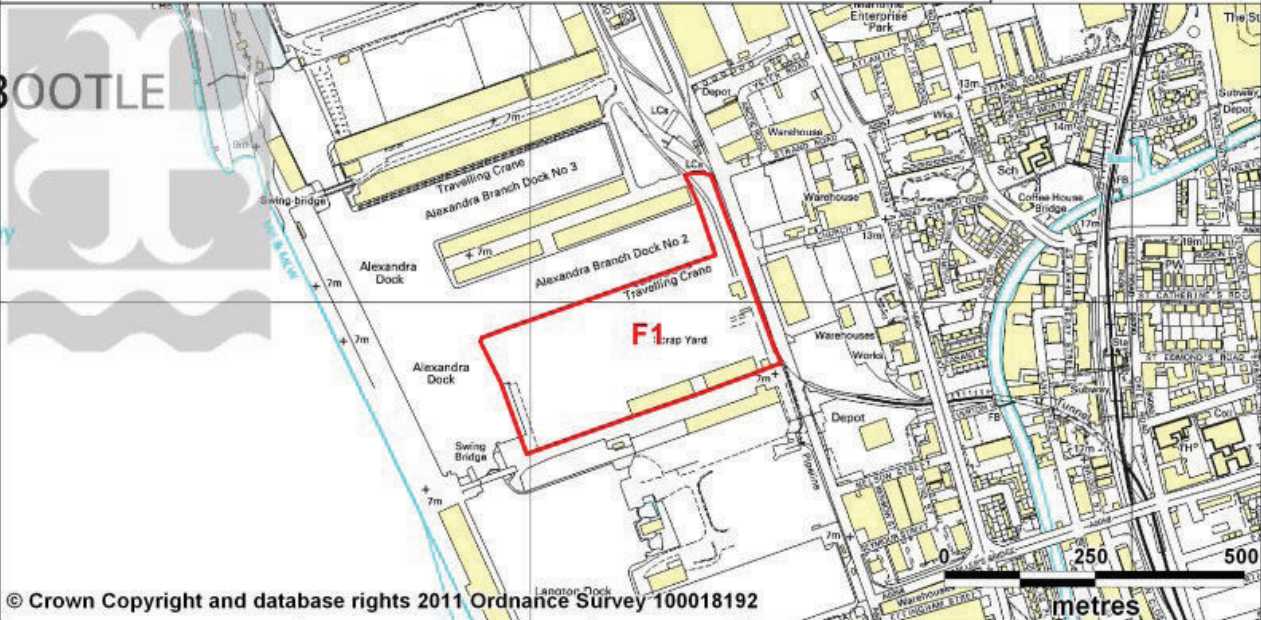


| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

F1 - Alexandra Dock 1, Metal Recycling Facility

F1 site boundary
 9.8ha



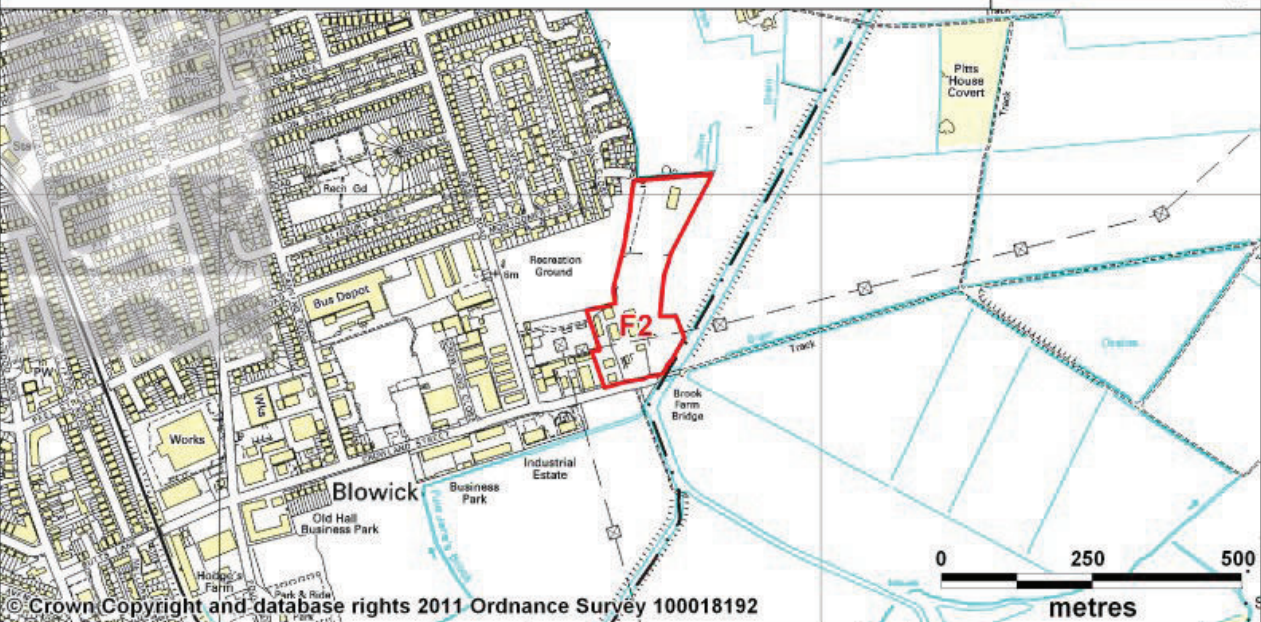
© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✓ |
| | WTS | ✗ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

F2 - 55 Crowland Street, Southport

F2 site boundary
 3.6ha



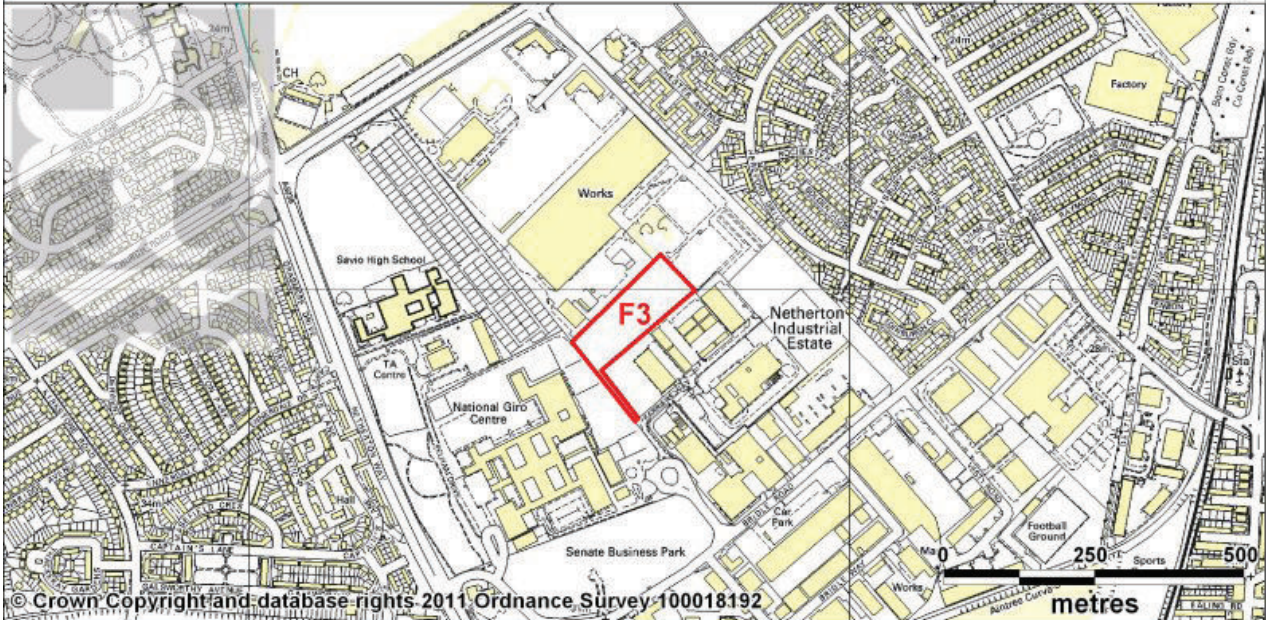
© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

F3 - Site North of Farriers Way, Atlantic Business Park

F3 site boundary
 1.7ha

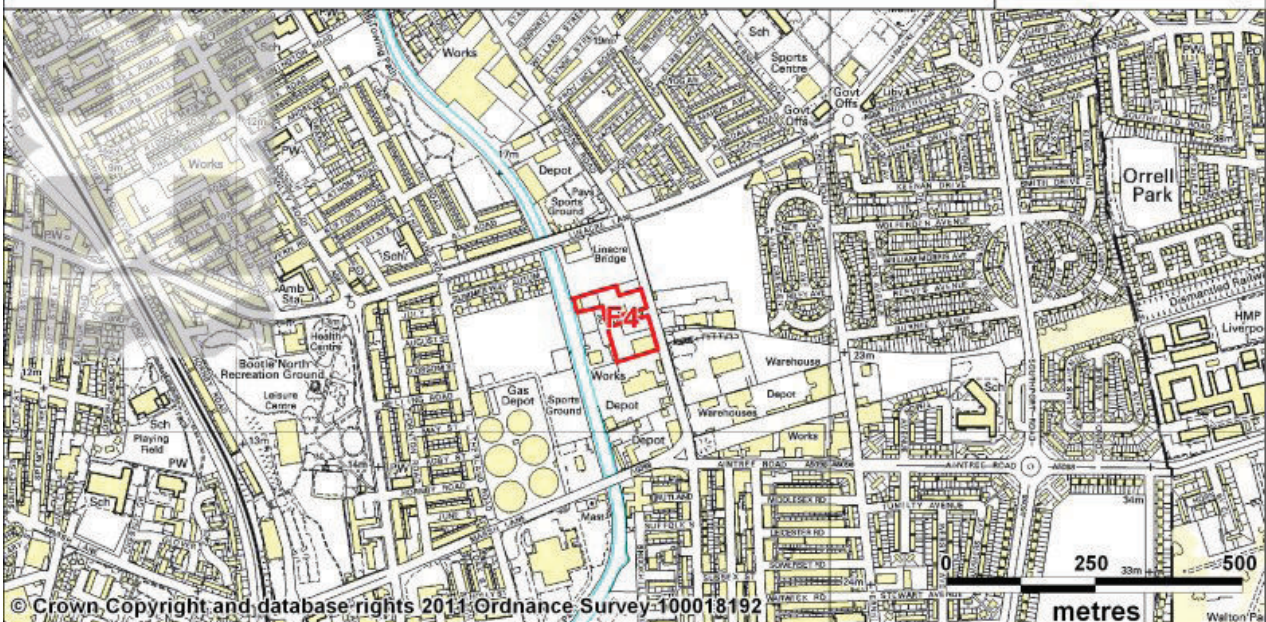


| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✗ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

F4 - 1-2 Acorn Way, Bootle

F4 site boundary
 0.8ha

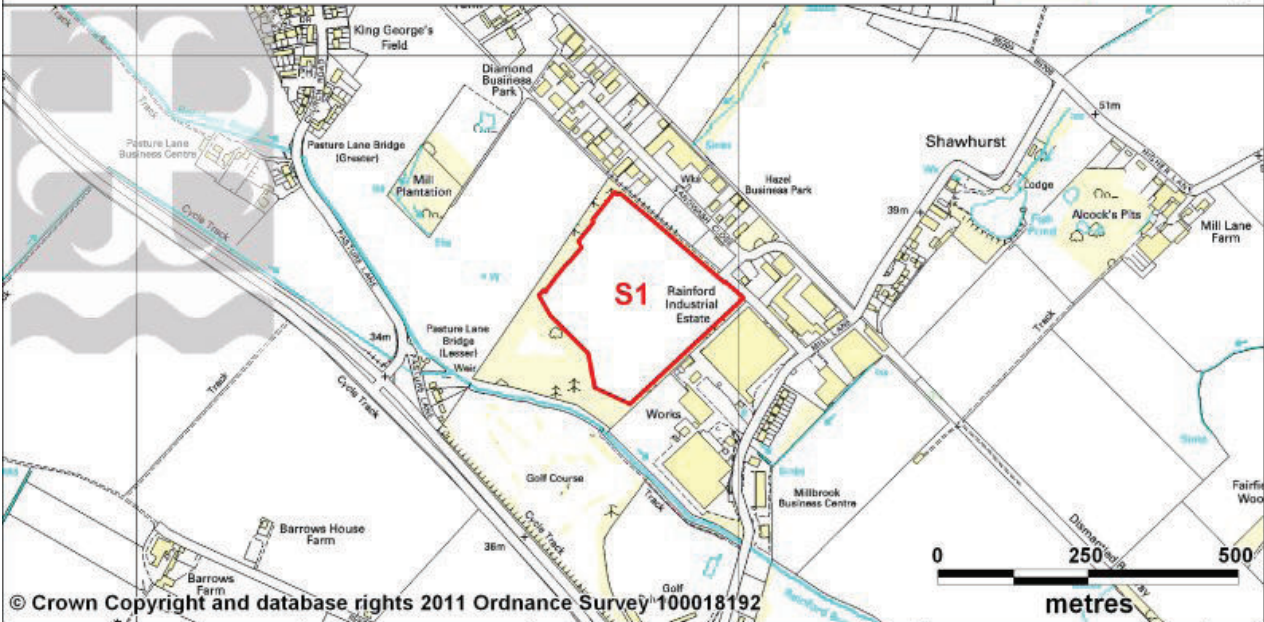


| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

S1 - Land SW of Sandwash Close, Rainford Industrial Estate

S1 site boundary
 6.1ha



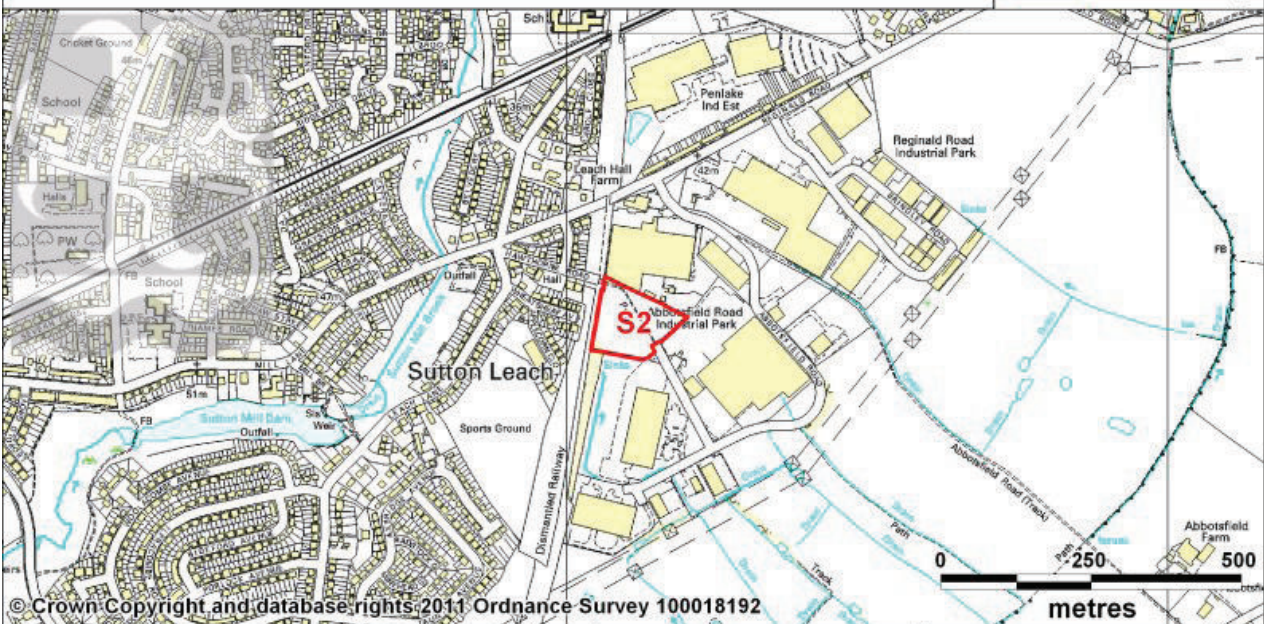
© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✗ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✓ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

S2 - Land North of T.A.C., Abbotsfield Industrial Estate

S2 site boundary
 1.3ha

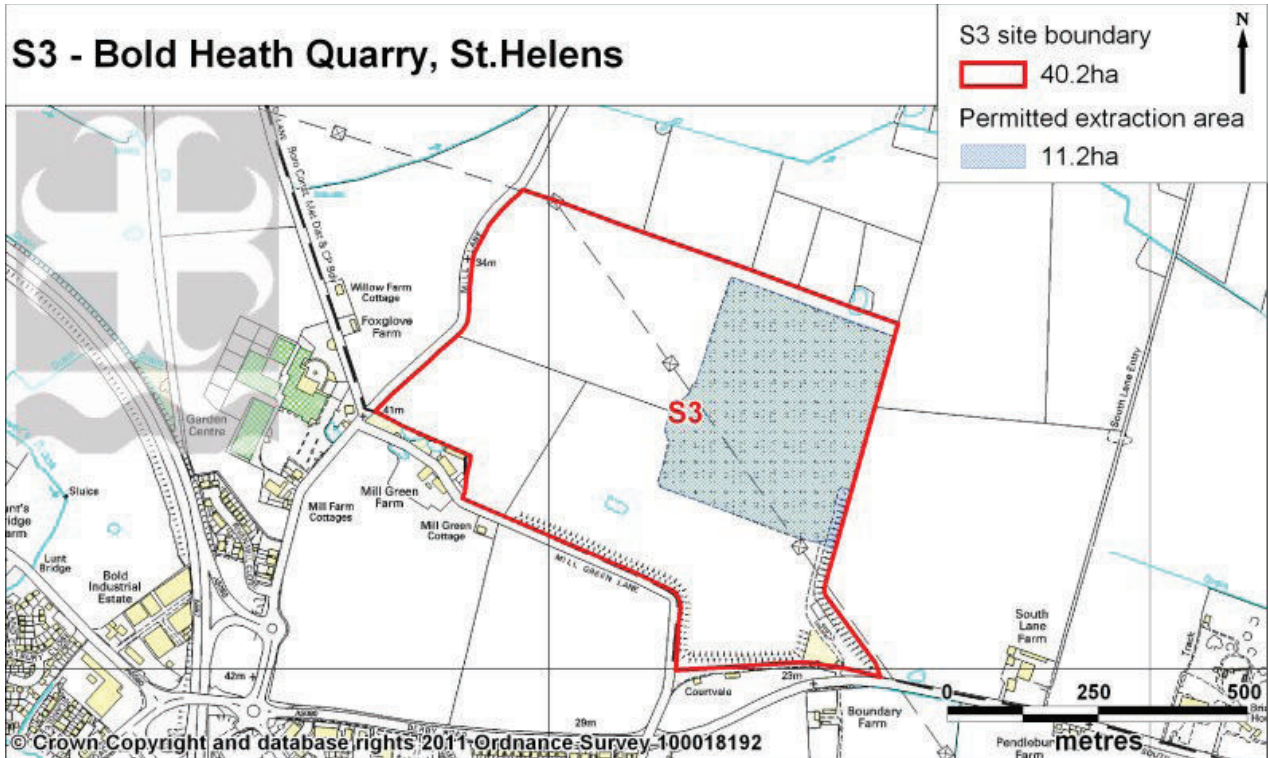


© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

S3 - Bold Heath Quarry, St.Helens

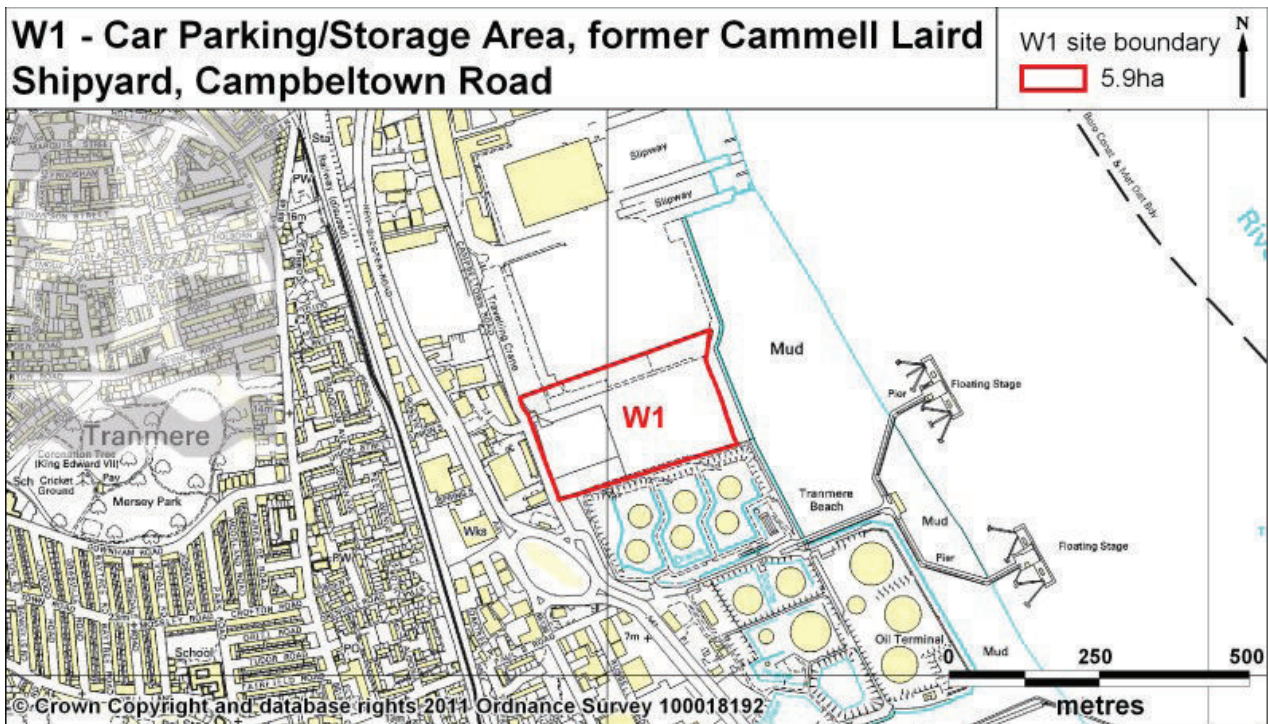


© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | Inert Landfill | ✓ |
|--------------------------------|----------------|---|

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

W1 - Car Parking/Storage Area, former Cammell Laird Shipyard, Campbeltown Road



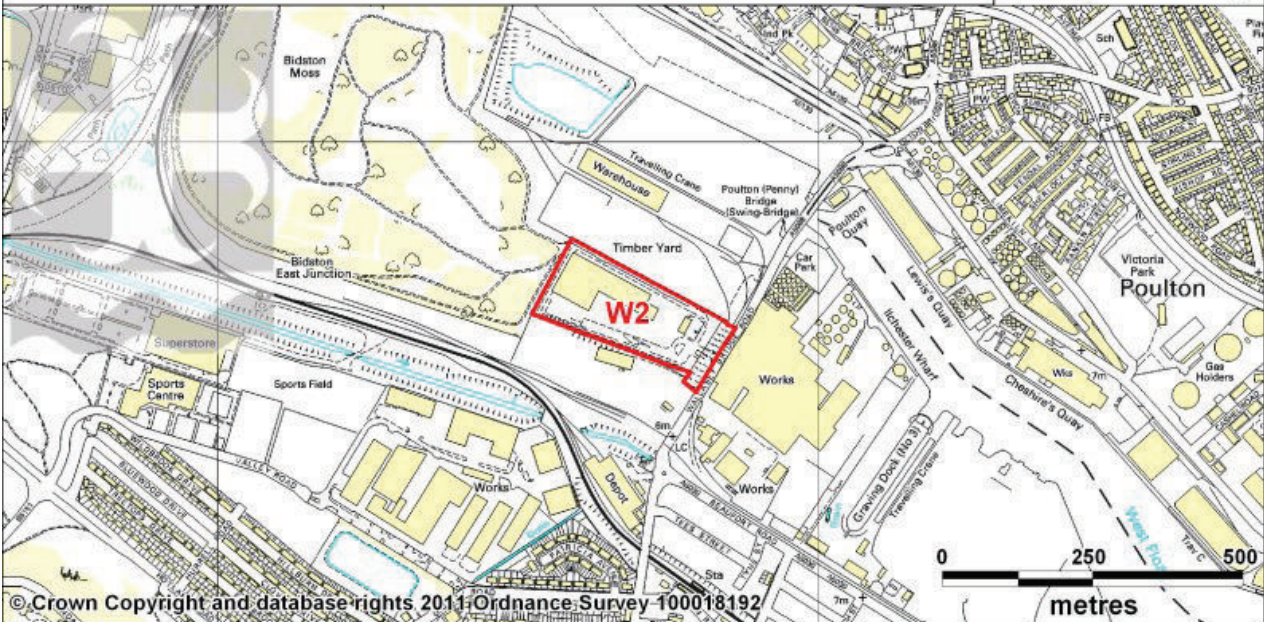
© Crown Copyright and database rights 2011 Ordnance Survey 100018192

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

W2 - Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road

W2 site boundary
 3.7ha

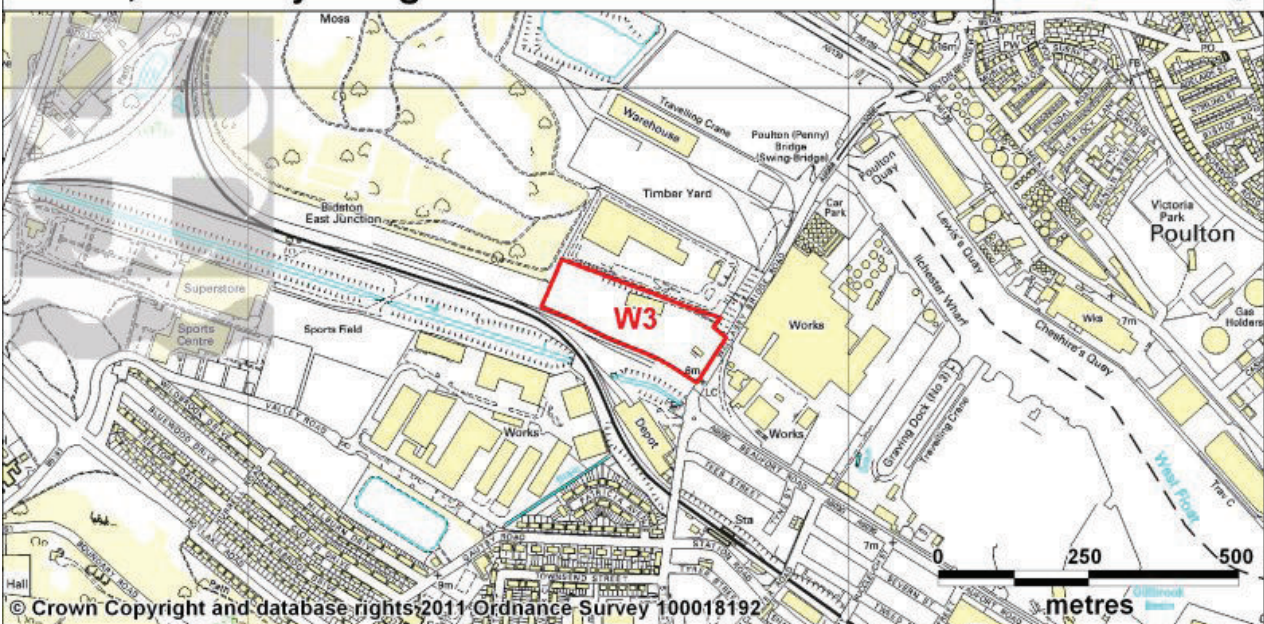


| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✓ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

W3 - Former Goods Yard, Adjacent Bidston MRF / HWRC, Wallasey Bridge Road

W3 site boundary
 2.8ha



| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Suggested Waste Management Use | HWRC | ✗ | Re-Processor | ✓ | Thermal Treatment | ✗ |
| | WTS | ✓ | Primary Treatment | ✓ | RRP | ✗ |

To read the full site profile refer to supporting document "Waste DPD Site Profiles" page no. XX

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22 September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director - Communities

SUBJECT: Runcorn Hill Park, “Parks for People” Project

WARDS: Heath

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

1.1 To update Members on progress and the successful achievement of a Round 1 Pass from the Heritage Lottery Fund (HLF) “Parks for People” Programme, for the refurbishment and development of Runcorn Hill & Heath Park.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That the Board give delegated authority to the Strategic Director for Communities, in consultation with the Executive Member for Physical Environment, to progress the project and to prepare and submit all necessary information for a Round 2 submission to Heritage Lottery Fund.

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 Members will recall that on 25th September 2008 a report to the Executive Board outlined the next phase of major refurbishment to key Borough Parks and Open Spaces. Runcorn Hill Park was identified as a key area.

3.2 The area under consideration for refurbishment and development includes the formal grounds of Runcorn Hill Park, Runcorn Hill Local Nature Reserve & the Heath Playing Fields.

3.3 The “Parks for People” programme is a funding stream administered by the Heritage Lottery Fund (HLF). It is aimed at improving parks and open spaces and supporting their historic and cultural heritage for the benefit of local communities, it can provide up to 90% funding to enable this.

3.4 The “Parks for People” application process is a lengthy one and consists of two competitive assessment stages, Round 1 and Round 2. Work with local community groups and HLF has been undertaken to develop and gain a Round 1 pass in February 2011. A Round 2 decision, if successful, will not be known until September 2012. If successful, it is not anticipated that work on site will commence before the end of 2013.

3.5 A “Parks for People” Project Development Group, which includes Ward Councillors, Council Officers and community group representatives, has been set up to guide the development of the project.

- 3.6 Other people consulted on a regular basis include park users, local residents, the Friends of Runcorn Hill, Runcorn Model Boat club, Runcorn Bowling Club, Scout/ youth group leaders, sports clubs, Police and Fire Service.
- 3.7 The Project proposals contain capital elements to refurbish and enhance existing features, such as the boating lake and formal park elements as well as historic features such as 'Happy Valley'. It will provide a new visitor centre, which will replace the run down existing building, and improve access to other features unique to the site such as the former quarry rock outcrops. The project aims to raise awareness of the site's industrial heritage and promote these as an attraction for a wider audience. The project also offers the potential for more formal education purposes and links. See Appendix 1.
- 3.8 The Project proposals and grant application include a revenue support element for a 5-year part-time development post for the Park. This is a key feature for the "Parks for People" programme to promote the site heritage, help community involvement in the Park and enable user group activities to improve self-sustainability. This will be in the manner currently adopted in Hale with the Hale Heritage Champion.
- 3.9 In order to complete work to support the Round 2 bid, some additional consultants will be procured to support Open Space Design & Development Team to carry out certain elements of the bid. These will include architects and engineers and will be appointed in accordance with Standing Orders.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

- 4.1 The Runcorn Hill "Parks for People" Project will improve the open space and help create better recreation and outdoor education facilities for the benefit of local communities, helping to achieve the objectives of 'A Healthy Halton', 'Urban Renewal' and 'Employment, Learning and Skills'.

5.0 FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 5.1 In February 2011 the Council successfully achieved a HLF Parks for People Round 1 Pass and was awarded a development grant of £40,000 to help produce the design detail required for a Round 2 application. Total cost for Round 2 development work is £58,000, with a £15,000 contribution from the current Open Space Services development budget. The 'cost' of volunteer time, attending meetings etc., can also be included and claimed as a match funding element.
- 5.2 Costs for delivery of the proposals were estimated at the Round 1 application stage as approximately £1.3 million. If a HLF Round 2 bid is successful, the estimated grant from the Parks for People Programme is £910,000. Approximately £390,000 match-funding will be sought from a combination of sources including external grants combined with contributions from Halton BC funds. An example of how the match funding will be made up is listed below.

| |
|---|
| Funding Source |
| Heritage Lottery Grant |
| Ineos Chlor Environmental Levy |
| Proposed development at the Heath S106 monies |
| Wren Grant |
| Other Grants |
| Volunteer time contribution |
| *Increased management & maintenance funding |
| TOTAL |

*The Authority is able to use the money spent over a five year period on ongoing park management as part of the match funding contribution.

- 5.3 A more detailed match funding package will developed during the next stage and will be clarified and reported for approval to the board in the future.

6.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

- 6.1 Sustainability: the refurbished and additional park features will be maintained and managed by Open Space Services Division using existing resources. Many outdated assets within the park will be renewed as part of the project. With a combination of good design, community group involvement and by additional private concessions such as a café business in the new Visitor Centre, it is hoped that a robust business strategy will allow efficient operation of all the facilities over the long term, safeguarding the investment.

7.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

- 7.1 A Healthy Halton: improved facilities will encourage more recreation and exercise in the Park, helping to combat obesity, to encourage cardio vascular and muscular activity and to promote mental well-being for local communities.
- 7.2 Halton's Urban Renewal: improvements to Halton's green infrastructure will further improve the image of the Borough and help retain and attract residents, business and visitors.
- 7.3 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton: community enablement will offer opportunities for local people to gain additional knowledge and skills which will support personal development and will be transferable for future employment.

8.0 RISK ANALYSIS

- 8.1 If the HLF Round 2 bid should not be successful, the development work achieved for the application could be used to source funding from other external grants, however, the proposals would have to be scaled down and some of the improvement proposals would not be achievable.

9.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY

- 9.1 No significant Equality and Diversity issues have been identified.

10.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|---|--|------------------------|
| Runcorn Hill Park Round 1 'Parks for People' Bid | Open Spaces Services Picow Farm Depot | Nick Martin |
| Executive Board Report 25 th September 2008 | Open Space Services Picow Farm Depot | N Martin |
| HLF Guidance notes for 'Parks for people' grants | On line – HLF | |

Runcorn Hill & Heath Park

Heritage Lottery Parks for People Project

EXAMPLES OF INFRASTRUCTURE IMPROVEMENTS

New and improved
Infrastructure will include:
Park entrances
lake restoration
paths and signage
trees and landscaping



INDUSTRIAL HERITAGE

Sensitive conservation, partial renovation and interpretation of Runcorn Hill's old quarries and mineral routes is a key part of the HLF bid.

Runcorn Hill & Heath Park

Heritage Lottery Parks for People Project

NEW VISITOR CENTRE:

Sample pictures to illustrate
location sensitive, sustainable style



COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT:

A 5-year part-time post is included in the bid to develop and promote community involvement in the long-term use and care of the park.



| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| REPORT TO: | Executive Board |
| DATE: | 22 nd September 2011 |
| REPORTING OFFICER: | Strategic Director – Children and Enterprise |
| SUBJECT: | James Review |
| WARD(S) | Borough-wide |

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 To update the board on the Sebastian James' Review of Education Capital and to outline the Priority School Building Programme (PSBP). In addition, to seek agreement to submit an application for the PSBP funding for 6 Local Authority Schools.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That:

- i) the Board note the findings of the Sebastian James Review of Education Capital; and**
- ii) the Strategic Director, Children and Enterprise, in consultation with the Lead Member for Children Young People and Families be authorised to submit applications for the PSBP for all schools that meet the Department for Education (DfE) condition criteria.**

3.0 THE SEBASTIAN JAMES REVIEW

- 3.1 Following the Michael Gove announcement on the 5th July 2010 to end all current school capital projects, Michael Gove commissioned Sebastian James to lead a review of the Educational Capital Build programmes. The review was to establish the failings of the current system and identify how to streamline the process and thereby allow more money to be spent on the educational establishments and less on consultants and bureaucracy. The result of this review is the Sebastian James' Review of Education Capital, which was published on 8th April 2011.
- 3.2 The review was undertaken by the Capital Review team, which was made up of a panel of experts led by Sebastian James – Group Operations Director of Dixons Retail plc. The other members of the team were:
- Kevin Grace, Tesco; Director of Property Services
 - Barry Quirk; Chief Executive of Lewisham
 - John Hood; former Vice-Chancellor of University of Oxford
 - Sir John Egan; former Chief Executive of Jaguar and BAA
 - Ben Gordon; Chief Executive of Mothercare plc.

- 3.3 The document is split into two parts, Part A looks at the process previous to July 2010 and identifies the problems with and learning from previous school capital projects, particularly the Building Schools for the Future Scheme (BSF). Part B concentrates on what a new system would look like and the processes to be put in place to allow a streamlined procedure for capital spend on education establishments to be implemented.
- 3.4 The report makes a total of 16 recommendations, which are included in Appendix A of this report.
- 3.5 The Department for Education (DfE) has initiated a twelve week consultation exercise and have invited bodies to comment on the review paper prior to the Secretary of State issuing his response. However, the consultation document identifies that of the 16 recommendations
- 6 have been accepted outright,
 - 2 have been accepted in principle,
 - 6 have been accepted but will be consulted upon; and
 - 2 require consultation.
- These decisions are noted in Appendix A.
- 3.6 The DfE have made it clear that in addition to just school buildings, they want the new processes discussed in the Sebastian James' review to include Sixth Form Colleges, University Technical Colleges and Studio Schools, myplace facilities and Sure Start Children's Centres.
- 3.7 The deadline for the completion of the consultation process is 11th October 2011. Appendix B outlines the key recommendations for consultation and provides a more detailed analysis of the impact. In the following section the key issues and implications for Halton to consider are highlighted.

4.0 KEY ACTIONS FOR HALTON

- 4.1 It is clear that management of the education building estate will be changing in the next few months/years and that if Halton want to be able to remain a key stakeholder we will need to change the way that we work with each other and our suppliers. The following are key areas that are being discussed between the directorates and stakeholders.

4.2 LEAD RESPONSIBLE BODY

It is imperative that Halton Borough Council is recognised by the DfE, Archdioceses, Academies and future Free Schools as the lead Responsible Body in the borough and the holder of the Local Investment Plan. In this role the authority must be able to provide Condition Surveys for all school buildings to the DfE as needed and be able to articulate the future development plans for all educational buildings in the area.

In order to secure this position HBC must:

- 4.2.1 1. Develop a case for Halton BC to be treated as a Responsible Body with a proven delivery capability to allow some procurement to come

through the authority

- a. The existing LEP should assist with the authority being able to demonstrate a proven delivery capability.
- b. A new group may need to be established to ensure that the LA can be seen as taking the co-ordination role and thereby take on Lead Responsible body status.
- c. There will be no funding available from the DfE for this role and therefore Halton will need to understand the extent of the role to be undertaken and where the funding will come from.

4.2.2 2. Develop a new repository of condition data across the local area, to include all schools not just LA maintained.

- a. Halton currently have condition data for all schools in the authority and these are stored on a database that is accessible to schools. These surveys for LA and VC schools are currently being updated.
- b. Halton will need to understand who will pay for the surveys for VA, Academy and Free schools. The concern is that if we do not have all condition in one place we will be unable to act as the Lead Responsible Body and if asked to pay some of the schools may not agree. Traditionally, Halton have not charged the VA schools for conducting school surveys.

4.2.3 3. Develop a clear strategy for how the Local Investment Plan will be developed by spring 2012.

- a. The strategy will require buy in from all VA and Academies. A process for approval of the Local Investment Plan will need to be established, along with criteria for producing the plans.
- b. The plan aims may need to be altered if an Academy or one of the Arch diocese decide not to contribute to the plan

5.0 DEVELOP A REGIONAL BASED PROCUREMENT APPROACH

The James review clearly identifies that it sees value for money being delivered through a centralised or regional procurement process. If Halton Borough Council is to convince the DfE that Halton is able to deliver a Value for Money service a number of regional style contracts should be established.

In order to secure this position HBC must:

1. Develop a clear strategy for how we can partner with other Local Authorities to create a Regional base for procurement.

- a. Identify partner authorities and liaise to develop a regional collaboration for delivering capital projects.
 - b. This may require additional groups to be set up without additional fees from the DfE.
2. Develop a clear strategy to demonstrate the effectiveness and efficiency of local / regional procurement arrangements.
- a. Produce a co-ordinated plan for delivering capital projects across the regions.
 - b. Clarify how the Halton Local Education Partnership can be used to deliver a number of projects throughout the surrounding areas and provide an effective and efficient form of procurement.
3. Review the maintenance processes and contracts currently in place to determine if they are fit for purpose.
- a. Halton are currently reviewing the Mechanical and Electrical maintenance contract to ensure that it will deliver value for money.

6.0 PRIORITY SCHOOL BUILDING PROJECT

- 6.1 On 19th July 2011, the Local Authority was informed that the DfE were commencing a privately financed programme to provide school facilities for those schools in the worst condition.
- 6.2 The programme is expected to support between 100-300 schools in total covering a mix of primary, secondary, specials schools and sixth form colleges. With approximately 20% of the programme being delivered each year over the next 5 years with the first schools to open in academic year of 2014-15.
- 6.3 To be considered for inclusion the Local Authority and school must accept the following:
- 6.4
- The school will be part of a 27 year private finance arrangement including soft services (cleaning, pest control, waste management, caretaking, security and grounds maintenance)
 - The contract will be procured by a central body and that each school will be batched together with a number of other schools not necessarily in the same geographic area. There is a possibility that the LA or school could be the contracting party.
 - The procurement will be based on standardised designs.
 - The school will be required to make a contribution to the annual revenue payments of the private finance contract.

- The school will need to be able to show sufficient long term pupil demand.

6.5 Key Dates

- Deadline for Registration 12:00 7th October 2011
- Deadline for submission of applications 12:00 14th October 2011
- Notification of outcome December 2011

6.6 Identifying schools that meet the criteria

In addition to the conditions listed in para 6.4 above, only schools that have demonstrable Priority level 1,2 or 3 condition issues that are above 30% of the PfS calculated rebuild figure will be considered.

- 6.7 The LA will therefore review the condition information held for the all schools to identify if an application could be submitted.

6.9 Issues with submitting an application

There is not much detail in the information provided with the application forms and therefore there are a number of issues and concerns that have been identified. They are:

- The level of funding being suggested by PfS for a new building is significantly reduced from previous levels (approximately a third to a half of previous levels). This then translates into the new buildings being significantly smaller than the current designs. The schools would need to understand and agree that they will be able to operate in smaller environments.
- The role of local authority and schools in contract management is unclear. The impact of local stakeholders in the decision process is also equally unclear. Understanding how the local context will be incorporated in to the schemes is important and will need to be understood before proceeding beyond the feasibility stage.
- Not enough information has been provided for the Authority to understand the nature of the financial deal. Therefore it is not understood if the local authority will need to contribute financially to the projects or underwrite any costs. The current PFI (The Grange) is costing the school an extra £75 per pupil per annum, it is unknown if a similar fee is payable, however as the schools are smaller and cheaper it is assumed that any fees will be likewise reduced.
- Should the Authority be successful with any application it may make then financial expertise will be required to evaluate the financial cost to the authority and undertake cost benefit analysis, no funding has been identified for this expense..
- The implications of not submitting an expression of interest will also need to be considered.

6.10 Recommendation

As the application is only an expression of interest it is recommended that an application is submitted for all schools that fulfil the 30% condition criteria.

7.0 FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

7.1 If the applications are successful a full review of the financial implications will be undertaken and will be brought back to the executive board for final approval.

8.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

8.1 Children & Young People in Halton

If successful, any resulting new school would enrich the local community it served and will benefit all pupils that attended the schools from 2014 and beyond, providing modern a 21st century learning environment.

8.2 Employment, Learning & Skills in Halton

It is hoped that a new build programme in Halton would enhance the local work opportunities, but this would be dependant on the procurement method adopted.

8.3 A Healthy Halton

Any new school will be provided with excellent sports facilities and the capital investment will provide kitchen and dinning facilities which will encourage healthy living and eating.

8.4 A Safer Halton

Any new school would be designed to ensure that children, staff and other community users feel safe and secure on school sites.

8.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

The creation of any new school would become a major resource for the communities they serve.

9.0 RISK ANALYSIS

9.1 The DfE have not announced any other method of securing funding for any major building project. It is anticipated that further funding would be made available for refurbishment work in the future but it is not expected for some time. Therefore although the Priority Schools Building Project may offer smaller, standard designs it is the only opportunity at present to secure funding.

9.2 Additionally, the application is only an expression of interest and if the offer proves to be unsatisfactory in terms of cost or design the Local Authority does not need to proceed with the application.

10.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

10.1 The advisors would be expected to comply with the Council policies relating to equality and diversity.

11.0 REASON FOR DECISION

11.1 If the Authority is successful in securing funding this will provide funding to rebuild the Halton schools with the worst condition issues.

12.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

12.1 Consideration has been given to the option of not submitting an applications form. This was rejected as this is the only funding available for the LA to bid for to rebuild its primary and secondary schools with the worst condition issues.

13.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

13.1 Local Authorities must register by 7th October 2011 and complete and submit any application by 12 noon on Friday 14th October 2011.

14.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|--|----------------------------|---|
| Sebastian James' Review of Education Capital | Dee 2 Grosvenor House | Katrina Hall – Divisional Manager – Transforming Children's Environment |
| DfE letter of 19 th July 2011 inviting applications for the Priority Schools Building Project | As above | Katrina Hall – Divisional Manager – Transforming Children's Environment |

Appendix A – Summary of Sebastian James’s Recommendations

| | Recommendation | DfE Comment |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Capital investment and apportionment should be based on objective facts and use clear, consistently-applied criteria. Allocation should focus on the need for high-quality school places and the condition of facilities. | Accept. |
| 2 | Demand-led programmes, such as Free Schools, are most sensibly funded from the centre and a centrally retained budget should be set aside for them. | Accept. In addition, budgets for new University Technical Colleges, Studio Schools, initial funding for sponsor academies and for secure accommodation can also be held centrally. |
| 3 | The Department should avoid multiple funding streams for investment that can and should be planned locally, and instead apportion the available capital as a single, flexible budget for each local area, with a mandate to include ministerial priorities in determining allocations. | Would like to consult further , to ensure that the risks and benefits of other approaches can be discussed |
| 4 | Notional budgets should be apportioned to Local Authority areas, empowering them fully to decide how best to reconcile national and local policy priorities in their own local contexts. A specific local process, involving all Responsible Bodies, and hosted by the Local Authority, should then prioritise how this notional budget should be used. | Would like to consult further , to ensure that the risks and benefits of other approaches can be discussed. |
| 5 | The local prioritisation decisions should be captured in a short local investment plan. There should be light-touch central appraisal of all local plans before an allocated plan of work is developed so that themes can be identified on a national level and scale-benefits achieved. This must also allow for representations where parties believe the process has not assigned priorities fairly. | Accept , subject to consultation on how a light-touch plan can best capture the appropriate capital projects across all relevant responsible bodies. An initial plan will be sought in 2012. |
| 6 | Individual institutions should be allocated an amount of capital to support delivery of small capital works and ICT provision. Wherever possible, this should be aggregated up to Responsible Bodies according to the number of individual institutions they represent, for the Responsible Body then to use for appropriate maintenance across its estate, working in partnership with the institutions. | Accept , though upwards aggregation will be solely voluntary. |
| 7 | The Department ensures there is access to clear guidance on legal responsibilities in relation to maintenance of buildings, and on how revenue funding can be used for facility maintenance. | Accept. |
| 8 | That the Department <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • gathers all local condition data that currently exists, and implements a central condition database to manage this information. • carries out independent building condition surveys on a rolling 20% sample of the estate each year to provide a credible picture of investment needs, repeating this to develop a full picture of the estate’s condition in five years and thereafter. | Accept. Consultation on how to do this most efficiently and quickly, with an emphasis on testing what needs to be collected and; how best this should be applied to allocations. |

| | Recommendation | DfE Comment |
|----|---|---|
| 9 | That the Department revises its school premises regulations and guidance to remove unnecessary burdens and ensure that a single, clear set of regulations apply to all schools. The Department should also seek to further reduce the bureaucracy and prescription surrounding BREEAM assessments | Accept , for separate consultation later in the year. |
| 10 | There should be a clear, consistent Departmental position on what fit-for-purpose facilities entail. A suite of drawings and specifications should be developed that can easily be applied across a wide range of educational facilities. These should be co-ordinated centrally to deliver best value. | Accept . The development of specification and drawings will include consultation. |
| 11 | The standardised drawings and specifications must be continuously improved through learning from projects captured and co-ordinated centrally. Post occupancy evaluation will be a critical tool to capture this learning. | Accept , but will consult further and fully, separately as part of implementation. |
| 12 | As many projects as possible currently in the BSF and Academy pipeline should be able to benefit from the Review's findings to ensure more efficient procurement of high quality buildings. This should be an early priority to identify where this could be done. | Accept . |
| 13 | That the Central Body should put in place a small number of new national procurement contracts that will drive quality and value from the programme of building projects ahead. | Accept in principle , subject to consultation on the type and scale of projects that are potentially best procured through national procurement routes, and the criteria under which alternative local or regional procurement routes can demonstrate they are capable of delivering similar or better results. |
| 14 | That the Department uses the coming spending review period to establish a central delivery body and procurement model, whereby the pipeline of major projects – to a scale determined by the Department – is procured and managed centrally with funding retained centrally for that purpose. | Accept in principle , subject to consultation on the type and scale of projects that are potentially best procured centrally, and the criteria under which alternative procurement arrangements – particularly regional partnerships - can demonstrate they are capable of delivering similar or better results. Also to explore how learning on the build process can be captured from across the system and accumulated in order to grow overall expertise and generate incremental savings. |
| 15 | The Department quickly takes steps to maximise the value for money delivered through maintenance and small projects and puts in place a simple and clear national contract to make this happen. | Accept , subject to consultation on where national contracts can offer better value than good existing local or regional arrangements. |
| 16 | That the Department revisit its 2004 Cap Gemini report and implement proposals where they are appropriate. | Accept . |

Appendix B – The Review of Education Capital Report Recommendations

A discussion on the implications of the key recommendations is given below.

Use of Basic Need and Condition Data to Determine Local Budget Allocations

Recommendations

‘Review of Education Capital: Sebastian James, April 2011’

R1 *Capital Investment and apportionment should be based on objective facts and use clear, consistently applied criteria. Allocation should focus on the need for high-quality school places and the condition of facilities.*

R8 *That the Department gathers all local condition data that currently exists, and implements a central condition database to manage this information and carries out independent building condition surveys on a rolling 20% sample of the estate each year to provide a credible picture of investment needs, repeating this to develop a full picture of the estate’s condition in five years and thereafter.*

The DfE accepted that although they already collect pupil place data they do not collect condition data. The DfE have agreed to immediately start work on collecting data on the condition of buildings. However, due to the huge costs involved in introducing centralised data gathering based on ‘condition’ and the need to keep data continually refreshed, they are seeking consultation on the best collection method. The suggestion is that if good quality and current condition data is already held locally could it be utilised at a national level to allow funding to be allocated.

The movement away from duplicate surveys and the support of the local commissioning and ownership of local school condition surveys is welcomed. The added benefit would be a locally held understanding of the condition of all educational establishments within its area (i.e. including VA, Academy and Free schools).

It should be noted that there is no mention of Suitability as a criterion for determining funding. Therefore funding will only be made available for maintenance condition work and not for developing assets to enable new learning methods to be adopted.

Flexible Capital Budget with Local Decision-making

Recommendations

‘Review of Education Capital: Sebastian James, April 2011’

R2 *Demand-led programmes, such as Free Schools, are most sensibly funded from the centre and a centrally retained budget should be set aside for them.*

R3 *The Department should avoid multiple funding streams for investment that can and should be planned locally, and instead apportion the available capital as a single, flexible budget for each local area, with a mandate to include ministerial priorities in*

determining allocations.

R4 *Notional budgets should be apportioned to Local Authority areas, empowering them fully to decide how best to reconcile national and local policy priorities in their own local contexts. A specific local process, involving all Responsible Bodies, and hosted by the Local Authority, should then prioritise how this notional budget should be used.*

R5 *The local prioritisation decisions should be captured in a short local investment plan. There should be light-touch central appraisal of all local plans before an allocated plan of work is developed so that themes can be identified on a national level and scale-benefits achieved. This must also allow for representations where parties believe the process has not assigned priorities fairly.*

R6 *Individual institutions should be allocated an amount of capital to support delivery of small capital works and ICT provision. Wherever possible, this should be aggregated up to Responsible Bodies according to the number of individual institutions they represent, for the Responsible Body then to use for appropriate maintenance across its estate, working in partnership with the institutions.*

The DfE agrees that some funding should be retained centrally for demand-led programmes such as Free Schools with the bulk of funding being allocated to local authority areas in a single pot for local prioritisation through a process overseen by the local authority. However, prior to implementing such a process the DfE want to ensure that all Responsible Bodies are content that their interests and needs are fairly considered.

The DfE are therefore seeking consultation on this process. Specifically, to understand how arrangements for prioritising any single pot would take account of all local Responsible Bodies views and interests in a robust and fair way without unnecessary bureaucracy. They want to understand how quickly it would be feasible to put such arrangements in place, and what a phased implementation could look like.

To assist with this transition, the DfE are suggesting that 2012-15 could be a transitional period, with budgets being allocated largely on the same basis as 2011-12 but with some of the ring-fenced programmes currently managed centrally, for example maintenance of Academies and Sixth Form Colleges, being managed locally.

However, the DfE are also considering options for allocating maintenance capital to certain Responsible Bodies i.e. Academy sponsors and Diocese, so that they can apply it strategically across their entire estates. They are also planning to allocate an amount of capital to support delivery of small capital works and ICT provision directly to schools (as currently provided through Devolved Formula Capital).

They would like to understand how interested parties in local areas are already taking steps to work together on strategic capital investment decisions. To this aim the DfE are requesting that an initial Local Investment Plan is produced in spring 2012. This would draw as necessary from the respective plans that all Responsible Bodies may make for their own allocations. This would promote collaborative working and planning, and would enable the Department to identify common programmes of work across the country and give the opportunity for better procurement and more value for money.

It is noted that the James Review recommends a 'light-touch central appraisal' of all Local Investment Plans to enable all national level themes to be established but does not identify how this would work. It is further noted that although the report recommends that LAs should facilitate the formulation of the Local Investment Plan it will not receive funds to carry out any of the work identified until the Central Body has approved the plans. In addition, any Major Works approved will be dealt with at a National level and the sums to conduct any smaller works will be issued to the Responsible Bodies (not necessarily the LA) for implementation.

National Contracting and Procurement

Recommendations

'Review of Education Capital: Sebastian James, April 2011'

R13 That the Central Body should put in place a small number of new national procurement contracts that will drive quality and value from the programme of building projects ahead.

R14 That the Department uses the coming spending review period to establish a central delivery body and procurement model, whereby the pipeline of major projects – to a scale determined by the Department – is procured and managed centrally with funding retained centrally for that purpose.

R15 That the Department quickly takes steps to maximise the value for money delivered through maintenance and small projects and puts in place a simple and clear national contract to make this happen.

Although the review proposes that a national procurement contract is established and that the central body undertakes the project management of major projects, the DfE understands that there are currently local and regional procurement models in place which deliver on time and with value for money. Therefore they aim to establish a highly professional and increasingly experienced delivery Central Body which is targeted to achieving continuous improvement.

There is a recognition that there are currently a range of local and regional procurement models in existence, including Regional Improvement and Efficiency Partnerships and Local Educational Partnerships, which are already driving improvements and which can also respond appropriately to the local context, for instance in supporting small and medium enterprises. The DfE understand that decentralisation, putting decision-making and control over public assets and services closer to the front-line, has been clearly shown to provide a powerful driver for improvement but still assert that there are also important benefits to be gained by taking action on a larger scale with central leadership.

Nevertheless, the DfE state that they do not intend to over-ride existing local or regional arrangements where they are shown to be efficient and effective at building or improving schools. Therefore they have devised a couple of procurement options:

- The use of national frameworks, standardised designs and contracts, and central management of the build process for all projects over a certain size or type, but with Responsible Bodies allowed to opt out of central frameworks and central project management where they could demonstrate local or regional arrangements are in place which would achieve the same benefits.

- The use of a small number of specialised regional arrangements that between them cover all local investment could deliver similar oversight and standardised processes, with the Department supporting them and holding the key data, designs and ensuring knowledge is shared around the system.

Clear Guidance

Recommendations

‘Review of Education Capital: Sebastian James, April 2011’

R7 *The Department ensures there is access to clear guidance on legal responsibilities in relation to maintenance of buildings, and on how revenue funding can be used for facility maintenance.*

R9 *That the Department revises its school premises regulations and guidance to remove unnecessary burdens and ensure that a single, clear set of regulations apply to all schools. The Department should also seek to further reduce the bureaucracy and prescription surrounding BREEAM assessments*

R10 *There should be a clear, consistent Departmental position on what fit-for-purpose facilities entail. A suite of drawings and specifications should be developed that can easily be applied across a wide range of educational facilities. These should be co-ordinated centrally to deliver best value.*

R11 *The standardised drawings and specifications must be continuously improved through learning from projects captured and co-ordinated centrally. Post occupancy evaluation will be a critical tool to capture this learning.*

R12 *As many projects as possible currently in the BSF and Academy pipeline should be able to benefit from the Review’s findings to ensure more efficient procurement of high quality buildings. This should be an early priority to identify where this could be done.*

R16 *That the Department revisit its 2004 Cap Gemini report and implement proposals where they are appropriate*

One of the concerns raised by the review was the lack of learning and systematic improvement of quality, cost and time from one school building project to another. This has been caused by a lack in clarity of guidance and direction. The DfE have confirmed that they plan to comply with all the recommendations in the James Review that relate to guidance and direction to ensure that learning is passed through projects rather than each project starting from scratch.

Specifically the DfE are concerned that the previous design and procurement process resulted in most schools designs being bespoke. The DfE are therefore commissioning a suite of drawings and specifications that can easily be applied across a wide range of projects. The DfE stressed that they are not aiming for a “one-size-fits-all” solution but would want to see really good fit for purpose designs that are sustainable, flexible and can appropriately reflect local conditions and needs. They will include extensions, partial rebuilding and individual blocks, as well as whole-school solutions. They intend consult further on these matters as the designs are developed.

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 22nd September 2011

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director, Children & Enterprise

SUBJECT: Short Break Statement

WARDS: All

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

1.1 To update Executive Board on the new statutory requirements regarding short break services to disabled children and their families

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That

- (i) the contents of the report are noted;**
- (ii) the draft Short Break Statement is agreed; and**
- (iii) the Statement is formally endorsed by Children's Trust.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

- 3.1 In 2008 Halton became part of the new Aiming High for Disabled Children programme, whose key aim was that disabled children and their families had access to a range of short break services, information and advice.
- 3.2 Significant investment came with this and Halton implemented pathways to support services, with a range of services commissioned to voluntary providers. The contracts that Halton awarded were successful and impacted positively on local families.
- 3.3 After a successful three year period, the Aiming High Programme formally ended in March 2011. However, the coalition Government was quick to announce its ongoing commitment to providing short breaks to disabled children, and, as of 1 April 2011, new statutory and practice guidance came into effect, along with financial investment.

Financial context

- 3.4 The Government has stated a clear commitment to "continued investment" in short breaks. With this statement came an £800 million (nationwide) commitment from 2011 to 2015, as part of the Early Intervention Grant.
- 3.5 In addition to this, there is also £40 million available across England, of which £241,942 has been allocated to Halton. It has been stipulated that

this money is to support the Authority towards capital expenditure due to be incurred in relation to short break services.

Legislative Context – Breaks for Carers of Disabled Children Regulations 2011

- 3.6 On 1 April 2011 Statutory Guidance came into effect on how to safeguard and promote the welfare of disabled children using short breaks. This was alongside a whole suite of guidance that laid out Authorities' responsibilities in respect of care planning, the placement of children, and the review of looked after children, including disabled children.
- 3.7 The Guidance highlighted the fact that the provision of short breaks has changed significantly and rather than disabled children spending periods in care (especially residential), the focus is now much more on providing a wider range of shorter breaks, but more often. The introduction of direct payments has also helped this shift, as more families are now choosing to arrange their own short breaks via a financial payment directly to them.
- 3.8 The Guidance makes clear the philosophy and objectives of short breaks. They should be clearly seen on a continuum of help and support to disabled children and their families; they should ensure that the child can enjoy time elsewhere that's safe; and parents should get a break from their caring role.
- 3.9 Alongside the Statutory Guidance is Department for Education's practice guidance regarding short breaks.
- 3.10 There are a number of key requirements that Local Authorities must comply with, for example, they must provide a range of short break services; and they must give families the choice to access short breaks using a direct payment. The Practice Guidance also advises that breaks should be reliable and regular; and that parents are involved in the design of services.

Short Break Statement

- 3.11 A new requirement in the Guidance is that all Authorities must:
 - (i) Publish a statement of short break services on their website;
 - (ii) Keep their short breaks statement under review;
 - (iii) State in their Service Statement the range of short breaks services available, the criteria by which eligibility for services will be assessed, and how the range of services is designed to meet the needs of families with disabled children in their area;

(iv) Consult with parents as part of the review of the statement.

3.12 As a result, work is underway to develop a user-friendly Short Break Statement on Halton's website. Halton's design was agreed following research into other Authorities and consultation with families.

3.13 **Appendix 1** is Halton's Statement which, subject to approval, will be uploaded onto the Council's website in September. Key points to note are:

(i) It complies with the statutory guidance, takes account of the views of partners and takes on board comments made by both families and providers;

(ii) The website design will be 'user-friendly'. Parents clarified how they wanted the information to be presented. The design will ensure that links are in place to guide families to the relevant information point;

(v) The range of services and eligibility criteria are clear.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

4.1 It is a legal requirement for Halton to write and publish a Short Break Statement and review it annually. The deadline for it to be uploaded and accessible via the Council's website is 1 October 2011.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

5.1 Halton already provides a range of short breaks for disabled children and their families. Services were commissioned over a minimum of 2 years and all contracts are due to expire on 31 March 2012. A tendering process is now underway which will determine what type of short break services will be commissioned from 1 April 2012. The outcome of this process will potentially result in challenges to the Council by voluntary organisations, dependent on which providers are offered contracts.

5.2 It is considered good practice for the Statement to be signed off strategically by partners. Therefore, a clear pathway for approval has been drawn up to ensure all relevant partners and groups have contributed to its design and content. Ultimately the Statement needs to be formally endorsed by the Children's Trust. The plan is to take the draft statement to the following groups:

- Bright Sparks and VOICES Group (young people's and parents' forums respectively)
- Carers' Strategic Group
- Early Help and Support Strategic Group, with the final endorsement via the Children's Trust on 6 September.

- 5.3 Once endorsed, the website will be completed and the official launch will take place on 26 September.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

The Statement and provision of short breaks will mean that Halton continue to meet its statutory obligations to disabled and their families. It is a mechanism through which a range of quality services can be offered to families, as part of Halton's model of early help and support. Disabled children will feel safe whilst experiencing an enjoyable activity/ event either with or without their family.

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

Short breaks contribute to this via the educational activities that disabled children can enjoy. Short breaks are also about empowerment and enablement.

6.3 A Healthy Halton

Short breaks contribute to a healthier Halton for disabled children, both physical and mental health, as well as emotional well being. A range of suitable activities can help a disabled child's development and enables the family to cope more in the long term, which impacts positively on the child.

6.4 A Safer Halton

Approved and regulated short breaks that are monitored provide a safe environment for disabled children to enjoy a range of activities.

6.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

No direct impact

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

Disabled children and their families are entitled to a range of short break services. They also have the right to get information on this on the Council's website via the Short Break Statement. If we do not do this, we are not complying with our statutory requirements. With this would be the risk of a legal challenge from families and local providers. It is also essential to review these services and provide short breaks based on local need. A clear, fair and transparent process is needed here to help prevent further challenges from groups, especially if decisions are made to change, reduce or end any services.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

The Short Break Regulations 2011 help ensure that disabled and their families have the same rights to access services appropriate to their needs. A child's disability must not prevent them from getting help and

support, therefore complying with these ensures that local services are inclusive and fully take account equality and diversity issues.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

| Document | Place of Inspection | Contact Officer |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Statutory guidance on how to safeguard and promote the welfare of disabled children using short break April 2010 | Grosvenor House Chester 1 | Emma Taylor |
| Breaks for Carers of Disabled Children Regulations [2011] | “ | Emma Taylor |

Halton Disabled Children's Service Short Breaks Statement



00041CYP

Contents page

| | |
|--|----|
| 1. Introduction..... | 3 |
| 2. Principles and Values..... | 4 |
| 3. Who is eligible for a short break?..... | 6 |
| 4. What is a short break?..... | 8 |
| 5. How can families get a short break?..... | 10 |
| 6. Guide to Services..... | 12 |
| 7. Where can families find information about Short Breaks?.. | 16 |
| 8. Consultation and Participation..... | 18 |
| 9. Carers Assessment and Support..... | 20 |
| 10. Reviewing the Statement..... | 21 |
| 11. Contact Details for Further Information about Halton Short break Services and Parent Support Groups | 22 |



Halton's Short Breaks and Support Services for Disabled Children and their families

The Breaks for Carers of Disabled Children Regulations 2011 came into effect in April. These placed a duty on local authorities to provide Short Breaks for carers of disabled children to enable them to continue to care for their disabled child and to participate in everyday activities. It also required that a Short Breaks Statement is produced that states:

- the range of Short Breaks services available;
- the criteria by which eligibility for services will be assessed; and
- how the range of services is designed to meet the needs of families with disabled children in Halton.

The statement must be kept under review and it should be revised when new services become available, or when there are changes to existing services. Carers' views will be fully considered when preparing and revising this statement. The views of disabled children and young people and of voluntary sector organisations working with disabled people should also be taken into account.

In Halton, we have worked closely with disabled young people; parents and carers, service providers and partner agencies to develop a range of Short Breaks services that provide carers with a break from their caring responsibilities. They also provide disabled children with positive and enjoyable experiences.

In Halton we have organised 3 Powerful Voices conferences since 2008 that have been attended by carers, young people and professionals. These have been used to gain everyone's views about Short Breaks and which services they have found to be most beneficial. Smaller consultation events, questionnaires and feedback from individual families and groups have also contributed to the development of the range of services that are available in Halton.

We have carried out further consultations throughout the summer period with providers, parents groups and young people to involve them in creating this statement. They have advised on; how the statement should look, what information would be most useful to families and how to make it easily accessible to families. All the information gathered has been used to inform the statement.

Principles and Values

In Halton, we understand that families of disabled children want to lead ordinary lives. They want to provide the best care and opportunities for their children to feel safe, and to be healthy and happy. We also know that this can be more of a struggle as some of the things that most families take for granted are more difficult to achieve if they have a disabled child. For example, It can be difficult for parents to have some time to themselves and be able to spend time with other children in their family.

Following detailed consultation and involvement with families and providers, we have developed a range of services and support that we hope will help families of disabled children to lead a more 'ordinary' family life within their community. This document explains who families should talk to about getting support for their family, where they can get information about services, and how they can tell us what they think about them and help us to develop them further.



We are committed to

- Supporting disabled children and families to take part in local community life.
- Providing clear information for families about support, services and how to access them.
- Providing choices for disabled children and their families to help them make decisions about what works best to improve their daily lives.
- Listening to the views of disabled children and families so we can continue to improve the quality of their lives.
- Working in partnership with disabled children and families to ensure their involvement in decision making about the development of support services to help them.
- Supporting disabled young people to become more independent through a smooth transition into adulthood.
- Providing services that enable families of disabled children to have an improved quality of life within their communities.



In Halton we have developed our services and carer support based on some of the key messages that disabled children and families have told us about what they want locally.

Young people have told us that they want to be able to do the same things that other young people are able to do. They want to be able to have fun with their friends and have improved access to community services.

Parents and carers have told us that they want to have up to date information about services, that are easily available and accessible from one single contact point. They want services to be available at weekends, evenings and school holiday periods. They want activities that they can experience as a whole family rather than just services for their disabled child. On the whole they do not believe that a Social Work Assessment is necessary in order to receive a Short Break.

In response to families' comments, Halton has established a service called The Disabled Children's Service which is based at Peelhouse Centre in Widnes and they work across Halton.

The team consists of a group of skilled and experienced workers who have up to date information about the Short Breaks services available in Halton. They work closely with all agencies who work with children and families including schools, health staff, Short Break providers, community groups and Social Work teams.

Halton has developed a model of early help and support. It is called 'Team Around the Family' and is supported and overseen by Halton's Children's Trust. The aim of the model is to ensure that appropriate help and support is offered to families as soon as additional needs are identified. By offering support to the whole family at an early stage, we can help prevent further difficulties arising in the future and more specialist interventions becoming necessary. The Disabled Children's Service is part of 'Team Around the Family' model of early help. The model includes services such as parenting support and Children's Centres.

Who is eligible for a short break?

This section tells you who may be eligible for Short Breaks and how we work with disabled children, young people and their families, to make sure they receive the services that best meet their needs.

Who is a disabled child?

In Halton, we see disabled children as being those children and young people aged 0 –18 years whose daily lives are substantially affected by one or more of the following diagnosed conditions:

- A hearing impairment
- A visual impairment
- A learning disability
- A physical disability
- A chronic/life threatening physical illness
- A communication disorder (including autism)
- A consciousness disorder (e.g. epilepsy)
- A mental health condition

Their condition should usually be expected to last for more than 12 months and have a substantial effect upon the child in more than one of the following areas:

- Physical ability
- Communication and understanding
- Awareness of risk and danger
- Behaviour
- Independence



We understand that children and young people may also be disadvantaged because of other factors, such as their environment, other people's attitudes, poverty and social exclusion. However, these factors alone do not entitle them to be considered for Short Breaks services.

Each child and family will have different needs and the impact of the child's disability needs to be considered against what would usually be expected for any child of the same age. Their family's circumstances will also be different and so it is important to assess how their situation impacts upon their ability to lead an ordinary life within the community. The assessment process in Halton is explained in more detail in the section called 'How can families get a Short Break?'



Range of support services

Halton is establishing a system that enables all disabled children and young people to access community based social and leisure activities. Ordinary community facilities, such as cinemas and sports and leisure clubs, should be able to meet the needs of those children and young people who require little or no additional support. Such facilities are expected to make reasonable adjustments to enable them to access services as required under The Disability and Equality Act 2010.

Additionally, we have developed a range of Short Breaks services within universal services such as Youth Services and Children's Centres right through to specialist services for those children with more complex disabilities. Those disabled children and young people who have been assessed as requiring support in order to access activities can request this through the Disabled Children's Service.

What is a short break?

From, 2008-2011, the Aiming High for Disabled Children programme transformed the delivery of services for disabled children and their families in England. Additional funding was given to Local Authorities to provide support to enable disabled children to be involved in leisure activities and to have fun with their friends. This also provided their families with a break so they could do things that they might not usually be able to, whilst caring for their disabled child.

In Halton, we used this as an opportunity to build upon the existing services and add new ones, with the aim that families would find them beneficial. We worked with young people, parents and carers and representatives from a range of agencies who work with disabled children and their families to develop a Halton Vision for Short Breaks. It stated that:

“Halton’s vision is to extend the quantity and quality of Short Breaks to ensure that disabled children, young people and their families have a choice of services, increased access to inclusive services and opportunities towards independence. We will continue to develop engagement with families and young people towards the provision of flexible and responsive services that are child and family focused, and led.”



The Short Breaks provided are listed in the Guide to Services Section and they range from; family activities and day trips, out of school sessions, holiday playschemes to individual support, both at home and in the community. They are available in various locations in Runcorn and Widnes. Some services are provided directly from Halton Borough Council with others from national and local organisations who deliver the service on behalf of the Council.



Additional funds have been provided for specialist equipment to be used in community facilities throughout Halton, so families can go to local facilities such as leisure centres and play parks. We have provided portable hoists in Phoenix and Victoria Parks and hoists and adjustable changing beds in Kingsway and Brookvale Leisure Centres. Play equipment has been provided in some of the newly developed parks and wheelchair accessible benches have also been installed. Ten sports wheelchairs have been purchased to enable young disabled people to become involved in disability sports sessions and some specialist toys have been bought by The Play Council Toy Library that can be used by families or groups in the community.

Funds have been used to provide sensory rooms in Children's Centres around Halton and The Chill Out Room at CRMZ. Two outreach bases have been refurbished at Chesnut Lodge school in Widnes and Inglefield Short Breaks Centre in Runcorn in response to the young people's wish to have somewhere safe and accessible to 'hang out with their mates'.

We are continuing to work with families and service providers to develop our Short Breaks services. In the next few months we will be going through a process to invite agencies to bid for contracts to deliver Short Breaks services next year. We will use information disabled young people and families have already told us, about what works best for them and we will be involving them in the process to choose services that will provide choice, flexibility and quality.

How can families get a short break?

All enquiries and requests for Short Breaks and family support are made to the Disabled Children's Service using a direct telephone number or e-mail address. Professionals and Parents/Carers can contact the service to have an initial discussion about the child's needs and the family's circumstances. Professionals must have prior consent from the family before doing so.

Single services

In some cases families need access to information or a single service in circumstances where they are managing their lives well but may need access to specific activities. There is no need for additional planning and so the Disabled Children's Services worker will advise accordingly and signpost them to appropriate services, if necessary making contact with the provider to facilitate a smooth entry into the activity. They will then log the child and family details on to the Information Network. They will ensure that the family has information about The Families Information Service, Carer Support, VOICES Participation Group and Bright Sparks young peoples group.



Additional services

In some cases, a single service may not be sufficient for a family. Further information or assessment may be required to see if there are any additional support needs that can be met through other Short Breaks services. In these situations, the Disabled Children's Service, with the family's consent, will work with any other professionals involved with the family. Any previous assessments will be taken into account and any further needs will be assessed holistically, making sure that any Short Breaks services offered are suited to the child and family's needs.

Assessment and Planning

We understand that most disabled children and their families will have experienced a number of assessment processes and so it isn't necessary to put families through even more assessments before they can have a Short Break or family support. Your child might already have one or more of the following:

- Disability Living Allowance for care at middle rate or above
- A statement of Special Educational Needs
- Individual support at school for 15 hours or more

If this is the case then you could be eligible for Short Breaks. However, the type and level of service will be dependent on the needs of the child and family circumstances.

In all cases, a worker from the Disabled Children's Service will, with your permission, access any assessments that are already in place. This will help us establish which planning and review systems the child and family are already engaged with. The worker will then participate in the current plan for the child, providing advice on services and ensuring that the Short Breaks documentation is completed.

If there isn't a recent assessment available then a discussion will take place with the family to establish who has the most professional involvement with their child and whether their child would benefit from a CAF (Common Assessment Framework) assessment.

The outcome of the assessment process is that level and type of service is agreed and implemented.

In Halton we have developed a system that looks at what support the disabled child and their family require and links this to a level of service that might meet their needs. This is supported by new documents that are colourful and family friendly and these are completed by the worker with the family. Once this is complete then a points system is used to say how much Short Break the family could benefit from and the type of services that would be appropriate to meet their needs. A Short Breaks care plan is then completed with tasks agreed to enable the child and their family to start to join in the new activities. This plan is reviewed on a 6 monthly basis and changed to reflect any changes in the child and family's circumstances.

Some disabled children who may have more complex needs or be living in more difficult family circumstances may need a larger package of support from different services. Therefore it may be more appropriate to have involvement from a Social Worker. In these cases the worker from the Disabled Children's Service will make contact with the Children's Social Care Duty Officer and discuss whether a Child in Need Assessment would be beneficial for the child.



Guide to Services

Halton Borough Council offers a range of Short Break and support services for disabled children and their families in conjunction with private and voluntary providers who receive Council funding to deliver services on their behalf. In effect, we offer a continuum of support that is based on what level of help the child and family needs. Therefore, the greater the need, the higher the level of support.

All such services are available for disabled children who live in Halton. Many are available without an additional assessment if your child has had a previous assessment that confirms their disability and need for additional support.

Universal services are available to all children, whether they have a disability or not. They can be accessed directly or via the Disabled Children's Service, as can general information and advice. Families can also be sign-posted to single services.

Other Short Breaks services, for example after school clubs and play activities, are available for those disabled children who have more complex needs and who may be living within difficult family situations. These can also be accessed via the Disabled Children's Service, once a holistic assessment establishes what level of support would be beneficial to the family.

In such circumstances it may be useful to undertake an additional assessment such as a CAF (Common Assessment Framework). This would take account of any previous assessment undertaken involving the child and/or family.

Dependent on the level of complexity and difficulty, it may be necessary for a Social Work Assessment to be undertaken. In both cases, the family will be kept fully informed of what assessment, if any, is required, and no assessments will not be undertaken unless necessary.

Most of the services are free of charge but you will usually be required to transport your child to an activity and pick them up afterwards. In certain circumstances transport may be offered to a child for a specific activity if available and agreed with staff from Disabled Children's Service.

Similarly, parents may be asked to provide a packed lunch, spending money for some trips or a contribution to certain activities which may be for longer outings or special occasions.

Information about activities is available from the Disabled Children's Service and Families Information Services. Additional activities may be organised throughout the year and families can find out about these as above or by looking at our Twitter page and through publications such as Carers Centre newsletter, Halton magazine and local newspaper.



FULL GUIDE TO SERVICES

| Provider | Location | Description of Service | Who is it For? |
|--------------------------|--|---|--|
| Action For Children | Youth Centres and community centres in Halton. | Various youth group activities including Fun Club held on Tuesdays 7-9pm at CRMZ in Widnes. | Young people aged 11-18 |
| Ashley Adventurers | Group based at Ashley School but activities take place in community | Group activities chosen by the young people. Also support for young people to become young leaders. | Young People aged 11-18 |
| Barnardos Wider Horizons | Various Venues in the community | <p>Brokerage Service provides support for children who have been assessed as requiring specific Short Breaks into new services.</p> <p>Befriending Service provides support for young people to access community activities either in groups or individual sessions.</p> | <p>Children and Young People aged 0-18</p> <p>Children and Young People aged 0-18</p> |
| ChAPS | <p>The Hotel Campanile, Runcorn.</p> <p>George and Dolly's Playspace</p> <p>Focus Gymnastic Club, Ditton Industrial Estate, Widnes</p> | <p>Parent and Carer support group is held every 2nd Thursday from 7-9pm.</p> <p>Fun session for children and families held every 3rd Wednesday from 4-6pm.</p> <p>Trampolining session every Friday from 3.30 to 4.30pm.</p> | Children of all ages who have diagnosis of Autistic Spectrum Condition and their families. |
| Core Disability Service | In family home, carers home or community venues | <p>CDS provide personal assistants to support young people with more complex disabilities to access the community.</p> <p>CDS also provide a short break overnight service within carer's home or family home. This service is only available through a Social work assessment.</p> | <p>Children and Young People aged 0-18</p> <p>Children and Young People aged 0-18</p> |
| Crossroads | In the family home or in the community. | Personal assistants provide support in the family home that enable carers to go out or they take the child out to enjoy an activity in the community. | Children and Young People aged 0-18 |
| Deafness Resource Centre | Kingsway Learning Centre, Thursday only at the moment. | Assessment for equipment and support to carers including family trips, signing classes and support group. | Deaf children aged 0-18 and their families. |

| Provider | Location | Description of Service | Who is it For? |
|--------------------------|--|---|---|
| Deafness Support Network | Various locations in Halton and in Merseyside and Cheshire. | DSN support young deaf people to access social activities with their peers and siblings. They also provide advice and information to families. | Deaf children aged 0-18 and their families. |
| Everton Foundation | Various locations in Halton | Specialist football coaching for disabled children and family activity days. | Children and Young People aged 0-18 |
| Focus Gymnastics | Ditton Industrial Estate, Widnes. | Fun sessions for children and families using trampolines, bouncy castles soft play equipment. Plans are in place to have trampolines sunken into the floor for full access for all. Qualified coaches support all sessions. | Children and young people aged 0-18 and their families. |
| HAFS | Various community venues. Fortnightly sessions in George and Dolly's and CRMZ in Widnes. | Activities for the whole family such as social events, parties and trips out. | Families of children who have been given a diagnosis within range of Autistic Spectrum Condition. |
| Halton Carers Centre | Carers Centre in High Street Runcorn and at Peelhouse Centre in Widnes | Support and information for carers including training, therapy and advice on issues relating to the caring role. The centre also runs the Carers Forum and provides support for the Voices Group. They organise trips out and family events. | All carers of disabled children. |
| Halton Borough Council | Various locations throughout Halton | <p>Inglefield Short Breaks Centre provides overnight breaks for those children who have complex needs. This service is only available through a Social Work Assessment.</p> <p>Children's Centres offer a range of services for children and family groups including activity groups, parenting support and fun events. There is a fortnightly Saturday club in Runcorn and Widnes for disabled children.</p> <p>Direct Payments are available as an alternative to Council provided services to allow families to purchase their own service or employ their own staff. This is only available following an individual assessment of the child's needs and the family's ability to manage the funds.</p> <p>Halton has developed an Individual Budget Pilot Scheme to explore whether this would offer some families more choice and flexible support.</p> | <p>Children and young people aged between 4 and 18 years.</p> <p>Children and their families can attend many events. Saturday club is for those aged 4-8 years.</p> <p>Children aged 0-18 years following assessment.</p> <p>Currently this is only available for a specific group of families involved in the project.</p> |

| Provider | Location | Description of Service | Who is it For? |
|---------------------|---|--|--|
| Halton Play Council | <p>Cavendish High School, Runcorn and Warrington Road Children's Centres, Widnes</p> <p>Various locations throughout Halton</p> | <p>Out of school clubs run one night after school midweek and morning and afternoon sessions on Saturdays.</p> <p>Play schemes are delivered during 3 weeks of the summer school holidays, Easter and half term holidays. These are inclusive but have allocated sessions for disabled children with additional support required for those who are assessed as needing it.</p> | <p>Children and young people aged 8-18 years.</p> <p>Children and young people aged 5 to 12 years.</p> |
| Halton Play Council | <p>Simms Cross School, Widnes and Windmill Hill Children's Centres, Runcorn</p> <p>Play Resource Centre, Runcorn</p> | <p>Open access play sessions provided every Saturday during school term times from 12 noon to 4pm.</p> <p>The Toy Library has a wide range of toys and activities that families or groups can loan. This includes larger toys, sensory activities and specialist equipment.</p> | <p>Children and young people aged 5 to 12 years.</p> <p>Families or activity groups</p> |
| Halton Speak Out | Old Police Station, Runcorn and various locations in Halton | Bright Sparks group is supported by HSO staff to enable young disabled people to be fully involved in consultations and decision making processes to influence the development of services that are provided for them. | Young People aged 11 to 18 years. |
| VOICES | All Saints Children's Centre, Runcorn and various locations in Halton. | Parent Participation Group supported by Parent Support Officer from HBC to involve parents in consultations and decision making processes to influence the development of services that are provided for disabled children and families in Halton. | Parent Carers of disabled children. |

Where can families find information about Short Breaks?

Halton has developed a logo which was designed with young people to be used on all information which may be of particular interest to disabled young people and their families. This is used on all information about Short Breaks services so that families may find it easier to identify it amongst all the other information that they are likely to receive.

Carers were involved in a consultation at The Powerful Voices Conference held in January 2011. This looked at where and how they would like information on Short Breaks, and other relevant information, to be displayed, so they can easily find out what is available locally. Not surprisingly, they wanted the information to be made available in different formats. Therefore, we produced various fliers, posters and leaflets which are sent to schools, Children's Centres, council buildings and Health Centres. Information is given to all schools, including Special Schools, who make sure it is sent out to the families of disabled children. Information can also be sent to families via e-mail subject to them providing their e-mail address to the Disabled Children's Service.



Services are advertised in the local press, Children's Centres Activity Programmes, Carers Centre newsletter and Inside Halton Magazine that is delivered directly to most homes in the Borough. Staff from Disabled Children Service attend various Halton events, parents evenings, conferences, carers forums and support groups to talk directly with families about services and how to access them.

The staff work closely with all agencies who work with children and families in Halton and pass on all information about new services. They maintain contact with professionals and services who work with specific groups who could have the potential to be more isolated within the community; for example, Traveller families and those from different ethnic groups. All services take account of the different needs of families and take appropriate steps to meet them. They also celebrate diversity and support all young people to have a greater understanding of different cultures.

The Halton Borough website has two areas dedicated to information specifically aimed at families of disabled children. One has information on Short Breaks services and the other has wider information about services and support that is available.



The Disabled Children Service maintains an Information Network and families are asked if they wish their details to be added so that they can receive information and be included in consultation events and questionnaires etc. Recently the Team has set up a Twitter account and this is used to display information about up and coming events and new activities.

All information about both regular and one off events is sent to the Families Information Service, a Council run service which has information about all events and services for families living in Halton, including Short Breaks.

Consultation and Participation

Consultation and participation are key to the development of services that are family centred and provide positive benefits to both the disabled child and their family. We have developed a number of ways, highlighted below, in which we gather information from young people and carers. This is then fed into wider Council plans, for example, The Children and Young People's Plan, that influences wider service provision.

In January 2011, we held the third Powerful Voices Conference which was attended by more than 150 parents, carers and professionals which sought views on the range of services available and which families had found were more beneficial. We looked at issues such as transport, the value of community activities such as parks, libraries and leisure centres, the benefits gained from family activities and preferred methods of receiving information about services.

In April we sent out a questionnaire to all Short Breaks users asking about their experiences of the services they use, in particular those they benefit from most and any suggestions for further development. We had several consultations with carers and young people about specific Short Breaks issues including play park developments, the Individual Budget Pilot Programme, Short Breaks Handbook, Short Breaks for children with complex health needs and Halton's Short Breaks Statement.

Families can contact The Disabled Children's Service to give their views or concerns about the Short Breaks Service and the staff regularly gain their views when they are discussing the assessments, Short Breaks plans and reviews. They also talk with carers at coffee mornings, Carers Forums, Support Groups and information events at a range of locations across the Borough.

A number of young people and carers have attended regional and national events to share their experiences and to be involved in discussion groups about the development of Short Breaks. Some families have been involved in national consultations to share their experiences and to influence national developments in Short Breaks services.

VOICES

The VOICES group for carers of disabled children was developed as part of the Aiming High for Disabled Children Parent Participation project. It consists of a small group of Parent/Carers who want to be involved in steering groups and consultation events representing the wider group of carers in Halton. They have developed links with parent groups across the Borough and consult with them on specific topics and feed their views into the appropriate groups. They also have a direct link with the Parent representative on Halton's Children's Trust Board and they are linked into the regional and national Parent Participation Networks.

The group is supported by a worker from The Disabled Children's Service and Carers Centre and they meet weekly in a local Children's Centres to plan their activities to reach more carers and invite them to join the group. The group can be contacted on their phone number, email or facebook address.



Bright Sparks

The Bright Sparks group is supported by local advocacy group Halton Speak Out. Bright Sparks enables all disabled young people in Halton to contribute to consultation events including the review of The Children and Young People's Plan. Organisations wishing to gain the views of young disabled people in Halton can approach this group who will engage with the wider group of young disabled people.

The young people have representatives on various groups that engage with young people in Halton and they are involved in the Youth Council. They have had some training to help them to be involved in these groups. One young person is employed to be their spokesperson to work alongside the coordinator from Halton Speak Out.

The group are in the process of developing a Charter Mark system to award the Halton Short Breaks logo to providers of services in Halton that they judge to deliver quality services. They are setting their criteria which will include accessibility and how welcome they were made to feel as well as how enjoyable the activity was. This scheme is expected to be up and running later in the year.

The group have their own website and last year they made a DVD about their experiences of doing more activities and having fun which can be seen on HBC Website or You Tube at the links given below.

Link to part 1:

<http://youtu.be/gGCgJpjlFww>

Link to part 2:

<http://youtu.be/ySvIUJRcEX8>

Carers Assessment and Support

A carer is anybody who looks after a family member, partner or friend who needs help because of their illness, frailty or disability. Many parents of disabled children don't see themselves as carers and the responsibilities and demands of being a carer can often mean they overlook their own health and wellbeing. Carers need good sources of help, support and information and can access this through the Carers Centre or Carers Development Worker based within Disabled Children's Service.

Carers Assessments

The needs of carers should be considered within the assessments that are completed for disabled children and support plans should usually include measures that will benefit the whole family. However, parent carers can request a separate assessment of their own needs as carers. This should consider; their health needs or disability, their ability to participate in further education or work, their finances and any housing issues that make it more difficult to care for their child. It should also take into account any barriers that prevent them from participating in everyday activities within their families and their communities.

In cases where a carer has a disability or significant health issue, they may need their own community care assessment from adult services to establish whether they are entitled to information, advice or services.

Carers Centre

Halton Carers Centre is managed by The Princess Royal Trust and is based in Runcorn but provides services across Halton. However, they have responded to requests from carers to have a base in Widnes by providing two staff at Peelhouse Centre. During the past few years they have made specific efforts to reach more carers of disabled children and to extend their range of services to meet their specific needs.

The Centre provides information, advice, therapy services, carer training, and support to get access to services, social events and day trips. They support the Carer's Forum and set up consultation events and provide leadership for the VOICES Parent Participation Group.

Support Groups

Halton has a number of parent support groups for families of disabled children. Some of them also provide family activities as well as opportunities for carers to share their experiences and to support each other in their caring role. The details of their Short Breaks activities are included in the Guide to Services. The VOICES Parent Participation Group have connections with all of the groups so that they can be involved in consultations and feed their views through the system to the Children's Trust Board. Details of the groups meeting in Halton with contact details are included in the contacts section.



Reviewing The Statement

This is the first statement that provides information about Halton's Short Breaks Services. During the next 12 months we will be monitoring the quality of the services through our robust system of contract evaluations and will also work with our providers to respond to comments and suggestions from families as to how to inform future service development.

A fourth Powerful Voices Conference is planned for this year so carers and professionals can meet to share their views and experiences of Short Breaks and influence future service development. Questionnaires will be sent out to families using Short Breaks services next year, to give all families the opportunity to share what works well for them and how further improvements can be made.

Young people and parent carers will be involved in the commissioning of Short Breaks services through the Bright Sparks and VOICES groups. Both would welcome involvement from new members who wish to play a key role in influencing the decision making about which services are provided for families in Halton.

The Disabled Children's Service welcome contact from families so that they hear their views and staff will continue to meet families at information events, coffee mornings or consultation sessions, to include their comments in the review of services. They will also collect views from individual young people and carers through their direct involvement with them throughout the year ahead.

This statement will be reviewed and updated in 12 months and will reflect any changes in the delivery of services. It will take into account the views of families of disabled children, which will have been gathered throughout the year. We will also consult with parent groups, disabled young people and service providers during the review period.

We welcome comments about this statement and suggestions as to how this may be developed to make it more useful for families of disabled children living in Halton.



Contact Details for Further Information about Halton Short Breaks Services and Parent Support Groups

Disabled Children Service
Peelhouse Centre
Peelhouse Lane
Widnes
WA8 6TJ

Direct phone line is 0151 420 8130
Direct e-mail address is
aiminghighfordisabledchildren@halton.gov.uk
You can also access the twitter account at [haltondcs](https://twitter.com/haltondcs).

Halton Borough Council Website Address

www.halton.gov.uk.
Disabled children and young people section and short break section can be found in children and family section of the website.

Halton Families Information Service

01928 704306

Halton Carers Centre
62, Church street
Runcorn
WA7 1LD
Or
Peelhouse Centre, Widnes

01928 5801829 (Runcorn)
0151 257 9673 (Widnes)
www.haltoncarers.co.uk

VOICES Group

07586 464359
Pv4pnc@hotmail.co.uk

Bright Sparks Group

Care Of Halton Speak Out
01928-588526

ChAPS

01928 722384
www.asparents.org.uk

CROSS

Contact at www.thecrossscheme.org

HAFS

HAFS (Halton Autistic Family Support Group) Limited
Trinity House
78-80 Victoria Road
Widnes
Cheshire
WA8 7RA
Tele 0151 495 3540
Email contact@hafs.org.uk

Disabled Children's Service

Peelhouse Centre

Peelhouse Lane

Widnes

WA8 6TJ

Tel: 0151 420 8130

Email: aiminghighfordisabledchildren@halton.gov.uk



Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted